

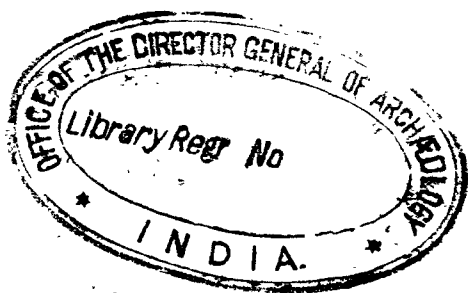
GOVERNMENT OF INDIA  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL SURVEY OF INDIA  
ARCHÆOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY

---

ACCESSION NO. 13371

CALL No. 937.06/ Gib

D.G.A. 79





NOT TO BE ISSUED

HISTORY

OF THE

DECLINE AND FALL

OF THE

ROMAN EMPIRE.

13371

By EDWARD GIBBON, Esq.



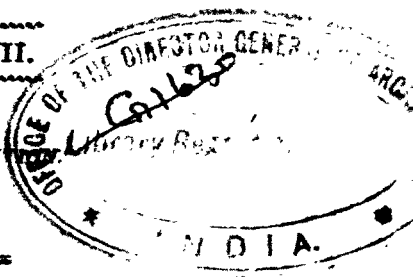
IN TWELVE VOLUMES.

(33)

VOL. VII.

A NEW EDITION.

937.06  
Gib



EDINBURGH:

PRINTED FOR BELL AND BRADFUTE, PETER HILL, SILVESTER DOIG  
AND A. STIRLING, AND JOHN OGEE.

1811.

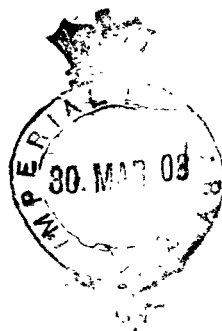
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL  
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No. .... 13371 .....

Date ..... 24.6.1962 .....

Call No ..... 937.06 ..... vol (7)

Gilt



## PREFACE.

I now discharge my promise, and complete my design of writing the History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, both in the West and the East. The whole period extends from the age of Trajan and the Antonines, to the taking of Constantinople by Mahomet II; and includes a review of the crusades and the state of Rome during the middle ages. Since the publication of the first\* volume, twelve years have elapsed; twelve years, according to my wish, "of health, of leisure, and of perseverance." I may now congratulate my deliverance from a long and laborious service, and my satisfaction will be pure and perfect, if the public favour should be extended to the conclusion of my work.

\* Alluding to the Quarto Edition, in which size the Work was originally published.

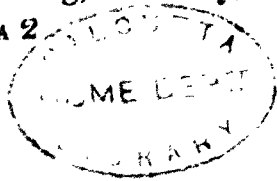
It was my first intention to have collected, under one view, the numerous authors, of every age and language, from whom I have derived the materials of this history ; and I am still convinced that the apparent ostentation would be more than compensated by real use. If I have renounced this idea ; if I have declined an undertaking which had obtained the approbation of a master-artist,\* my excuse may be found in the extreme difficulty of assigning a proper measure to such a catalogue. ~~A naked list of names and editions~~ would not be satisfactory either to myself or my readers ; the characters of the principal Authors of the Roman and Byzantine History have been occasionally connected with the events which they describe ; a more copious and critical inquiry might indeed deserve, but it would demand, an elaborate volume, which might swell by degrees into a general library of historical writers. For the present I shall content myself with renewing my serious protestation, that I have always endea-

\* See Dr. Robertson's Preface to his History of America.

voured to draw from the fountain-head ; that my curiosity, as well as a sense of duty, has always urged me to study the originals ; and that, if they have sometimes eluded my search, I have carefully marked the secondary evidence, on whose faith a passage or a fact were reduced to depend.

I shall soon revisit the banks of the lake of Lausanne, a country which I have known and loved from my early youth. Under a mild government, amidst a beautiful landskip, in a life of leisure and independence, and among a people of easy and elegant manners, I have enjoyed, and may again hope to enjoy, the varied pleasures of retirement and society. But I shall ever glory in the name and character of an Englishman : I am proud of my birth in a free and enlightened country ; and the approbation of that country is the best and most honourable reward of my labours. Were I ambitious of any other patron than the Public, I would inscribe this work to a Statesman, who, in a long, a stormy,

A 2



and at length an unfortunate administration, had many political opponents, almost without a personal enemy : who has retained, in his fall from power, many faithful and disinterested friends ; and who, under the pressure of severe infirmity, enjoys the lively vigour of his mind, and the felicity of his incomparable temper. LORD NORTH will permit me to express the feelings of friendship in the language of truth : but even truth and friendship should be silent, if he still dispensed the favours of the crown.

In a remote solitude, vanity may still whisper in my ear, that my readers, perhaps, may inquire, whether, in the conclusion of the present work, I am now taking an everlasting farewell. They shall hear all that I know myself, all that I could reveal to the most intimate friend. The motives of action or silence are now equally balanced ; nor can I pronounce in my most secret thoughts, on which side the scale will preponderate. I cannot dissemble that Six ample Quartos must have

tried, and may have exhausted, the indulgence of the Public; that in the repetition of similar attempts, a successful Author has much more to lose, than he can hope to gain; that I am now descending into the vale of years; and that the most respectable of my countrymen, the men whom I aspire to imitate, have resigned the pen of history about the same period of their lives. Yet I consider that the annals of ancient and modern times may afford many rich and interesting subjects; that I am still possessed of health and leisure; that by the practice of writing, some skill and facility must be acquired; and that, in the ardent pursuit of truth and knowledge, I am not conscious of decay. To an active mind, indolence is more painful than labour; and the first months of my liberty will be occupied and amused in the excursions of curiosity and taste. By such temptations, I have been sometimes seduced from the rigid duty even of a pleasing and voluntary task: but my time will now be my own; and in the use or abuse of independence, I shall no long-

er fear my own reproaches or those of my friends. I am fairly entitled to a year of jubilee : next summer and the following winter will rapidly pass away ; and experience only can determine whether I shall still prefer the freedom and variety of study to the design and composition of a regular work, which animates, while it confines, the daily application of the Author. Caprice and accident may influence my choice ; but the dexterity of self-love will contrive to applaud either active industry, or philosophic repose.

DOWNING-STREET,

May 1, 1788.

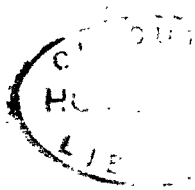
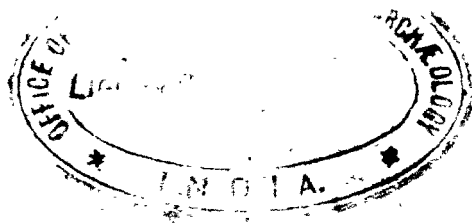
---

*P. S.* I shall embrace this opportunity of introducing two *verbal* remarks, which have not conveniently offered themselves to my notice.

1. As often as I use the definitions of *beyond* the Alps, the Rhine, the Danube, &c. I generally suppose myself at Rome, and afterwards at Constantinople; without observing whether this relative geography may agree with the local, but variable, situation of the reader, or the historian.
2. In proper names of foreign, and especially of oriental origin, it should be always our aim to express in our English version, a faithful copy of the original. But this rule, which is founded on a just regard to uniformity and truth, must often be relaxed; and the exceptions will be limited or enlarged by the custom of the language and the taste of the interpreter. Our Alphabets may be often defective: a harsh sound, an uncouth spelling, might offend the ear or the eye of our countrymen; and some words, notoriously corrupt, are fixed, and, as it were, naturalized in the vulgar tongue. The prophet *Mohammed* can no longer be stripped of the famous, though improper, appellation of Mahomet: the well-known cities of Aleppo, Damascus, and Cairo, would almost be lost in the strange descriptions of *Haleb*, *Damashk*, and *Al Cahira*: the titles and offices of the Ottoman empire are fashioned by the practice of three hundred years; and we are pleased to blend the three Chinese monosylli-

lables, *Con-fû-tzee*, in the respectable name of Confucius, or even, to adopt the Portuguese corruption of Mandarin. But I would vary the use of Zoroaster and *Zerdusht*, as I drew my information from Greece or Persia: since our connection with India, the genuine *Timour* is restored to the throne of Tamerlane: our most correct writers have retrenched the *Al*, the superfluous article, from the Koran: and we escape an ambiguous termination, by adopting *Moslem* instead of Mussulman, in the plural number. In these, and in a thousand examples, the shades of distinction are often minute; and I can feel, where I cannot explain, the motives of my choice.

•• At the end of the History, the reader will find a general Index to the whole Work, which has been drawn up by a person frequently employed in works of this nature.



## CONTENTS

OF THE

## SEVENTH VOLUME,

### CHAP. XXXIX.

*Zeno and Anastasius, emperors of the East—Birth, education, and first exploits of Theodoric the Ostrogoth—His invasion and conquest of Italy—The Gothic kingdom of Italy—State of the West—Military and civil government—The senator Boethius—Last acts and death of Theodoric.*

A. D.		Page
455-475	BIRTH and education of Theodoric,	2
474-491	The reign of Zeno,	4
491-518	The reign of Anastasius,	6
475-488	Service and revolt of Theodoric,	7
489	He undertakes the conquest of Italy,	9
	His march,	11
489-490	The three defeats of Odoacer,	13
493	His capitulation and death,	15
493-526	Reign of Theodoric, king of Italy,	16
	Partition of lands,	17
	Separation of the Goths and Italians,	19
	Foreign policy of Theodoric,	20
	His defensive wars,	23
509	His naval armaments,	24

A. D.		Page
509	Civil government of Italy according to the Roman laws,	26
	Prosperity of Rome,	29
500	Visit of Theodoric,	30
	Flourishing state of Italy,	33
	Theodoric an Arian,	36
	His toleration of the catholics,	ib.
	Vices of his government,	38
	He is provoked to persecute the catholics,	40
	Character, studies, and honours of Boethius,	42
	His patriotism,	45
	He is accused of treason,	47
524	His imprisonment and death,	48
525	Death of Symmachus,	50
526	Remorse and death of Theodoric,	ib.

## CHAP. XL.

*Elevation of Justin the elder—Reign of Justinian—  
I. The empress Theodora—II. Factions of the circus,  
and sedition of Constantinople—III. Trade and manu-  
facture of silk—IV. Finances and taxes—V. Edifices  
of Justinian—Church of St. Sophia—Fortifications and  
frontiers of the eastern empire—VI. Abolition of the  
schools of Athens, and the consularship of Rome.*

A. D.		Page
482 or 483	Birth of the emperor Justinian,	54
518–527	Elevation and reign of his uncle Justin I,	56
520–527	Adoption and succession of Justinian,	57
527–565	The reign of Justinian,	61
	Character and histories of Procopius,	ib.
	Division of the reign of Justinian,	64
	Birth and vices of the empress Theodora,	ib.
	Her marriage with Justinian,	68
	Her tyranny,	71
	Her virtues,	72
548	And death,	75

# CONTENTS.

iii

A. D.	Page
548 The factions of the circus, - - -	75
At Rome - - - - -	77
They distract Constantinople and the East, -	ib.
Justinian favours the blues, - - -	78
532 Sedition of Constantinople, surnamed <i>Nika</i> ,	81
The distress of Justinian, - - - - -	84
Firmness of Theodora, - - - - -	86
The sedition is suppressed, - - - - -	87
Agriculture and manufactures of the eastern empire,	88
The use of silk by the Romans, - - - - -	90
Importation from China by land and sea, -	93
Introduction of silk-worms into Greece, -	97
State of the revenue, - - - - -	100
Avarice and profusion of Justinian, - - -	102
Pernicious savings, - - - - -	103
Remittances, - - - - -	ib.
Taxes, - - - - -	105
Monopolies, - - - - -	106
Venality, - - - - -	107
Testaments, - - - - -	ib.
The ministers of Justinian, - - - - -	109
John of Cappadocia, - - - - -	ib.
His edifices and architects, - - - - -	112
Foundation of the church of St. Sophia, -	116
Description, - - - - -	118
Marbles, - - - - -	120
Riches, - - - - -	121
Churches and palaces, - - - - -	122
Fortifications of Europe, - - - - -	125
Security of Asia after the conquest of Isauria,	129
Fortifications of the empire, from the Euxine to the	
Persian frontier, - - - - -	132
488 Death of Perozes, king of Persia, - - -	136
502-505 The Persian war, - - - - -	138
Fortifications of Dara, - - - - -	139
The Caspian or Iberian gates, - - - - -	140
The schools of Athens, - - - - -	143
They are suppressed by Justinian, - - -	148
Proclus, - - - - -	149

A. D.	Page
485-529 His successors, . . . . .	150
The last of the philosophers, . . . . .	151
541 The Roman consulship extinguished by Justinian, . . . . .	152

## CHAP. XLI.

*Conquests of Justinian in the West—Character and first campaigns of Belisarius—He invades and subdues the Vandal kingdom of Africa—His triumph—The Gothic war—He recovers Sicily, Naples, and Rome—Siege of Rome by the Goths—Their retreat and losses—Surrender of Ravenna—Glory of Belisarius—His domestic shame and misfortunes.*

A. D.	Page
533 Justinian resolves to invade Africa, . . . . .	155
523-530 State of the Vandals. Hilderic, . . . . .	156
530-534 Gelimer, . . . . .	157
Debates on the African war, . . . . .	159
Character and choice of Belisarius, . . . . .	161
529-532 His services in the Persian war, . . . . .	162
533 Preparations for the African war, . . . . .	164
Departure of the fleet, . . . . .	167
Belisarius lands on the coast of Africa, . . . . .	171
Defeats the Vandals in a first battle, . . . . .	174
Reduction of Carthage, . . . . .	177
Final defeat of Gelimer and the Vandals, . . . . .	181
534 Conquest of Africa by Belisarius, . . . . .	186
Distress and captivity of Gelimer, . . . . .	189
Return and triumph of Belisarius, . . . . .	193
535 His sole consulship, . . . . .	195
End of Gelimer and the Vandals, . . . . .	196
Manners and defeat of the Moors, . . . . .	198
Neutrality of the Visigoths, . . . . .	202
550-620 Conquests of the Romans in Spain, . . . . .	203
534 Belisarius threatens the Ostrogoths in Italy, . . . . .	204
522-534 Government and death of Amalasontha, queen of Italy, . . . . .	206

# CONTENTS.

v

A. D.	Page
535 Her exile and death,	210
Belisarius invades and subdues Sicily,	ib.
534-536 Reign and weakness of Theodatus, the Gothic king of Italy,	214
537 Belisarius invades Italy and reduces Naples,	217
536-540 Vitiges, king of Italy,	221
536 Belisarius enters Rome,	224
537 Siege of Rome by the Goths,	ib.
Valour of Belisarius,	227
His defence of Rome,	ib.
Repulses a general assault of the Goths,	231
His sallies,	233
Distress of the city,	235
Exile of Pope Sylvester,	238
Deliverance of the city,	239
Belisarius recovers many cities of Italy,	242
538 The Goths raise the siege of Rome,	243
Lose Rimini,	245
Retire to Ravenna,	246
Jealousy of the Roman generals,	ib.
Death of Constantine,	247
The eunuch Narses,	ib.
Firmness and authority of Belisarius,	248
538, 539 Invasion of Italy by the Franks,	249
Destruction of Milan,	250
Belisarius besieges Ravenna,	253
539 Subdues the Gothic kingdom of Italy,	256
Captivity of Vitiges,	257
540 Return and glory of Belisarius,	ib.
Secret history of his wife Antonina,	261
Her lover Theodosius,	262
Resentment of Belisarius and her son Photius,	264
Persecution of her son,	266
Disgrace and submission of Belisarius,	267

## CHAP. XLII.

*State of the barbaric world—Establishment of the Lombards on the Danube—Tribes and inroads of the Slavonians—Origin, empire, and embassies of the Turks—The flight of the Avars—Chosroes I, or Nushirvan, king of Persia—His prosperous reign and wars with the Romans—The Colchian or Lazic war—The Ethiopians.*

A. D.		Page
527-565	Weakness of the empire of Justinian,	270
	State of the barbarians,	273
	The Gepidæ,	ib.
	The Lombards,	274
	The Slavonians,	277
	Their inroads,	281
545	Origin and monarchy of the Turks in Asia,	284
	The Avars fly before the Turks, and approach the empire,	289
558	Their embassy to Constantinople,	291
569-582	Embassies of the Turks and Romans,	293
500-530	State of Persia,	297
531-579	Reign of Nushirvan, or Chosroes,	300
	His love of learning,	303
533-539	Peace and war with the Romans,	307
540	He invades Syria,	311
	And ruins Antioch,	312
541	Defence of the East by Belisarius,	315
	Description of Colchos, Lazica, or Mingrelia,	318
	Manners of the natives,	322
	Revolutions of Colchos,	325
	Under the Persians, before Christ, 500,	ib.
	Under the Romans, before Christ, 60,	326
130	Visit of Arian,	327
522	Conversion of the Lazi,	328
542-549	Revolt and repentance of the Colchians,	ib.
549-551	Siege of Petra,	331

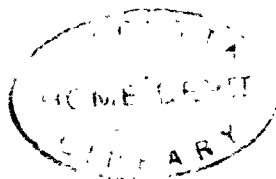
A. D.		Page
549-556	The Colchian or Lazic war, - -	334
540-561	Negotiations and treaties between Justinian and Chosroes, - -	337
522	Conquests of the Abyssinians, - -	340
533	Their alliance with Justinian, - -	343

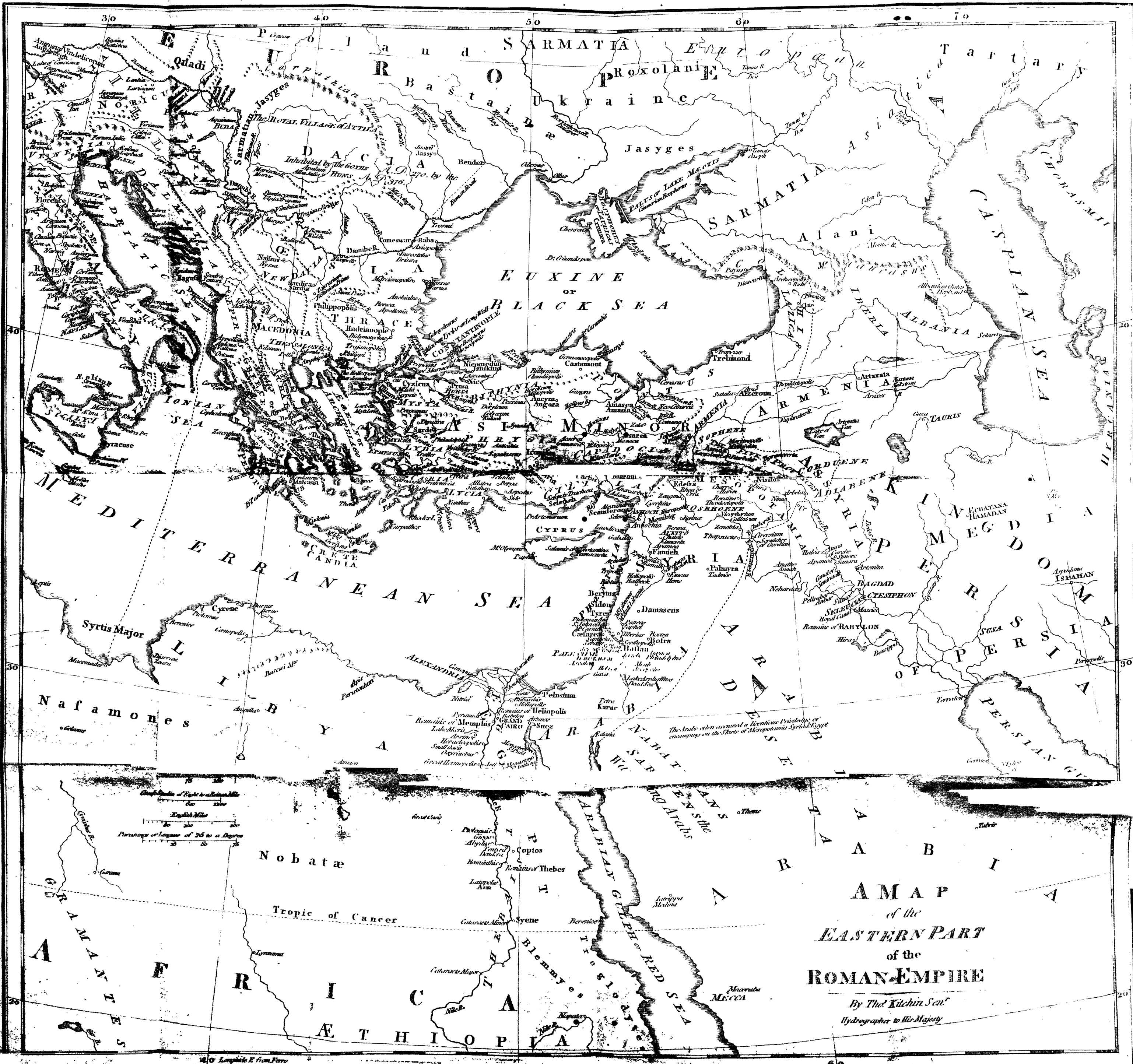
## CHAP. XLIII.

*Rebellions of Africa—Restoration of the Gothic kingdom by Totila—Loss and recovery of Rome—Final conquest of Italy by Narses—Extinction of the Ostrogoths—Defeat of the Franks and Alemanni—Last victory, disgrace, and death of Belisarius—Death and character of Justinian—Comets, earthquakes, and plague.*

A. D.		Page
535-545	The troubles of Africa, - -	346
543-558	Rebellion of the Moors, - -	351
540	Revolt of the Goths, - -	353
541-544	Victories of Totila, king of Italy, - -	355
	Contrast of Greek vice and Gothic virtue, - -	357
544-548	Second command of Belisarius in Italy, - -	360
546	Rome besieged by the Goths, - -	362
	Attempt of Belisarius, - -	364
	Rome taken by the Goths, - -	366
547	Recovered by Belisarius, - -	370
548	Final recal of Belisarius, - -	372
549	Rome again taken by the Goths, - -	375
549-551	Preparations of Justinian for the Gothic war, - -	378
552	Character and expedition of the eunuch Narses, - -	381
	Defeat and death of Totila, - -	384
	Conquest of Rome by Narses, - -	388
553	Defeat and death of Teias, the last king of the Goths, - -	389
	Invasion of Italy by the Franks and Alemanni, - -	393
554	Defeat of the Franks and Alemanni by Narses, - -	395
554-568	Settlement of Italy, - -	398

A. D.	Page
559 Invasion of the Bulgarians,	401
Last victory of Belisarius,	403
561 His disgrace and death,	405
565 Death and character of Justinian,	409
531-539 Comets,	412
Earthquakes,	415
542 Plague—its origin and nature,	418
542-594 Extent and duration,	422





THE  
HISTORY  
OF THE  
DECLINE AND FALL  
OF THE  
ROMAN EMPIRE.

CHAP. XXXIX.

*Zeno and Anastasius, emperors of the East—Birth, education, and first exploits of Theodoric the Ostrogoth—His invasion and conquest of Italy—The Gothic kingdom of Italy—State of the West—Military and civil government—The senator Boethius—Last acts and death of Theodoric.*

AFTER the fall of the Roman empire in the West, an interval of fifty years, till the memorable reign of Justinian, is faintly marked by the obscure names and imperfect annals of Zeno, Anastasius, and Justin, who successively ascended the throne of Constantinople. During the same period, Italy revived and flourished under the government of a Gothic king, who might

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
A. D. 476-527.

CHAP. have deserved a statue among the best and bravest  
 XXXIX. of the ancient Romans.

Birth and  
 education  
 of Theo-  
 doric,  
 A. D. 455-  
 475.

Theodoric the Ostrogoth, the fourteenth in lineal descent of the royal line of the Amali,<sup>a</sup> was born in the neighbourhood of Vienna,<sup>b</sup> two years after the death of Attila. A recent victory had restored the independence of the Ostrogoths; and the three brothers, Walamir, Theodemir, and Widimir, who ruled that warlike nation with united counsels, had separately pitched their habitations in the fertile though desolate province of Pannonia. The Huns still threatened their revolted subjects, but their hasty attack was repelled by the single forces of Walamir, and the news of his victory reached the distant camp of his brother in the same auspicious moment that the favourite concubine of Theodemir was delivered of a son and heir. In the eighth year of his age, Theodoric was reluctantly yielded by his father to the public interest, as the pledge of an alliance which Leo, emperor of the East, had consented to purchase by an annual subsidy of three hundred pounds of gold. The royal hostage was educated at Constantinople with care and tenderness. His body

<sup>a</sup> Jornandes (*de rebus Geticis*, c. 13, 14, p. 629, 630, edit. Grot.) has drawn the pedigree of Theodoric from Gapt, one of the *Anse* or demigods, who lived about the time of Domitian. Cassiodorus, the first who celebrates the royal race of the Amali, (*Variar.* viii. 5; ix. 25; x. 2; xi. 1), reckons the grandson of Theodoric as the xviii in descent. Peringsciold (the Swedish commentator of Cochlæus, *Vit. Theodoric*, p. 271, &c. Stockholm, 1699) labours to connect this genealogy with the legends or traditions of his native country.

<sup>b</sup> More correctly on the banks of the lake Pelso, (*Nieusiedler-see*), near Carnuntum, almost on the same spot where Marcus Antoninus composed his meditations, (*Jornandes*, c. 52, p. 659. *Severin. Pannonia Illustrata*, p. 22. *Cellarius, Geograph. Antiq.* tom. i, p. 350).

was formed to all the exercises of war, his mind was expanded by the habits of liberal conversation; he frequented the schools of the most skilful masters; but he disdained or neglected the arts of Greece, and so ignorant did he always remain of the first elements of science, that a rude mark was contrived to represent the signature of the illiterate king of Italy.<sup>c</sup> As soon as he had attained the age of eighteen, he was restored to the wishes of the Ostrogoths, whom the emperor aspired to gain by liberality and confidence. Walamir had fallen in battle; the youngest of the brothers, Widimir, had led away into Italy and Gaul an army of barbarians, and the whole nation acknowledged for their king the father of Theodoric. His ferocious subjects admired the strength and stature of their young prince;<sup>d</sup> and he soon convinced them that he had not degenerated from the valour of his ancestors. At the head of six thousand volunteers, he secretly left the camp in quest of adventures, descended the Danube as far as Singidunum or Belgrade, and soon returned to his father with the spoils of a Sarmatian king whom he had vanquished and slain. Such triumphs, however, were

<sup>c</sup> The four first letters of his name (ΘΞΩΔ) were inscribed on a gold plate, and when it was fixed on the paper, the king drew his pen through the intervals, (Anonym. Valesian. ad Calcem Amm. Marcellin. p. 722). This authentic fact, with the testimony of Procopius, or at least of the contemporary Goths, (Gothic. l. i, c. 2, p. 311), far outweighs the vague praises of Ennodius, (Sirmond Opera, tom. i, p. 1596), and Theophanes, (Chronograph. p. 112).

<sup>d</sup> *Statura est quæ resignet proceritate regnantem*, (Ennodius, p. 1614). The bishop of Pavia (I mean the ecclesiastic who wished to be a bishop) then proceeds to celebrate the complexion, eyes, hands, &c. of his sovereign.

CHAP. productive only of fame, and the invincible Ostrogoths were reduced to extreme distress by the want of clothing and food. They unanimously resolved to desert their Pannonian encampments, and boldly to advance into the warm and wealthy neighbourhood of the Byzantine court, which already maintained in pride and luxury so many bands of confederate Goths. After proving by some acts of hostility that they could be dangerous, or at least troublesome, enemies, the Ostrogoths sold at a high price their reconciliation and fidelity, accepted a donative of lands and money, and were intrusted with the defence of the lower Danube, under the command of Theodoric, who succeeded after his father's death to the hereditary throne of the Amali.\*

The reign  
of Zeno,  
A. D. 474-  
491, Feb.  
Apr. 9.

An hero, descended from a race of kings, must have despised the base Isaurian who was invested with the Roman purple, without any endowments of mind or body, without any advantages of royal birth, or superior qualifications. After the failure of the Theodosian line, the choice of Pulcheria and of the senate might be justified in some measure by the characters of Martian and Leo, but the latter of these princes confirmed and dishonoured his reign by the perfidious murder of Aspar and his sons, who too rigorously exacted the debt of gratitude and obedience. The inheritance of Leo and of the East was peaceably

\* The state of the Ostrogoths, and the first years of Theodoric, are found in Jornandes, (c. 52-56, p. 689-696), and Malchus, (Excerpt. legat. p. 78-80), who erroneously styles him the son of Walamir.

devolved on his infant grandson, the son of his daughter Ariadne; and her Isaurian husband, the fortunate Trascalisseus, exchanged that barbarous sound for the Grecian appellation of Zeno. After the decease of the elder Leo, he approached with unnatural respect the throne of his son, humbly received, as a gift, the second rank in the empire, and soon excited the public suspicion on the sudden and premature death of his young colleague, whose life could no longer promote the success of his ambition. But the palace of Constantinople was ruled by female influence, and agitated by female passions: and Verina, the widow of Leo, claiming ~~his empire as her own, presented a sentence of~~ deposition against the worthless and ungrateful servant on whom she alone had bestowed the sceptre of the East.<sup>f</sup> As soon as she sounded a revolt in the ears of Zeno, he fled with precipitation into the mountains of Isauria, and her brother Basiliscus, already infamous by his African expedition,<sup>g</sup> was unanimously proclaimed by the servile senate. But the reign of the usurper was short and turbulent. Basiliscus presumed to assassinate the lover of his sister; he dared to offend the lover of his wife, the vain and insolent Harmatius, who, in the midst of Asiatic luxury, affected the dress, the demeanour, and the surname of Achilles.<sup>h</sup> By the conspiracy of the malecontents, Zeno was re-

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

<sup>f</sup> Theophanes (p. 111) inserts a copy of her sacred letters to the provinces: *ἵτι ὅτι βασιλειον ἡμετερον ἵτι . . . και ὅτι προχειρησαμεθα βασιλεια Τρασκαλλισσιου, &c.* Such female pretensions would have astonished the slaves of the first Cæsars.

<sup>g</sup> Vol. vi, p. 201-204.

<sup>h</sup> Suidas, tom. i, p. 332, 333, edit. Kuster.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

called from exile; the armies, the capital, the person of Basiliscus, were betrayed; and his whole family was condemned to the long agony of cold and hunger by the inhuman conqueror, who wanted courage to encounter or to forgive his enemies. The haughty spirit of Verina was still incapable of submission or repose. She provoked the enmity of a favourite general, embraced his cause as soon as he was disgraced, created a new emperor in Syria and Egypt, raised an army of seventy thousand men, and persisted to the last moment of her life in a fruitless rebellion, which, according to the fashion of the age, had been predicted by Christian hermits and pagan magicians. While the East was afflicted by the passions of Verina, her daughter Ariadne was distinguished by the female virtues of mildness and fidelity; she followed her husband in his exile, and after his restoration she implored his clemency in favour of her mother. On the decease of Zeno, Ariadne, the daughter, the mother, and the widow of an emperor, gave her hand and the imperial title to Anastasius, an aged domestic of the palace, who survived his elevation above twenty-seven years, and whose character is attested by the acclamation of the people,—“Reign as you have lived!”<sup>1</sup>

Of Anastasius, A. D.  
491–518,  
April 11,  
July 8.

<sup>1</sup> The contemporary histories of Malchus and Candidus are lost; but some extracts or fragments have been saved by Photius, (lxxviii, lxxix, p. 100–102); Constantine Porphyrogenitus, (Excerpt. Leg. p. 78–97), and in various articles of the Lexicon of Suidas. The Chronicle of Marcellinus (Imago Historiæ) are originals for the reigns of Zeno and Anastasius; and I must acknowledge, almost for the last time, my obligations to the large and accurate collections of Tillemont, (Hist. des Emp. tom. vi, p. 472–652).

Whatever fear or affection could bestow, was profusely lavished by Zeno on the king of the Ostrogoths; the rank of patrician and consul, the command of the Palatine troops, an equestrian statue, a treasure in gold and silver of many thousand pounds, the name of son, and the promise of a rich and honourable wife. As long as Theodoric condescended to serve, he supported with courage and fidelity the cause of his benefactor: his rapid march contributed to the restoration of Zeno; and in the second revolt, the *Walamirs*, as they were called, pursued and pressed the Asiatic rebels, till they left an easy victory to the imperial troops. ~~But the fifth century was suddenly~~ converted into a formidable enemy, who spread the flames of war from Constantinople to the Adriatic; many flourishing cities were reduced to ashes, and the agriculture of Thrace was almost extirpated by the wanton cruelty of the Goths, who deprived their captive peasants of the right hand that guided the plough.<sup>1</sup> On such occasions, Theodoric sustained the loud and specious reproach of disloyalty, of ingratitude, and of insatiate avarice, which could be only excused by the hard necessity of his situation. He reigned,

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

Service  
and revolt  
of Theo-  
doric,  
A. D. 475-  
488.

\* In ipsa congressionis tuæ foribus cessit invasor, cum profugo per te sceptra redderentur de salutæ dubitanti. Ennodius then proceeds (p. 1596, 1597, tom. i, Sirmond.) to transport his hero (on a flying-dragon?) into Æthiopia, beyond the tropic of Cancer. The evidence of the Valesian Fragment, (p. 717), Liberatus, (Brev. Eutyth. c. 25, p. 118), and Theophanes, (p. 112), is more sober and rational.

<sup>1</sup> This cruel practice is specially imputed to the *Triarian* Goths, less barbarous, as it should seem, than the *Walamirs*: but the son of Theodemur is charged with the ruin of many Roman cities, (Malchus Excerpt. Leg. p. 95).

CHAP.

XXXIX.

not as the monarch, but as the minister of a ferocious people, whose spirit was unbroken by slavery, and impatient of real or imaginary insults. Their poverty was incurable; since the most liberal donatives were soon dissipated in wasteful luxury, and the most fertile estates became barren in their hands; they despised, but they envied, the laborious provincials; and when their subsistence had failed, the Ostrogoths embraced the familiar resources of war and rapine. It had been the wish of Theodoric (such at least was his declaration) to lead a peaceable, obscure, obedient life, on the confines of Scythia, till the Byzantine court, by splendid and fallacious promises, seduced him to attack a confederate tribe of Goths, who had been engaged in the party of Basiliscus. He marched from his station in Mæsia, on the solemn assurance that before he reached Adrianople, he should meet a plentiful convoy of provisions, and a reinforcement of eight thousand horse and thirty thousand foot, while the legions of Asia were encamped at Heraclea to second his operations. These measures were disappointed by mutual jealousy. As he advanced into Thrace, the son of Theodemir found an inhospitable solitude, and his Gothic followers, with an heavy train of horses, of mules, and of waggons, were betrayed by their guides among the rocks and precipices of Mount Sondis, where he was assaulted by the arms and invectives of Theodoric the son of Triarius. From a neighbouring height, his artful rival harangued the camp of the *Walamirs*, and branded their leader with the opprobrious

names of child, of madman, of perjured traitor, the enemy of his blood and nation. "Are you ignorant," exclaimed the son of Triarius, "that it is the constant policy of the Romans to destroy the Goths by each other's swords? Are you insensible that the victor in this unnatural contest will be exposed, and justly exposed, to their implacable revenge? Where are those warriors, my kinsmen and thy own, whose widows now lament that their lives were sacrificed to thy rash ambition? Where is the wealth which thy soldiers possessed when they were first allured from their native homes to enlist under thy standard? ~~Each of them was the master of three or four~~ horses; they now follow thee on foot like slaves, through the deserts of Thrace; those men who were tempted by the hope of measuring gold with a bushel, those brave men who are as free and as noble as thyself." A language so well suited to the temper of the Goths, excited clamour and discontent; and the son of Theodemir, apprehensive of being left alone, was compelled to embrace his brethren, and to imitate the example of Roman perfidy.<sup>m</sup>

In every state of his fortune, the prudence and firmness of Theodoric were equally conspicuous;

He undertakes the conquest of Italy.  
A. D. 489.

<sup>m</sup> Jornandes (c. 56, 57, p. 696) displays the services of Theodoric, confesses his rewards, but dissembles his revolt, of which such curious details have been preserved by Malchus, (*Excerpt. Legat. p. 78-97*). Marcellinus, a domestic of Justinian, under whose ivth consulship (A. D. 534) he composed his Chronicle, (*Scaliger, Thesaurus Temporum, P. ii, p. 34-57*), betrays his prejudice and passion: in Græciam debacchantem . . . Zenonis munificentia pene pacatus . . . beneficiis nunquam satiat, &c.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

whether he threatened Constantinople at the head of the confederate Goths, or retreated with a faithful band to the mountains and sea-coast of Epirus. At length the accidental death of the son of Triarius<sup>n</sup> destroyed the balance which the Romans had been so anxious to preserve; the whole nation acknowledged the supremacy of the Amali, and the Byzantine court subscribed an ignominious and oppressive treaty.<sup>o</sup> The senate had already declared, that it was necessary to choose a party among the Goths, since the public was unequal to the support of their united forces; a subsidy of two thousand pounds of gold, with the ample pay of thirteen thousand men, were required for the least considerable of their armies;<sup>p</sup> and the Isaurians, who guarded not the empire, but the emperor, enjoyed, besides the privilege of rapine, an annual pension of five thousand pounds. The sagacious mind of Theodoric soon perceived that he was odious to the Romans, and suspected by the barbarians; he understood the popular murmur, that his subjects were exposed in their frozen huts to intolerable hardships, while their king was dissolved in the luxury of Greece; and he prevented the painful alternative of encountering the Goths, as the champion, or of leading them to the field as the enemy, of Zeno. Embracing an enterprise worthy of his courage and ambition, Theodoric

<sup>n</sup> As he was riding in his own camp, an unruly horse threw him against the point of a spear which hung before a tent, or was fixed on a waggon, (Marcellin. in Chron. Evagrius, l. iii, c. 25).

<sup>o</sup> See Malchus, (p. 91), and Evagrius, (l. iii, c. 35).

<sup>p</sup> Malchus, p. 85. In a single action, which was decided by the skill and discipline of Sabinian, Theodoric could lose 5000 men.

addressed the emperor in the following words.—  
 “ Although your servant is maintained in afflu-  
 “ ence by your liberality, graciously listen to the  
 “ wishes of my heart ! Italy, the inheritance of  
 “ your predecessors, and Rome itself, the head and  
 “ mistress of the world, now fluctuate under the  
 “ violence and oppression of Odoacer the merce-  
 “ nary. Direct me, with my national troops, to  
 “ march against the tyrant. If I fall, you will be  
 “ relieved from an expensive and troublesome  
 “ friend : if, with the divine permission, I suc-  
 “ ceed, I shall govern in your name, and to your  
 “ glory, the Roman senate, and the part of the  
 “ ~~republic delivered from slavery by my victo-~~  
 “ rious arms.” The proposal of Theodoric was  
 accepted, and perhaps had been suggested, by the  
 Byzantine court. But the forms of the commission  
 or grant, appear to have been expressed with a  
 prudent ambiguity, which might be explained by  
 the event; and it was left doubtful, whether the  
 conqueror of Italy should reign as the lieutenant,  
 the vassal, or the ally of the emperor of the  
 East.<sup>1</sup>

The reputation both of the leader and of the war diffused an universal ardour; the *Walamirs* His march.  
 were multiplied by the Gothic swarms already  
 engaged in the service, or seated in the provinces,  
 of the empire; and each bold barbarian, who had  
 heard of the wealth and beauty of Italy, was im-

<sup>1</sup> Jornandes (c. 57, p. 696, 697) has abridged the great history of Cassiodorus. See, compare, and reconcile, Procopius, (Gothic. l. i, c. 1), the Valesian Fragment, (p. 718), Theophanes, (p. 113), and Marcellinus. (in Chron.)

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

patient to seek, through the most perilous adventures, the possession of such enchanting objects. The march of Theodoric must be considered as the emigration of an entire people; the wives and children of the Goths, their aged parents, and most precious effects, were carefully transported; and some idea may be formed of the heavy baggage that now followed the camp, by the loss of two thousand waggons, which had been sustained in a single action in the war of Epirus. For their subsistence, the Goths depended on the magazines of corn which was ground in portable mills by the hands of their women; on the milk and flesh of their flocks and herds; on the casual produce of the chase, and upon the contributions which they might impose on all who should presume to dispute the passage, or to refuse their friendly assistance. Notwithstanding these precautions, they were exposed to the danger, and almost to the distress, of famine, in a march of seven hundred miles, which had been undertaken in the depth of a rigorous winter. Since the fall of the Roman power, Dacia and Pannonia no longer exhibited the rich prospect of populous cities, well cultivated fields, and convenient highways: the reign of barbarism and desolation was restored, and the tribes of Bulgarians, Gepidæ, and Sarmatians, who had occupied the vacant province, were prompted by their native fierceness, or the solicitations of Odoacer, to resist the progress of his enemy. In many obscure though bloody battles, Theodoric fought and vanquished; till at length, surmounting every obstacle by skilful conduct and

persevering courage, he descended from the Julian Alps, and displayed his invincible banners on the confines of Italy.<sup>f</sup>

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

The three  
defeats of  
Odoacer,  
A. D. 489,  
Aug. 28,  
Sept. 27;  
A. D. 490,  
August.

Odoacer, a rival not unworthy of his arms, had already occupied the advantageous and well-known post of the river Sontius near the ruins of Aquileia, at the head of a powerful host, whose independent *kings*<sup>g</sup> or leaders disdained the duties of subordination and the prudence of delays. No sooner had Theodoric granted a short repose and refreshment to his wearied cavalry, than he boldly attacked the fortifications of the enemy; the Ostrogoths shewed more ardour to acquire, than the mercenaries to defend, the lands of Italy; and the reward of the first victory was the possession of the Venetian province as far as the walls of Verona. In the neighbourhood of that city, on the steep banks of the rapid Adige, he was opposed by a new army, reinforced in its numbers, and not impaired in its courage: the contest was more obstinate, but the event was still more decisive; Odoacer fled to Ravenna, Theodoric advanced to Milan, and the vanquished troops saluted their conqueror with loud acclamations of respect and fidelity. But their want either of constancy or of faith, soon exposed him to the most imminent danger; his vanguard, with several Gothic counts, which had been rashly

<sup>f</sup> Theodoric's march is supplied and illustrated by Ennodius, (p. 1598-1602), when the bombast of the oration is translated into the language of common sense.

<sup>g</sup> Tot reges, &c. (Ennodius, p. 1602). We must recollect how much the royal title was multiplied and degraded, and that the mercenaries of Italy were the fragments of many tribes and nations.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
.....

intrusted to a deserter, was betrayed and destroyed near Faenza by his double treachery; Odoacer again appeared master of the field, and the invader, strongly intrenched in his camp of Pavia, was reduced to solicit the aid of a kindred nation, the Visigoths of Gaul. In the course of this history, the most voracious appetite for war will be abundantly satiated; nor can I much lament that our dark and imperfect materials do not afford a more ample narrative of the distress of Italy, and of the fierce conflict, which was finally decided by the abilities, experience, and valour of the Gothic king. Immediately before the battle of Verona, he visited the tent of his mother<sup>t</sup> and sister, and requested, that on a day, the most illustrious festival of his life, they would adorn him with the rich garments which they had worked with their own hands. "Our glory," said he, "is mutual and inseparable. You are known to the world as the mother of Theodoric; and it becomes me to prove that I am the genuine offspring of those heroes from whom I claim my descent." The wife or concubine of Theodemir was inspired with the spirit of the German matrons, who esteemed their son's honour far above their safety; and it is reported, that in a desperate action, when Theodoric himself was hurried along by the torrent of a flying crowd, she boldly met them at the entrance

<sup>t</sup> See Ennodius, p. 1603, 1604. Since the orator, in the king's presence, could mention and praise his mother, we may conclude that the magnanimity of Theodoric was not hurt by the vulgar reproaches of concubine and bastard.

of the camp, and, by her generous reproaches, drove them back on the swords of the enemy.<sup>a</sup>

From the Alps to the extremity of Calabria, Theodoric reigned by the right of conquest: the Vandal ambassadors surrendered the island of Sicily, as a lawful appendage of his kingdom; and he was accepted as the deliverer of Rome by the senate and people, who had shut their gates against the flying usurper.<sup>x</sup> Ravenna alone, secure in the fortifications of art and nature, still sustained a siege of almost three years; and the daring sallies of Odoacer carried slaughter and dismay into the Gothic camp. At length, destitute of provisions, and ~~hopeless of relief, that unfortunate monarch yield-~~ed to the groans of his subjects and the clamours of his soldiers. A treaty of peace was negotiated by the bishop of Ravenna; the Ostrogoths were admitted into the city, and the hostile kings consented, under the sanction of an oath, to rule with equal and undivided authority the provinces of Italy. The event of such an agreement may be easily foreseen. After some days had been devoted to the semblance of joy and friendship, Odoacer, in the midst of a solemn banquet, was stabbed by the hand, or at least by the command, of his rival. Secret and effectual orders had

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
.....

His capitulation and death,  
A. D. 493,  
March 3.

<sup>a</sup> This anecdote is related on the modern but respectable authority of Sigonius, (op. tom. i, p. 580; De Occident. Imp. l. xv): his words are curious.—“Would you return?” &c. She presented, and almost displayed, the original recess.

<sup>x</sup> Hist. Miscell. l. xv, a Roman history from Janus to the sixth century, an Epitome of Eutropius, Paulus Diaconus, and Theophanes, which Muratori has published from a MS. in the Ambrosian library, (Script. Rerum Italicarum, tom i, p. 100).

CHAP. been previously despatched; the faithless and rapacious mercenaries, at the same moment, and without resistance, were universally massacred; and the royalty of Theodoric was proclaimed by the Goths, with the tardy, reluctant, ambiguous consent of the emperor of the East. The design of a conspiracy was imputed, according to the usual forms, to the prostrate tyrant; but his innocence, and the guilt of his conqueror,<sup>1</sup> are sufficiently proved by the advantageous treaty, which force would not sincerely have granted, nor weakness have rashly infringed. The jealousy of power, and the mischiefs of discord, may suggest a more decent apology, and a sentence less rigorous may be pronounced against a crime which was necessary to introduce into Italy a generation of public felicity. The living author of this felicity was audaciously praised in his own presence by sacred and profane orators;<sup>2</sup> but history (in his time she was mute and inglorious) has not left any just representation of the events which displayed, or of the defects which clouded, the virtues of Theodoric.<sup>3</sup> One

Reign of  
Theodoric  
king of  
Italy,  
A. D. 493,  
March 5—  
A. D. 526,  
Aug. 30.

<sup>1</sup> Procopius (Gothic. l. i, c. i) approves himself an impartial sceptic; *φασὶ . . . δολίαν ἔροπην ἐκτείνει*. Cassiodorus, (in Chron.), and Ennodius, (p. 1604), are loyal and credulous; and the testimony of the Valesian Fragment (p. 718) may justify their belief. Marcellinus spits the venom of a Greek subject—*perjuriis illectus, interfectusque est*, (in Chron.).

<sup>2</sup> The sonorous and servile oration of Ennodius was pronounced at Milan or Ravenna in the years 507 or 508, (Sirmond, tom. 1, p. 1615). Two or three years afterwards, the orator was rewarded with the bishopric of Pavia, which he held till his death in the year 521. (Dupin Bibliot. Eccles. tom. v, p. 11–14. See Saxii Onomasticon, tom. ii, p. 12).

<sup>3</sup> Our best materials are occasional hints from Procopius and the Valesian Fragment, which was discovered by Sirmond, and is published

record of his fame, the volume of public epistles composed by Cassiodorius in the royal name is still extant, and has obtained more implicit credit than it seems to deserve.<sup>b</sup> They exhibit the forms, rather than the substance, of his government; and we should vainly search for the pure and spontaneous sentiments of the barbarian amidst the declamation and learning of a sophist, the wishes of a Roman senator, the precedents of office, and the vague professions, which, in every court, and on every occasion, compose the language of discreet ministers. The reputation of Theodoric may repose with more confidence on the visible peace and prosperity of a reign of thirty-three years: the unanimous esteem of his own times, and the memory of his wisdom and courage, his justice and humanity, which was deeply impressed on the minds of the Goths and Italians.

The partition of the lands of Italy, of which Theodoric assigned the third part to his soldiers, is *honorably* arraigned as the sole injustice of his life. And even this act may be fairly justified by the example of Odoacer, the rights of conquest, the true interest of the Italians, and the sacred duty

Partition  
of lands.

lished at the end of Ammianus Marcellinus. The author's name is unknown, and his style is barbarous; but in his various facts he exhibits the knowledge, without the passions, of a contemporary. The president Montesquieu had formed the plan of an history of Theodoric, which at a distance might appear a rich and interesting subject.

<sup>b</sup> The best edition of the *Variarum Libri xli*, is that of Joh. Garretius, (Rotomagi, 1678, in Opp. Cassiodor. 2 vol. in fol.); but they deserved and required such an editor as the Marquis Scipio Maffei, who thought of publishing them at Verona. The *Barbara Elegans* (as it is ingeniously named by Tiraboschi) is never simple, and seldom perspicuous.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

of subsisting a whole people, who, on the faith of his promises, had transported themselves into a distant land.<sup>c</sup> Under the reign of Theodoric, and in the happy climate of Italy, the Goths soon multiplied to a formidable host of two hundred thousand men,<sup>d</sup> and the whole amount of their families may be computed by the ordinary addition of women and children. Their invasion of property, a part of which must have been already vacant, was disguised by the generous but improper name of *hospitality*; these unwelcome guests were irregularly dispersed over the face of Italy, and the lot of each barbarian was adequate to his birth and office, the number of his followers, and the rustic wealth which he possessed in slaves and cattle. The distinctions of noble and plebeian were acknowledged,<sup>e</sup> but the lands of every freeman were exempt from taxes, and he enjoyed the inestimable privilege of being subject only to the laws of his country.<sup>f</sup> Fashion, and even convenience, soon persuaded the conquerors to assume the more elegant dress of the natives, but they still persisted in the use of their mother-tongue; and their contempt for the Latin schools was applauded by The-

<sup>c</sup> Procopius, Gothic. l. i, c. i; Variarum R. Maffei (Verona Illustrat. p. i, p. 328) exaggerates the injustice of the Goths, whom he hated as an Italian noble. The plebeian Muratori crouches under their oppression.

<sup>d</sup> Procopius, Goth. l. i, c. 4, 21. Ennodius describes (p. 1612, 1613) the military arts and increasing numbers of the Goths.

<sup>e</sup> When Theodoric gave his sister to the king of the Vandals, she sailed for Africa with a guard of 1000 noble Goths, each of whom was attended by five armed followers, (Procop. Vandal. l. i, c. 6). The Gothic nobility must have been as numerous as brave.

<sup>f</sup> See the acknowledgment of Gothic liberty, Var. v, 38.

odoric himself, who gratified their prejudices, or his own, by declaring, that the child who had trembled at a rod, would never dare to look upon a sword.\* Distress might sometimes provoke the indigent Roman to assume the ferocious manners which were insensibly relinquished by the rich and luxurious barbarian:† but these mutual conversions were not encouraged by the policy of a monarch who perpetuated the separation of the Italians and Goths; reserving the former for the arts of peace, and the latter for the service of war. To accomplish this design, he studied to protect his industrious subjects, and to moderate the violence

Separation  
of the  
Goths and  
Italians.

written laws. The laws were maintained for the public defence. They held their lands and benefices as a military stipend at the sound of the trumpet, they were prepared to march under the conduct of their provincial officers; and the whole extent of Italy was distributed into the several quarters of a well-regulated camp. The service of the palace and of the frontiers was performed by choice or by rotation; and each extraordinary fatigue was recompensed by an increase of pay and occasional donatives. Theodoric had convinced his brave companions, that empire must be acquired and defended by the

\* Procopius, Goth. l. i, c. 2. The Roman boys learnt the language (Var. viii, 21) of the Goths. Their general ignorance is not destroyed by the exceptions of Amalasuntha, a female, who might study without shame, or of Theodatus, whose learning provoked the indignation and contempt of his countrymen.

† A saying of Theodoric was founded on experience.—“Romanus miser imitatur Gothum; et utilis (dices) Gothus imitatur Romanum.” (See the Fragment and Notes of Valesius, p. 719).

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

same arts. After his example, they strove to excel in the use, not only of the lance and sword, the instruments of their victories, but of the missile weapons, which they were too much inclined to neglect; and the lively image of war was displayed in the daily exercise and annual reviews of the Gothic cavalry. A firm though gentle discipline imposed the habits of modesty, obedience, and temperance; and the Goths were instructed to spare the people, to reverence the laws, to understand the duties of civil society, and to disclaim the barbarous license of judicial combat and private revenge.<sup>1</sup>

Foreign  
policy of  
Theodoric.

Among the barbarians of the West, the victory of Theodoric had spread a general alarm. But as soon as it appeared that he was satisfied with conquest, and desirous of peace, terror was changed into respect, and they submitted to a powerful mediation, which was uniformly employed for the best purposes of reconciling their quarrels and civilizing their manners.<sup>2</sup> The ambassadors who resorted to Ravenna from the most distant countries of Europe, admired his wisdom, magnificence,<sup>3</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> The view of the military establishment of the Goths in Italy, is collected from the Epistles of Cassiodorus, (Var. i. 24, 40; iii. 3, 24, 40; iv. 13, 14; v. 26, 37; viii. 3, 4, 25). They are illustrated by the learned Maccou, (Hist. of the Germans, l. xi. 40-44; Annotation xiv).

<sup>2</sup> See the clearness and vigour of his negotiations in Ennodius, (p. 1607), and Cassiodorus, (Var. iii. 1, 2, 3, 4; iv. 13; v. 43, 44), who gives the different styles of friendship, counsel, expostulation, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Even of his table (Var. vi. 9) and palace (vii. 6). The admiration of strangers is represented as the most rational motive to justify these vain expences, and to stimulate the diligence of the officers to whom those provinces were intrusted.

courtesy; and if he sometimes accepted either slaves or arms, white horses or strange animals, the gift of a sun-dial, a water-clock, or, a musician, admonished even the princes of Gaul, of the superior industry of his Italian subjects. His domestic alliances,<sup>m</sup> a wife, two daughters, a sister, and a niece, united the family of Theodoric with the kings of the Franks, the Burgundians, the Visigoths, the Vandals, and the Thuringians; and contributed to maintain the harmony, or at least the balance, of the great republic of the West.<sup>n</sup> It is difficult, in the dark forests of Germany and Poland, to pursue the emigrations of the Heruli, a fierce people, who condemned their widows and aged parents not to survive the loss of their husbands, or the decay of their strength.<sup>o</sup> The king of these savage warriors solicited the friendship of Theodoric, and was elevated to the rank of his son, according to the barbarian rites of a military adoption.<sup>p</sup> From

<sup>m</sup> See the public and private alliances of the Gothic monarch, with the Burgundians, (Var. i, 45, 46), with the Franks, (ii, 40), with the Thuringians, (iv, 1), and with the Vandals, (v, 1). Each of these epistles affords some curious knowledge of the policy and manners of the barbarians.

<sup>n</sup> His political system may be observed in Cassiodorus, Var. iv, 1; ix, 1, Jornandes, (c. 58, p. 698, 699), and the Valesian Fragment, (p. 720, 721). Peace, honourable peace, was the constant aim of Theodoric.

<sup>o</sup> The curious reader may contemplate the Heruli of Procopius, (Goth. i. ii, c. 14), and the patient reader may plunge into the dark and minute researches of M. de Bont, (Hist. des Peuples Anciens, tom. ix, p. 348-396).

<sup>p</sup> Variarum, iv, 2. The spirit and forms of this martial institution are noticed by Cassiodorus; but he seems to have only translated the sentiments of the Gothic king into the language of Roman eloquence.

CHAP.

XXXIX.

the shores of the Baltic, the *Æstians*, or *Livonians*, laid their offerings of native amber<sup>1</sup> at the feet of a prince, whose fame had excited them to undertake an unknown and dangerous journey of fifteen hundred miles. With the country<sup>2</sup> from whence the Gothic nation derived their origin, he maintained a frequent and friendly correspondence; the Italians were clothed in the rich robes of Sweden; and one of its sovereigns, after a voluntary or reluctant abdication, found an hospitable retreat in the palace of Ravenna. He had reigned over one of the thirteen populous tribes who cultivated a small portion of the great island or peninsula of Scandinavia, to which the vague appellation of *Thule* has been sometimes applied. That northern region was peopled, or had been explored, as high as the sixty-eighth degree of latitude, where the natives of the polar circle enjoy and lose the presence of the sun at each summer and

<sup>1</sup> Cassiodorus, who quotes Tacitus to the *Æstians*, the unlettered savages of the Baltic, (Var. v, 2), describes the amber for which their shores have ever been famous, as the gum of a tree, hardened by the sun, and purified and wafted by the waves. When that singular substance is analysed by the chemists, it yields a vegetable oil and a mineral acid.

<sup>2</sup> *Scanzia*, or *Thule*, is described by Jornandes, (c. 2, p. 610-613), and Procopius, (Goth. l. ii, c. 15). Neither the Goth nor the Greek had visited the country: both had conversed with the natives in their exile at Ravenna or Constantinople.

<sup>3</sup> *Sapheus pelles*. In the time of Jornandes, they inhabited *Suetlans*, the proper Sweden; but that beautiful race of animals has gradually been driven into the eastern parts of Siberia. See Buffon, (Hist. Nat. tom. xiii, p. 309-313, quarto edition); Pennant, (System of Quadrupeds, vol. i, p. 322-328); Gmelin, (Hist. Gen. des Voyages, tom. xviii, p. 257, 258), and Levesque, (Hist. de Russie, tom. v, p. 165, 166, 514, 515).

winter solstice during an equal period of forty days.<sup>1</sup> The long night of his absence or death was the mournful season of distress and anxiety, till the messengers who had been sent to the mountain tops descried the first rays of returning light, and proclaimed to the plain below the festival of his resurrection.<sup>CHAP. XXXIX.</sup>

The life of Theodoric represents the rare and meritorious example of a barbarian, who sheathed his sword in the pride of victory and the vigour of his age. A reign of three and thirty years was consecrated to the duties of civil government, and the hostilities in which he was engaged were terminated by the conduct of his lieutenants, the discipline of his troops, the arms of his allies, and even by the terror of his name. He reduced, under a strong and regular government, the unprofitable countries of Rhetia, Noricum, Dalmatia, and Pannonia, from the source of the Danube and the territory of the Bavarians,<sup>2</sup> to the petty kingdom

His defensive wars.

<sup>1</sup> In the system or romance of M. Bailly, (*Lettres sur les Sciences et sur l'Atlantide*, tom. i, p. 249-256; tom. ii, p. 114-139), the phoenix of the Edda, and the annual death and revival of Adonis and Osiris, are the allegorical symbols of the absence and return of the sun in the Arctic regions. This ingenious writer is a worthy disciple of the great Buffon: not is it easy for the coldest reason to withstand the magic of their philosophy.

<sup>2</sup> *Aura et Solis in pectore suo ignem* etc, says Procopius. At present a rude Manichæism (generous enough) prevails among the Samoyedes in Greenland and in Lapland; (*Hist. des Voyages*, tom. xviii, p. 508, 509; tom. xix, p. 105, 106, 527, 528); yet, according to Grotius, *Samojedæ coelum atque astra adorant, summa haud aliis iniquiora*, (*de Rebus Belgicis*, l. iv, p. 336, folio edition): a sentence which Tacitus would not have disowned.

<sup>3</sup> See the *Hist. des Peuples Anciens*, &c. tom. ix, p. 255-273, 396-401. The Count de Buat was French minister at the court of Bavaria:

a liberal

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

erected by the Gepidæ on the ruins of Sirmium. His prudence could not safely intrust the bulwark of Italy to such feeble and turbulent neighbours; and his justice might claim the lands which they oppressed; either as a part of his kingdom, or as the inheritance of his father. The greatness of a servant, who was named perfidious because he was successful, awakened the jealousy of the emperor Anastasius; and a war was kindled on the Dacian frontier, by the protection which the Gothic king, in the vicissitude of human affairs, had granted to one of the descendants of Attila. Sabinian, a general illustrious by his own and his father's merit, advanced at the head of ten thousand Romans; and the provisions and arms, which filled a long train of waggon, were distributed to the fiercest of the Bulgarian tribes. But, in the fields of Margus, the eastern powers were defeated by the inferior forces of the Goths and Huns; the flower and even the hope of the Roman armies was irretrievably destroyed; and such was the temperance with which Theodoric had inspired his victorious troops, that as their leader had not given the signal of pillage, the rich spoils of the enemy lay untouched at their feet.\* Exasperated by this disgrace, the Byzantine court despatched two hundred ships and eight thousand

His naval  
armament,  
A. D. 509.

a liberal curiosity prompted his inquiries into the antiquities of the country, and that curiosity was the germ of twelve respectable volumes.

\* See the Gothic transactions on the Danube and in Illyricum, in Jornandes, (c. 58, p. 699); Ennodius, (p. 1607-1610); Marcellinus, (in Chron. p. 44, 47, 48), and Cassiodorus, (in Chron. and Var. iii, 23, 50; iv, 13; vii, 4, 24; viii, 9, 10, 11, 21; ix, 8, 9).

men to plunder the sea-coast of Calabria and Apulia; they assaulted the ancient city of Tarentum, interrupted the trade and agriculture of an happy country, and sailed back to the Hellespont, proud of their piratical victory over a people whom they still presumed to consider as their *Roman* brethren. Their retreat was possibly hastened by the activity of Theodoric; Italy was covered by a fleet of a thousand light vessels,\* which he constructed with incredible despatch; and his firm moderation was soon rewarded by a solid and honourable peace. He maintained with a powerful hand the balance of the West, till it was at length overthrown by the invasions of the Goths; and though unable to assist his rash and unfortunate kinsman the king of the Visigoths, he saved the remains of his family and people, and checked the Franks in the midst of their victorious career. I am not desirous to prolong or repeat<sup>b</sup> this narrative of military events, the least interesting of the reign of Theodoric; and shall be content to add, that the Alemanni were protected,<sup>c</sup> that an

\* I cannot forbear transcribing the liberal and classic style of Count Marcellinus: *Romanus cornes domesticorum, et Rusticus cornes scholariorum cum centum armatis navibus, totidemque dromonibus, octo millia militum, armatorum secum ferentibus, ad devastanda Italiae littora processerunt; et usque ad Tarentum antiquissimam civitatem aggressi sunt; remensque mari inhonestam victoriam quam piratico ausu Romani ex Romanis rapuerunt, Anastasio Cesari reportarunt*, (in Chron. p. 48). See *Variar.* i, 16; ii, 38.

<sup>b</sup> See the royal orders and instructions, (*Var.* iv, 15; v, 16-20). These armed boats should be still smaller than the thousand vessels of Agamemnon at the siege of Troy.

<sup>c</sup> Vol. vi, p. 330-337.

<sup>d</sup> Ennodius, (p. 1610), and Cassiodorus, in the royal name, (*Var.* ii, 41), record his salutary protection of the Alemanni.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
.....

inroad of the Burgundians was severely chastised, and that the conquest of Arles and Marseilles opened a free communication with the Visigoths, who revered him both as their national protector, and as the guardian of his grandchild, the infant son of Alaric. Under this respectable character, the king of Italy restored the pretorian prefecture of the Gauls, reformed some abuses in the civil government of Spain, and accepted the annual tribute and apparent submission of its military governor, who wisely refused to trust his person in the palace of Ravenna. The Gothic sovereignty was established from Sicily to the Danube, from Sirmium or Belgrade to the Atlantic ocean; and the Greeks themselves have acknowledged that this was the last great point of the western empire.

Civil government of Italy according to the Roman laws.

The union of the Goths and Romans might have fixed for ages the transient happiness of Italy; and the first of nations, a new people of free subjects and enlightened soldiers, might have gradually arisen from the mutual emulation of their respective virtues. But the sublime merit of guiding or seconding such a revolution, was not reserved for the reign of Theodoric; he wanted either the genius or the opportunities of

<sup>d</sup> The Gothic transactions in Gaul and Spain are represented with some perplexity in Cassiodorus, (Var. iii, 32, 38, 41, 43, 44; v, 39); Jornandes, (c. 58, p. 698, 699), and Procopius, Goth. l. i. c. 13. I will neither hear nor reconcile the long and contradictory arguments of the Abbé Dubos and the Count de Buss, about the state of Burgundy.

<sup>e</sup> Theophanes, p. 113.

a legislator ;<sup>f</sup> and while he indulged the Goths in the enjoyment of rude liberty, he servilely copied the institutions, and even the abuses, of the political system which had been framed by Constantine and his successors. From a tender regard to the expiring prejudices of Rome, the barbarian declined the name, the purple, and the diadem of the emperors ; but he assumed, under the hereditary title of king, the whole substance and plenitude of imperial prerogative.<sup>g</sup> His addresses to the eastern throne were respectful and ambiguous ; he celebrated in pompous style the harmony of the two republics, applauded his ~~own government as the only one of its kind~~ sole and undivided empire, and claimed above the kings of the earth the same pre-eminence which he modestly allowed to the person or rank of Anastasius. The alliance of the East and West was annually declared by the unanimous choice of two consuls ; but it should seem that the Italian candidate who was named by Theodoric, accepted a formal confirmation from the sovereign of Constantinople.<sup>h</sup> The Gothic palace of Ravenna re-

<sup>f</sup> Procopius affirms that no laws whatsoever were promulgated by Theodoric and the succeeding kings of Italy, (Goth. l. ii, c. 6). He must mean in the Gothic language. A Latin edict of Theodoric is still extant, in one hundred and fifty-four articles.

<sup>g</sup> The image of Theodoric is engraved on his coins : his modest successors were satisfied with adding their own name to the head of the reigning emperor, (Muratori Antiquitat. Italicae Mediæ Aevi, tom. ii, dissert. xlvii, p. 577-579. Giannone Istoria Civile di Napoli, tom. i, p. 166).

<sup>h</sup> The alliance of the emperor and the king of Italy are represented by Cassiodorus, (Var. i, 1 ; ii, 1, 2, 3 ; vi, 1), and Procopius, (Goth. l. ii, c. 6 ; l. iii, c. 21), who celebrate the friendship of Anastasius and Theodoric : but the figurative style of compliment was interpreted in a very different sense at Constantinople and Ravenna.

CHAP.

XXXIX

flected the image of the court of Theodosius or Valentinian. The pretorian prefect, the prefect of Rome, the questor, the master of the offices, with the public and patrimonial treasurers, whose functions are painted in gaudy colours by the rhetoric of Cassiodorius, still continued to act as the ministers of state. And the subordinate care of justice and the revenue was delegated to seven consulars, three correctors, and five presidents, who governed the fifteen regions of Italy, according to the principles and even the forms of Roman jurisprudence.<sup>1</sup> The violence of the conquerors was abated or eluded by the slow artifice of judicial proceedings; the civil administration, with its honours and emoluments, was confined to the Italians, and all peoples preserved their dress and language, their laws and customs, their personal freedom, and two-thirds of their landed property. It had been the object of Augustus to conceal the introduction of monarchy; it was the policy of Theodoric to disguise the reign of a barbarian.<sup>2</sup> If his subjects

<sup>1</sup> To the xvii provinces of the Notitia, Paul Warnefrid the deacon (*De Reb. Longobard.* l. ii, c. 14-22) has subjoined an xviii<sup>th</sup>, the Apennine, (*Muratori Script. Rerum Italicarum*, tom. i, p. 431-433). But of these Sardinia and Corsica were possessed by the Vandals, and the two Rhetias, as well as the Cottian Alps, seem to have been abandoned to a military government. The state of the four provinces that now form the kingdom of Naples, is laboured by Giannone (tom. i, p. 172, 173) with patriotic diligence.

<sup>2</sup> See the Gothic history of Procopius, (l. i, c. 1; l. ii, c. 6); the Epistles of Cassiodorius, (passim, but especially the v<sup>th</sup> and vi<sup>th</sup> books, which contain the *formulae*, or patents of offices), and the Civil History of Giannone, (tom. i, l. ii, iii). The Gothic counts, which he places in every Italian city, are annihilated, however, by Maffei, (*Verona Illustrata*, p. i, l. viii, p. 227); for those of Syracuse and Naples (*Var. vi*, 22, 23) were special and temporary commissions.

were sometimes awakened from this pleasing vision of a Roman government, they derived more substantial comfort from the character of a Gothic prince, who had penetration to discern, and firmness to pursue, his own and the public interest.. Theodoric loved the virtues which he possessed, and the talents of which he was destitute. Liborius was promoted to the office of pretorian prefect for his unshaken fidelity to the unfortunate cause of Odoacer. The ministers of Theodoric, Cassiodorius<sup>1</sup> and Boethius, have reflected on his reign the lustre of their genius and learning. More prudent or more fortunate than his colleagues, he was able to maintain his position without forfeiting the royal favour; and after passing thirty years in the honours of the world, he was blessed with an equal term of repose in the devout and studious solitude of Squillace.

As the patron of the republic, it was the interest and duty of the Gothic king to cultivate the affections of the senate and people. The nobles of Rome were flattered by sonorous epithets and formal professions of respect, which had been more justly applied to the merit and authority of their

Prosperity  
of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> Two Italians of the name of Cassiodorius, the father, (Var. i. 24, 40), and the son, (ix. 24, 25), were successively employed in the administration of Theodoric. The son was born in the year 479; his various epistles as questor, master of the offices, and pretorian prefect, extend from 508 to 539, and he lived as a monk about thirty years. (Tiraboschi Storia della Letteratura Italiana, tom. iii. p. 7-24. Fabricius, Bibliot. Lat. Med. Aevi, tom. i. p. 357, 358, edit. Mansi).

<sup>2</sup> See his regard for the senate in Cochlæus, (Vit. Theod. viii. p. 72-80).

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

ancestors. The people enjoyed, without fear or danger, the three blessings of a capital, order, plenty, and public amusements. A visible diminution of their numbers may be found even in the measure of liberality;\* yet Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, poured their tribute of corn into the granaries of Rome; an allowance of bread and meat was distributed to the indigent citizens; and every office was deemed honourable which was consecrated to the care of their health and happiness. The public games, such as a Greek ambassador might politely applaud, exhibited a faint and feeble copy of the magnificence of the Cæsars: yet the musical, the gymnastic, and the pantomime arts, had not totally sunk in oblivion; the wild beasts of Africa, still exhibited in the amphitheatre the courage and dexterity of the hunters; and the indulgent Goth either patiently tolerated or gently restrained the blue and green factions, whose contests so often filled the circus with clamour, and even with blood.† In the seventh year of his peaceful reign, Theodoric visited the old capital of the world; the senate and people advanced in solemn procession to salute a second Trajan, a new Valentinian; and he nobly supported that character by the assurance of a just

Visit of  
Theodoric,  
A. D. 500.

\* No more than 120,000 modii, or four thousand quarters. (Anonym. Valesian. p. 721, and Var. i, 35; vi, 18; xi, 5, 39).

† See his regard and indulgence for the spectacles of the circus, the amphitheatre, and the theatre, in the Chronicle and Epistles of Cassiodorus, (Var. i, 20, 27, 30, 31, 32; iii, 51; iv, 51, illustrated by the ninth Annotation of Mascou's History), who has contrived to sprinkle the subject with ostentations, though agreeable, learning.

and legal government,<sup>p</sup> in a discourse which he was not afraid to pronounce in public, and to inscribe on a tablet of brass. Rome, in this august ceremony, shot a last ray of declining glory; and a saint, the spectator of this pompous scene, could only hope in his pious fancy, that it was excelled by the celestial splendour of the New Jerusalem.<sup>q</sup> During a residence of six months, the fame, the person, and the courteous demeanour of the Gothic king, excited the admiration of the Romans, and he contemplated, with equal curiosity and surprise, the monuments that remained of their ancient greatness. He imprinted the footsteps of a conqueror on the Capitoline hill, and frankly confessed that each day he viewed with fresh wonder the forum of Trajan and his lofty column. The theatre of Pompey appeared, even in its decay, as a huge mountain artificially hollowed and polished, and adorned by human industry; and he vaguely computed, that a river of gold must have been drained to erect the colossal amphitheatre of Titus.<sup>r</sup> From the mouths of fourteen aqueducts, a pure and copious stream was diffused into every part of the city; among

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
.....

<sup>p</sup> Anonym. Valer. p. 721; Marius Aventicensis in Chron. In the scale of public and personal merit, the Gothic conqueror is at least as much above Valentinian, as he may seem inferior to Trajan.

<sup>q</sup> Vit. Fulgentii in Baron. Annal. Eccles. A. D. 500, No. 10.

<sup>r</sup> Cassiodorus describes, in his pompous style, the forum of Trajan, (Var. vii, 6), the theatre of Marcellus, (iv, 51), and the amphitheatre of Titus, (v, 43); and his descriptions are not unworthy of the reader's perusal. According to the modern prices, the Abbé Barthélemy computes that the brick-work and masonry of the Colosseum would now cost twenty millions of French livres, (Mém. de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xxviii, p. 585, 586). How small a part of that stupendous fabric!

CHAP. these the Claudian water, which arose at the distance of thirty-eight miles in the Sabine mountains, was conveyed along a gentle though constant declivity of solid arches, till it descended on the summit of the Aventine hill. The long and spacious vaults which had been constructed for the purpose of common sewers, subsisted, after twelve centuries, in their pristine strength; and the subterraneous channels have been preferred to all the visible wonders of Rome.<sup>\*</sup> The Gothic kings, so injuriously accused of the ruin of antiquity, were anxious to preserve the monuments of the nation whom they had subdued.<sup>†</sup> The royal edicts were framed to prevent the abuses, the neglect, or the depredations of the citizens themselves; and a profered architect, the annual sum of two hundred pounds of gold, twenty-five thousand tiles, and the receipt of customs from the Lucrine port, were assigned for the ordinary repairs of the walls and public edifices. A similar care was extended to the statues of metal or marble, of men or animals. The spirit of the horses, which have given a modern name to the Quirinal, was applauded by the barbarians;<sup>‡</sup> the brazen

\* For the aqueducts and cloacæ, see Strabo, (l. v, p. 360); Pliny, (Hist. Nat. xxxvi, 24); Cassiodorius, (Var. iii, 30, 31; vi, 6); Procopius, (Goth. l. i, c. 19), and Nardini, (Roma Antica, p. 514, 522). How such works could be executed by a king of Rome, is yet a problem.

† For the Gothic care of the buildings and statues, see Cassiodorius, (Var. i, 21, 25; ii, 34; iv, 30; vii, 6, 13, 15), and the Valesian Fragment, (p. 721).

‡ Var. vii, 15. These horses of Monte-Cavallo had been transported from Alexandria to the baths of Constantine, (Nardini, p. 188). Their sculpture is disdained by the Abbé Dubos, (Réflexions sur la Poesie et

elephants of the *Via sacra* were diligently restored;\* the famous heifer of Myron deceived the cattle, as they were driven through the forum of peace;† and an officer was created to protect those works of art, which Theodoric considered as the noblest ornament of his kingdom.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

After the example of the last emperors, Theodoric preferred the residence of Ravenna, where he cultivated an orchard with his own hands.‡ As often as the peace of his kingdom was threatened (for it was never invaded) by the barbarians, he removed his court to Verona§ on the northern frontier, and the image of his palace, still extant, on a coin, represents the edifice and forms the model of Gothic architecture. These two capitals, as well as Pavia, Spoleto, Naples, and the rest of the Italian cities, acquired under his reign the useful or splendid decorations of churches, aqueducts, baths, porticoes, and palaces.¶ But the

Flourishing  
state  
of Italy.

sur la Peinture, tom. i, section 39), and admired by Winkelman, (Hist. de l'Art, tom. ii, p. 159).

\* Var. x, 10. They were probably a fragment of some triumphal car, (Cuper de Elephantis, ii, 10).

† Procopius (Goth. l. iv, c. 21) relates a foolish story of Myron's cow, which is celebrated by the false wit of thirty-six Greek epigrams, (Antholog. l. iv, p. 302-306, edit. Hen. Steph. Auson. Epigram. lviij-lxviii).

‡ See an Epigram of Ennodius (ii, 3, p. 1893, 1894) on this garden and the royal gardener.

§ His affection for that city is proved by the epithet of "*Verona tua*," and the legend of the hero: under the barbarous name of Dietrich of Bern, (Peringsciold ad Cochleum, p. 240), Maffei traces him with knowledge and pleasure in his native country, (l. ix, p. 230-236).

¶ See Maffei, *Verona Illustrata*, part 1, p. 281, 282, 308, &c. He imputes Gothic architecture, like the corruption of language, writing, &c. not to the barbarians, but to the Italians themselves. Compare his sentiments with those of Tiraboschi, (tom. iii, p. 61).

CHAP.  
XXXIX.

happiness of the subject was more truly conspicuous in the busy scene of labour and luxury, in the rapid increase and bold enjoyment of national wealth : From the shades of Tibur and Præneste, the Roman senators still retired in the winter-season to the warm sun, and salubrious springs of Baïæ ; and their villas, which advanced on solid moles into the bay of Naples, commanded the various prospect of the sky, the earth, and the water. On the eastern side of the Adriatic, a new Campania was formed in the fair and fruitful province of Istria, which communicated with the palace of Ravenna by an easy navigation of one hundred miles. The rich productions of Lucania and the adjacent provinces were exchanged at the Marcellian fountain, in a populous fair usually dedicated to trade, intemperance, and superstition. In the solitude of Comum, which had once been animated by the mild genius of Pliny, a transparent bason, above sixty miles in length, still reflected the rural seats which encompassed the margin of the Larian lake ; and the gradual ascent of the hills was covered by a triple plantation of olives, of vines, and of chesnut trees.<sup>c</sup> Agriculture revived under the shadow of peace, and the number of husbandmen was multiplied by the redemption of captives.<sup>d</sup> The iron mines of Dal-

<sup>c</sup> The villas, climate, and landskip of Baïæ, (Var. ix, 6 : See Cluver. Italia Antiq. l. iv, c. 2, p. 1119, &c.) ; Istria, (Var. xii, 22, 26), and Comum, (Var. xi, 14, compare with Pliny's two villas, ix, 7), are agreeably painted in the Epistles of Cassiodorus.

<sup>d</sup> In Liguria numerosa agricolarum progenies, (Ennodius, p. 1678. 1679, 1680). St. Epiphanius of Pavia redeemed by prayer or ransom 6000 captives from the Burgundians of Lyons and Savoy. Such deeds are the best of miracles.

matia, a gold mine in Bruttium, were carefully explored, and the Pomptine marshes, as well as those of Spoleto, were drained and cultivated by private undertakers, whose distant reward must depend on the continuance of the public prosperity. Whenever the seasons were less propitious, the doubtful precautions of forming magazines of corn, fixing the price, and prohibiting the exportation, attested at least the benevolence of the state; but such was the extraordinary plenty which an industrious people produced from a grateful soil, that a gallon of wine was sometimes sold in Italy for less than three farthings, and a quarter of wheat at about five shillings and six pence.\* A country possessed of so many valuable objects of exchange, soon attracted the merchants of the world, whose beneficial traffic was encouraged and protected by the liberal spirit of Theodoric. The free intercourse of the provinces by land and water was restored and extended; the city gates were never shut either by day or by night; and the common saying, that a purse of gold might be safely left in the fields,

\* The political economy of Theodoric (see Anonym. Vales p. 721, and Cassiodorius, in Chron.) may be distinctly traced under the following heads: iron mine, (Var. iii, 23); gold mine, (ix, 3); Pomptine marshes, (ii, 32, 33); Spoleto, (ii, 21); corn, (i, 34; x, 27, 28; xi, 11, 12); trade, (vi, 7, 9, 23); fair of Leucothoe or St. Cyprian in Lucania, (viii, 33); plenty, (xii, 4); the cursus, or public post, (i, 29; ii, 31; iv, 47; v, 5; vi, 6; vii, 33); the Flaminian way, (xii, 18).

† LX modii tritici in solidum ipsius tempore fuerunt, et vinum xxx amphoras in solidum, (Fragment. Vales.). Corn was distributed from the granaries at xv or xxv modii for a piece of gold, and the price was still moderate.

CHAP. was expressive of the conscious security of the  
 XXXIX. inhabitants.<sup>c</sup>

Theodoric  
 an Arian.

A difference of religion is always pernicious and often fatal to the harmony of the prince and people; the Gothic conqueror had been educated in the profession of Arianism, and Italy was devoutly attached to the Nicene faith. But the persuasion of Theodoric was not infected by zeal, and he piously adhered to the heresy of his fathers, without condescending to balance the subtle arguments of theological metaphysics. Satisfied with the private toleration of his Arian sectaries, he justly conceived himself to be the guardian of the public worship; and his external reverence for a superstition which he despised, may have nourished in his mind the salutary indifference of a statesman or philosopher. The catholics of his dominions acknowledged, perhaps with reluctance, the peace of the church; their clergy, according to the degrees of rank or merit, were honourably entertained in the palace of Theodoric; he esteemed the living sanctity of Cæsarius<sup>b</sup> and Epiphanius,<sup>d</sup> the orthodox bishops of Arles and Pavia; and presented a decent offering on the tomb of

His toleration of the catholics.

<sup>c</sup> See the life of St. Cæsarius in Baronius, (A. D. 508, N°. 12, 13, 14). The king presented him with 300 gold solidi, and a discus of silver of the weight of sixty pounds.

<sup>b</sup> Ennodius in vid. St. Epiphani, in Sirmond Op. tom. i, p. 1672-1690. Theodoric bestowed some important favours on this bishop, whom he used as a counsellor in peace and war.

<sup>d</sup> Devotissimus ac si Catholicus, (Annoym. Vales. p. 720); yet his offering was no more than two silver candlesticks, (*cerostrata*) of the weight of seventy pounds, far inferior to the gold and gems of Constantinople and France, (Anastasius in Vit. Pont. in Hormisda, p. 34, edit. Paris).

St. Peter, without any scrupulous inquiry into the creed of the apostle.<sup>1</sup> His favourite Goths, and even his mother, were permitted to retain or embrace the Athanasian faith, and his long reign could not afford the example of an Italian catholic, who, either from choice or compulsion, had deviated into the religion of the conqueror.<sup>1</sup> The people, and the barbarians themselves, were edified by the pomp and order of religious worship; the magistrates were instructed to defend the just immunities of ecclesiastical persons and possessions; the bishops held their synods, the metropolitans exercised their jurisdiction, and the ~~privileges of sanctuary were maintained or moderated~~ according to the spirit of the Roman jurisprudence. With the protection, Theodoric assumed the legal supremacy of the church; and his firm administration restored or extended some useful prerogatives which had been neglected by the feeble emperors of the West. He was not ignorant of the dignity and importance of the Roman pontiff, to whom the venerable name of POPE was now appropriated. The peace or the revolt of Italy might depend on the character of a wealthy and popular bishop, who claimed such

<sup>1</sup> The tolerating system of his reign, (Ennodius, p. 1612; Anonym. Vales. p. 719; Procop. Goth. l. i, c. 1; l. ii, c. 6), may be studied in the Epistles of Cassiodorus, under the following heads: *bishops*, (Var. i, 9; viii, 15, 24; xi, 23); *immunities*, (i, 26; ii, 29, 30); *church-lands*, (iv, 17, 20); *sanctuaries*, (ii, 11; iii, 47); *church-plate*, (xii, 20); *discipline*, (iv, 44); which prove at the same time that he was the head of the church as well as of the state.

<sup>1</sup> We may reject a foolish tale of his beheading a catholic deacon who turned Arian, (Theodor. Lector. No. 17). Why is Theodoric surnamed *Afer*? From *Vafer*? (Vales. ad loc.) A light conjecture.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
*dimin.*

ample dominion both in heaven and earth; who had been declared in a numerous synod to be pure from all sin, and exempt from all judgment.<sup>m</sup> When the chair of St. Peter was disputed by Symmachus and Laurence, they appeared at his summons before the tribunal of an Arian monarch, and he confirmed the election of the most worthy or the most obsequious candidate. At the end of his life, in a moment of jealousy and resentment, he prevented the choice of the Roman, by nominating a pope in the palace of Ravenna. The danger and furious contests of a schism were mildly restrained, and the last decree of the senate was enacted to extinguish, if it were possible, the scandalous venality of the papal elections.<sup>n</sup>

Vices of  
his govern-  
ment.

I have descanted with pleasure on the fortunate condition of Italy; but our fancy must not hastily conceive that the golden age of the poets, a race of men without vice or misery, was realised under the Gothic conquest. The fair prospect was sometimes overcast with clouds; the wisdom of Theodoric might be deceived, his power might be resisted, and the declining age of the monarch was sullied with popular hatred and patrician blood. In the first insolence of victory, he had been tempted to deprive the whole party of Odoacer

<sup>m</sup> Ennodius, p. 1631, 1632, 1636, 1638. His *libel* was approved and registered (synodally) by a Roman council, (Baronius, A. D. 503, N°. 6; Franciscus Pagi in Breviar. Pont. Rom. tom. i, p. 242).

<sup>n</sup> See Cassiodorus, (Var. viii, 15; ix, 15, 16); Anastasius, (in Symmacho, p. 31), and the xviii<sup>th</sup> Annotation of Mascou. Baronius, Pagi, and most of the catholic doctors, confess, with an angry growl, this Gothic usurpation.

of the civil and even the natural rights of society ;<sup>o</sup> a tax unseasonably imposed after the calamities of war, would have crushed the rising agriculture of Liguria ; a rigid pre-emption of corn, which was intended for the public relief, must have aggravated the distress of Campania. These dangerous projects were defeated by the virtue and eloquence of Epiphanius and Boethius, who, in the presence of Theodoric himself, successfully pleaded the cause of the people :<sup>p</sup> but if the royal ear was open to the voice of truth, a saint and a philosopher are not always to be found at the ear of kings. The privileges of rank, or office, or ~~favour, were too frequently abused by~~ Italian fraud and Gothic violence, and the avarice of the king's nephew was publicly exposed, at first by the usurpation, and afterwards by the restitution, of the estates which he had unjustly extorted from his Tuscan neighbours. Two hundred thousand barbarians, formidable even to their master, were seated in the heart of Italy ; they indignantly supported the restraints of peace and discipline ; the disorders of their march were always felt and sometimes compensated ; and where it was dangerous to punish, it might be prudent to dis-

\* He disabled them—a *licentia testandi* ; and all Italy mourned—*lamentabili justitio*. I wish to believe, that these penalties were enacted against the rebels, who had violated their oath of allegiance ; but the testimony of Ennodius, (p. 1675–1678) is the more weighty, as he lived and died under the reign of Theodoric.

<sup>p</sup> Ennodius, in *Vit. Epiphan.* p. 1689, 1690. Boethius *de Consolatione Philosophiæ*, l. i, pros. iv, p. 45, 46, 47. Respect, but weigh the passions of the saint and the senator ; and fortify or alleviate their complaints by the various hints of Cassiodorus, (ii, 8 ; iv, 36 ; viii, 5).

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

semble, the sallies of their native fierceness. When the indulgence of Theodoric had remitted two-thirds of the Ligurian tribute, he condescended to explain the difficulties of his situation, and to lament the heavy though inevitable burdens which he imposed on his subjects for their own defence.<sup>1</sup> These ungrateful subjects could never be cordially reconciled to the origin, the religion, or even the virtues of the Gothic conqueror; past calamities were forgotten, and the sense or suspicion of injuries was rendered still more exquisite by the present felicity of the times.

He is pro-  
voked to  
persecute  
the catho-  
lics.

Even the religious toleration which Theodoric had the glory of introducing into the Christian world, was painful and offensive to the orthodox zeal of the Italians. They respected the armed heresy of the Goths; but their pious rage was safely pointed against the rich and defenceless Jews, who had formed their establishments at Naples, Rome, Ravenna, Milan, and Genoa, for the benefit of trade, and under the sanction of the laws.<sup>2</sup> Their persons were insulted, their effects were pillaged, and their synagogues were burnt by the mad populace of Ravenna and Rome, inflamed, as it should seem, by the most frivolous or extravagant pretences. The government which could neglect, would have deserved, such an outrage. A legal inquiry was instantly directed; and as the authors of the tumult had escaped in the

<sup>1</sup> *Immanium expensarum pondus . . . pro ipsorum salute, &c.*; yet these are no more than words.

<sup>2</sup> The Jews were settled at Naples, (Procopius, *Goth.* l. i, c. 8), at Genoa, (*Var.* ii, 28; iv, 33), Milan, (v. 37), Rome, (iv, 43). See likewise Basnage, *Hist. des Juifs*, tom. viii, c. 7, p. 254.

crowd, the whole community was condemned to repair the damage; and the obstinate bigots who refused their contributions, were whipped through the streets by the hand of the executioner. This simple act of justice exasperated the discontent of the catholics, who applauded the merit and patience of these holy confessors; three hundred pulpits deplored the persecution of the church; and if the chapel of St. Stephen at Verona was demolished by the command of Theodoric, it is probable that some miracle hostile to his name and dignity had been performed on that sacred theatre. At the close of a glorious life, the king of Italy discovered that he had excited the hatred of a people whose happiness he had so assiduously laboured to promote; and his mind was soured by indignation, jealousy, and the bitterness of unrequited love. The Gothic conqueror condescended to disarm the unwarlike natives of Italy, interdicting all weapons of offence, and excepting only a small knife for domestic use. The deliverer of Rome was accused of conspiring with the vilest informers against the lives of senators whom he suspected of a secret and treasonable correspondence with the Byzantine court.\* After the death of Anastasius, the diadem had been placed on the head of a feeble old man; but the powers of government were assumed by his nephew Justinian, who already meditated the extirpation of heresy,

\* *Rex avidus communis exitii, &c.* (Boethius, l. i, p. 59): *rex dolium Romanis tendebat*, (Anonym. Vales, p. 723). These are hard words: they speak the passions of the Italians, and those (I fear) of Theodoric himself.

CHAP. and the conquest of Italy and Africa. A rigorous  
 XXXIX. law which was published at Constantinople, to  
 reduce the Arians by the dread of punishment within the pale of the church, awakened the just resentment of Theodoric, who claimed for his distressed brethren of the East, the same indulgence which he had so long granted to the catholics of his dominions. At his stern command, the Roman pontiff, with four *illustrious* senators, embarked on an embassy, of which he must have alike dreaded the failure or the success. The singular veneration shewn to the first pope who had visited Constantinople was punished as a crime by his jealous monarch; the artful or peremptory refusal of the Byzantine court might excuse an equal, and would provoke a larger, measure of retaliation; and a mandate was prepared in Italy, to prohibit, after a stated day, the exercise of the catholic worship. By the bigotry of his subjects and enemies, the most tolerant of princes was driven to the brink of persecution; and the life of Theodoric was too long, since he lived to condemn the virtue of Boethius and Symmachus.\*

Character,  
 studies,  
 and hon-  
 ours of  
 Boethius.

The senator Boethius<sup>u</sup> is the last of the Romans whom Cato or Tully could have acknow-

\* I have laboured to extract a rational narrative from the dark, concise, and various hints of the Valesian Fragment, (p. 722, 723, 724); Theophanes, (p. 145); Anastasius, (in Johanne, p. 35), and the Hist. Miscella, (p. 103, edit. Muratori). A gentle pressure and paraphrase of their words is no violence. Consult likewise Muratori, (Annali d' Italia, tom. iv, p. 471-478), with the Annals and Breviary (tom. i, 259-263) of the two Pagis, the uncle and the nephew.

<sup>u</sup> Le Clerc has composed a critical and philosophical life of Anicius Manlius Severinus Boethius, (Bibliot. Choisie, tom. xvi, p. 168-275); and

ledged for their countryman. As a wealthy orphan, he inherited the patrimony and honours of the Anician family, a name ambitiously assumed by the kings and emperors of the age; and the appellation of **Manlius** asserted his genuine or fabulous descent from a race of consuls and dictators, who had repulsed the Gauls from the Capitol, and sacrificed their sons to the discipline of the republic. In the youth of Boethius, the studies of Rome were not totally abandoned; a Virgil<sup>x</sup> is now extant, corrected by the hand of a consul; and the professors of grammar, rhetoric, and jurisprudence, were maintained in their privileges and pensions, by the liberality of the Goths. But the erudition of the Latin language was insufficient to satiate his ardent curiosity; and Boethius is said to have employed eighteen laborious years in the schools of Athens,<sup>y</sup> which were supported by the zeal, the learning, and the diligence of Proclus and his disciples. The reason and piety of their Roman pupil were fortunately saved from the contagion of mystery and magic, which polluted the groves of the academy; but he imbibed the spirit,

and both Tiraboschi (tom. iii) and Fabricius (Bibliot. Latin.) may be usefully consulted. The date of his birth may be placed about the year 470, and his death in 524, in a premature old age, (Consol. Phil. Metrica, i, p. 5).

<sup>x</sup> For the age and value of this MS. now in the Medicean library at Florence, see the *Cenotaphia Pisana* (p. 430-447) of Cardinal Noris.

<sup>y</sup> The Athenian studies of Boethius are doubtful, (Baronius, A. D. 510, N°. 3, from a spurious tract, *De Disciplina Scholarum*), and the term of eighteen years is doubtless too long: but the simple fact of a visit to Athens is justified by much internal evidence, (Brucker, *Hist. Crit. Philosoph.* tom. iii, p. 524-527), and by an expression (though vague and ambiguous) of his friend Cassiodorus, (Var. i, 45), "*longe positas Athenas introisti.*"

CHAP. and imitated the method, of his dead and living  
 XXXIX. masters, who attempted to reconcile the strong and  
 ~~~~~ subtle sense of Aristotle with the devout contem-  
 plation and sublime fancy of Plato. After his return  
 to Rome, and his marriage with the daughter of  
 his friend, the patrician Symmachus, Boethius still  
 continued, in a palace of ivory and marble, to pro-  
 secute the same studies.<sup>2</sup> The church was edi-  
 fied by his profound defence of the orthodox  
 creed against the Arian, the Eutychian, and the  
 Nestorian heresies; and the catholic unity was  
 explained or exposed in a formal treatise by the  
*indifference* of three distinct though consubstantial  
 persons. For the benefit of his Latin readers, his  
 genius submitted to teach the first elements of the  
 arts and sciences of Greece. The geometry of  
 Euclid, the music of Pythagoras, the arithmetic  
 of Nicomachus, the mechanics of Archimedes,  
 the astronomy of Ptolemy, the theology of Plato,  
 and the logic of Aristotle, with the commentary  
 of Porphyry, were translated and illustrated by the  
 indefatigable pen of the Roman senator. And he  
 alone was esteemed capable of describing the won-  
 ders of art, a sun-dial, a water-clock, or a sphere  
 which represented the motions of the planets.  
 From these abstruse speculations, Boethius stoop-  
 ed, or, to speak more truly, he rose to the social du-

<sup>2</sup> Bibliothecæ comptos ebore ac vitro parietes, &c. (Consol. Phil. l. i, pros. v, p. 74). The Epistles of Ennodius, (vi, 6; vii, 13; viii, 1, 31, 37, 40), and Cassiodorius, (Var. i, 39; iv, 6; ix, 21), afford many proofs of the high reputation which he enjoyed in his own times. It is true, that the bishop of Pavia wanted to purchase of him an old house at Milan, and praise might be tendered and accepted in part of payment.

ties of public and private life; the indigent were relieved by his liberality; and his eloquence, which flattery might compare to the voice of Demosthenes or Cicero, was uniformly exerted in the cause of innocence and humanity. Such conspicuous merit was felt and rewarded by a discerning prince; the dignity of Boethius was adorned with the titles of consul and patrician, and his talents were usefully employed in the important station of master of the offices. Notwithstanding the equal claims of the East and West, his two sons were created, in their tender youth, the consuls of the same year.\* On the memorable day of their inauguration, they attended in all the pomp from their palace to the forum, amidst the applause of the senate and people; and their joyful father, the true consul of Rome, after pronouncing an oration in the praise of his royal benefactor, distributed a triumphal largess in the games of the circus. Prosperous in his fame and fortunes, in his public honours and private alliances, in the cultivation of science and the consciousness of virtue, Boethius might have been styled happy, if that precarious epithet could be safely applied before the last term of the life of man.

A philosopher, liberal of his wealth, and parsimonious of his time, might be insensible to the common allurements of ambition, the thirst of gold and employment. And some credit may

His patriotism.

\* Pagi, Muratori, &c. are agreed that Boethius himself was consul in the year 510, his two sons in 522, and in 487, perhaps, his father. A desire of ascribing the last of these consulships to the philosopher, had perplexed the chronology of his life. In his honours, alliances, children, he celebrates his own felicity—his past felicity, (p. 109, 110).

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

be due to the asseveration of Boethius, that he had reluctantly obeyed the divine Plato, who enjoins every virtuous citizen to rescue the state from the usurpation of vice and ignorance. For the integrity of his public conduct, he appeals to the memory of his country. His authority had restrained the pride and oppression of the royal officers, and his eloquence had delivered Paulinus from the dogs of the palace. He had always pitied, and often relieved, the distress of the provincials, whose fortunes were exhausted by public and private rapine; and Boethius alone had courage to oppose the tyranny of the barbarians, elated by conquest, excited by avarice, and, as he complains, encouraged by impunity. In these honourable contests, his spirit soared above the consideration of danger, and perhaps of prudence; and we may learn from the example of Cato, that a character of pure and inflexible virtue is the most apt to be misled by prejudice, to be heated by enthusiasm, and to confound private enmities with public justice. The disciple of Plato might exaggerate the infirmities of nature, and the imperfections of society; and the mildest form of a Gothic kingdom, even the weight of allegiance and gratitude, must be insupportable to the free spirit of a Roman patriot. But the favour and fidelity of Boethius declined in just proportion with the public happiness; and an unworthy colleague was imposed, to divide and controul the power of the master of the offices. In the last gloomy season of Theodoric, he indignant-ly felt that he was a slave; but as his master

He is ac-  
cused of  
treason.

had only power over his life, he stood without arms and without fear against the face of an angry barbarian, who had been provoked to believe that the safety of the senate was incompatible with his own. The senator Albinus was accused, and already convicted on the presumption of *hoping*, as it was said, the liberty of Rome. "If Albinus be criminal," exclaimed the orator, "the senate and myself are all guilty of the same crime. If we are innocent, Albinus is equally entitled to the protection of the laws." These laws might not have punished the simple and barren wish of an unattainable blessing; but they would have shown less indulgence to the rash confidence of Boethius, that, had he known of a conspiracy, the tyrant never should.<sup>b</sup> The advocate of Albinus was soon involved in the danger, and perhaps the guilt, of his client; their signature (which they denied as a forgery) was affixed to the original address, inviting the emperor to deliver Italy from the Goths; and three witnesses of honourable rank, perhaps of infamous reputation, attested the treasonable designs of the Roman patrician.<sup>c</sup> Yet his innocence must be presumed, since he was deprived by Theodoric of the means of justification, and rigorously confined in the tower of Pavia, while the senate, at the distance of five hundred miles, pronounced

<sup>b</sup> Si ego scissem tu nescisses. Boethius adopts this answer (l. i. pros. 4, p. 53) of Julius Canus, whose philosophic death is described by Seneca, (*De Tranquillitate Animi*, c. 14).

<sup>c</sup> The characters of his two delators, Basilius, (*Var. ii*, 10, 11; *iv*, 22), and Opilio, (*v*, 41; *viii*, 16), are illustrated, not much to their honour, in the *Epistles* of Cassiodorus, which likewise mention Decoratus, (*v*, 31), the worthless colleague of Boethius, (*l. iii*, pros. 4, p. 183).

CHAP. a sentence of confiscation and death against the  
 XXXIX. most illustrious of its members. At the com-  
 mand of the barbarians, the occult science of a  
 philosopher was stigmatized with the names of  
 sacrilege and magic.<sup>d</sup> A devout and dutiful  
 attachment to the senate was condemned as  
 criminal by the trembling voices of the senat-  
 ors themselves; and their ingratitude deserved  
 the wish or prediction of Boethius, that, after  
 him, none should be found guilty of the same  
 offence.<sup>e</sup>

His impris-  
 onment  
 and death,  
 A. D. 524.

While Boethius, oppressed with fetters, ex-  
 pected each moment the sentence or the stroke  
 of death, he composed in the tower of Pavia the  
*Consolation of Philosophy*; a golden volume not  
 unworthy of the leisure of Plato or Tully, but  
 which claims incomparable merit from the bar-  
 barism of the times, and the situation of the  
 author. The celestial guide whom he had so  
 long invoked at Rome and Athens, now conde-  
 scended to illumine his dungeon, to revive his  
 courage, and to pour into his wounds her salutary  
 balm. She taught him to compare his long pro-  
 sperity and his recent distress, and to conceive new  
 hopes from the inconstancy of fortune. Rea-  
 son had informed him of the precarious condi-

<sup>d</sup> A severe inquiry was instituted into the crime of magic, (Var. iv, 22, 23; ix, 18): and it was believed that many necromancers had escaped by making their gaolers mad; for *mad*, I should read *drunk*.

<sup>e</sup> Boethius had composed his own Apology, (p. 53), perhaps more interesting than his Consolation. We must be content with the general view of his honours, principles, persecution, &c. (l. i, pros. iv, p. 42-62), which may be compared with the short and weighty words of the Valerian Fragment, (p. 723). An anonymous writer (Sinner, Catalog. MSS. Bibliot. Bern. tom. i, p. 267) charges him home with honourable and patriotic treason.

tion of her gifts; experience had satisfied him of their real value; he had enjoyed them without guilt; he might resign them without a sigh, and calmly disdain the impotent malice of his enemies, who had left him happiness, since they had left him virtue. From the earth, Boethius ascended to heaven in search of the supreme good; explored the metaphysical labyrinth of chance and destiny, of prescience and free will, of time and eternity; and generously attempted to reconcile the perfect attributes of the Deity, with the apparent disorders of his moral and physical government. Such topics of consolation, so obvious, so vague, or so abstract, were not sufficient to satisfy the feelings of human nature. Yet the sense of misfortune may be diverted by the labour of thought; and the sage who could artfully combine in the same work, the various riches of philosophy, poetry, and eloquence, must already have possessed the intrepid calmness, which he affected to seek. Suspense, the worst of evils, was at length determined by the ministers of death, who executed, and perhaps exceeded, the inhuman mandate of Theodoric. A strong cord was fastened round the head of Boethius, and forcibly tightened, till his eyes almost started from their sockets; and some mercy may be discovered in the milder torture of beating him with clubs till he expired.<sup>f</sup> But his genius

<sup>f</sup> He was executed in Agro Calventiano, (Calventano, between Marignano and Pavia), Anonym. Vales. p. 723, by order of Eusebius count of Ticinum or Pavia. The place of his confinement is styled the *septimery*, an edifice and name peculiar to cathedrals. It is claimed by the perpetual tradition of the church of Pavia. The tower of Boethius subsisted till the year 1584, and the draught is yet preserved, (Tiraboschi, tom. iii, p. 47, 48).

CHAP. survived to diffuse a ray of knowledge over the  
 XXXIX. darkest ages of the Latin world; the writings of  
 the philosopher were translated by the most glo-  
 rious of the English kings,<sup>5</sup> and the third emperor  
 of the name of Otho removed to a more honour-  
 able tomb the bones of a catholic saint, who, from  
 his Arian persecutors, had acquired the honours  
 of martyrdom, and the fame of miracles.<sup>6</sup> In the  
 last hours of Boethius, he derived some comfort  
 from the safety of his two sons, of his wife, and of  
 his father-in-law, the venerable Symmachus. But  
 the grief of Symmachus was indiscreet, and per-  
 haps disrespectful: he had presumed to lament, he  
 might dare to revenge, the death of an injured  
 friend. He was dragged in chains from Rome  
 to the palace of Ravenna; and the suspicions of  
 Theodoric could only be appeased by the blood  
 of an innocent and aged senator.<sup>1</sup>

Death of  
 Symma-  
 chus,  
 A. D. 525

Remorse  
 and death  
 of Theo-  
 doric,  
 A. D. 526,  
 August 30.

Humanity will be disposed to encourage any re-  
 port which testifies the jurisdiction of conscience.

<sup>5</sup> See the *Biographica Britannica*, ALFRED, tom. i, p. 80, 2d edition. The work is still more honourable if performed under the learned eye of Alfred by his foreign and domestic doctors. For the reputation of Boethius in the middle ages, consult Brucker, (*Hist. Crit. Philosoph.* tom. iii, p. 565, 566).

<sup>6</sup> The inscription on his new tomb was composed by the preceptor of Otho the third, the learned Pope Silvester II, who, like Boethius himself, was styled a magician by the ignorance of the times. The catholic mar-  
 tyr had carried his head in his hands a considerable way, (Baronius, A. D. 526, N<sup>o</sup>. 17, 18); yet, on a similar tale, a lady of my acquaint-  
 ance once observed,—"La distance n'y fait rien; il n'y a que le  
 "premier pas qui couste."

<sup>1</sup> Boethius applauds the virtues of his father-in-law, (l. i, pros. 4, p. 59; l. ii, pros. 4, p. 118). Procopius, (*Goth. l. i, c. i*), the *Valesian Frag-  
 ments*, (p. 724), and the *Historia Miscella*, (l. xv, p. 105), agree in  
 praising the superior innocence or sanctity of Symmachus; and in the  
 estimation of the legend, the guilt of his murder is equal to the im-  
 prisonment of a pope.

and the remorse of kings; and philosophy is not ignorant that the most horrid spectres are sometimes created by the powers of a disordered fancy, and the weakness of a distempered body. After a life of virtue and glory, Theodoric was now descending with shame and guilt into the grave: his mind was humbled by the contrast of the past, and justly alarmed by the invisible terrors of futurity. One evening, as it is related, when the head of a large fish was served on the royal table,<sup>k</sup> he suddenly exclaimed, that he beheld the angry countenance of Symmachus, his eyes glaring with fury and revenge, and his mouth armed with long shar~~ps~~. The monarch instantly retired to his chamber, and, as he lay trembling with aguish cold under a weight of bed-clothes, he expressed in broken murmurs to his physician Elpidius, his deep repentance for the murders of Boethius and Symmachus.<sup>l</sup> His malady increased, and after a dysentery which continued three days, he expired in the palace of Ravenna, in the thirty-third, or, if we compute from the invasion of Italy, in the thirty-seventh year of his reign. Conscious of his approaching end, he divided his treasures and provinces between his two grandsons, and fixed the Rhone as their

<sup>k</sup> In the fanciful eloquence of Cassiodorus the variety of sea and river fish are an evidence of extensive dominion; and those of the Rhine, of Sicily, and of the Danube, were served on the table of Theodoric. (Var. xii, 14). The monstrous turbot of Domitian (Juvenal. Satir. iii, 39) had been caught on the shores of the Adriatic.

<sup>l</sup> Procopius, Goth. l. i. c. 1. But he might have informed us, whether he had received this curious anecdote from common report, or from the mouth of the royal physician.

CHAP.  
XXXIX.  
~~~~~

common boundary.<sup>m</sup> Amalaric was restored to the throne of Spain. Italy, with all the conquests of the Ostrogoths, was bequeathed to Athalaric; whose age did not exceed ten years, but who was cherished as the last male offspring of the line of Amali, by the short-lived marriage of his mother Amalasuntha with a royal fugitive of the same blood.\* In the presence of the dying monarch, the Gothic chiefs and Italian magistrates mutually engaged their faith and loyalty to the young prince, and to his guardian mother; and received in the same awful moment, his last salutary advice, to maintain the laws, to love the senate and people of Rome, and to cultivate with decent reverence the friendship of the emperor.\* The monument of Theodoric was erected by his daughter Amalasuntha, in a conspicuous situation, which commanded the city of Ravenna, the harbour, and the adjacent coast. A chapel of a circular form, thirty feet in diameter, is crowned by a dome of one entire piece of granite: from the centre of the dome, four columns arose, which supported, in a

<sup>m</sup> Procopius, *Goth.* l. i, c. 1, 2, 12, 13. This partition had been directed by Theodoric, though it was not executed till after his death. *Regni hereditatem superates reliquit*, (Isidor. *Chron.* p. 721, edit. Grot.).

\* Berimund, the third in descent from Hermanric, king of the Ostrogoths, had retired into Spain, where he lived and died in obscurity, (Jornandes, c. 33, p. 202, edit. Murator.). See the discovery, nuptials, and death of his grandson Eutharic, (c. 58, p. 220). His Roman games might render him popular, (Cassiodor. in *Chron.*); but Eutharic was asper in religione, (Anonym. *Vales.* p. 722, 723).

\* See the counsels of Theodoric, and the professions of his successor, in Procopius, (*Goth.* l. i, c. 1, 2); Jornandes, (c. 59, p. 220, 221), and Cassiodorius, (*Var.* viii, 1-7). These epistles are the triumph of his ministerial eloquence.

vase of porphyry, the remains of the Gothic king, CHAP. XXXIX.  
 surrounded by the brazen statues of the twelve  
 apostles.<sup>p</sup> His spirit, after some previous expia-  
 tion, might have been permitted to mingle with  
 the benefactors of mankind, if an Italian hermit  
 had not been witness in a vision to the damnation  
 of Theodoric,<sup>q</sup> whose soul was plunged, by the  
 ministers of divine vengeance, into the vulcano of  
 Lipari, one of the flaming mouths of the in-  
 fernal world.<sup>r</sup>

<sup>p</sup> Anonym. Vales. p. 742. Agnellus de Vitis Pont. Raven. in Muratori  
 Script. Rerum Ital. tom. ii, P. i, p. 67. Alberti Descriptione d'Italia, p.  
 311.

<sup>q</sup> This legend is related by Gregory I. (Dialog. iv. 36), and approved  
 by Baronius, (A. D. 536, N. 36); and both the pope and cardinal  
 are grave doctors, sufficient to establish a *probable* opinion.

<sup>r</sup> Theodoric himself, or rather Cassiodorius, had described in tragic  
 strains the vulcanos of Lipari, (Cluver. Sicilia, p. 406-410), and Ve-  
 suvius, (iv, 50).

## CHAP. XL.

*Elevation of Justin the elder—Reign of Justinian—*

*I. The Empress Theodora—II. Factions of the circus, and sedition of Constantinople—III. Trade and manufacture of silk—IV. Finances and taxes—V. Edifices of Justinian—Church of St. Sophia—Fortifications and frontiers of the eastern empire—Abolition of the schools of Athens, and the consulship of Rome.*

CHAP.  
XL.

Birth of  
the em-  
peror  
Justinian,  
A. D. 482,  
May 5,  
or A. D.  
83, May  
1.

**T**HE emperor Justinian was born<sup>a</sup> near the ruins of Sardica, (the modern Sophia), of an obscure race<sup>b</sup> of barbarians,<sup>c</sup> the inhabitants of a wild and desolate country, to which the names of Dardania, of Dacia, and of Bulgaria, have been successively applied. His elevation was prepared by the adventurous spirit of his uncle Justin, who, with two other peasants of the same village, desert-

<sup>a</sup> There is some difficulty in the date of his birth, (Ludewig in Vit. Justiniani, p. 125); none in the place—the district Bederiana—the village Tauresium, which he afterwards decorated with his name and splendour, (D'Anville, Hist. de l'Acad. &c. tom. xxxi, p. 287–292).

<sup>b</sup> The names of these Dardanian peasants are Gothic, and almost English: Justinian is a translation of *uprauda*, (*upright*); his father Sabatius, (in Græco-barbarous language *stipes*), was styled in his village *Iacok*, (*Stock*); his mother Bigleniza was softened into *Vigilantia*.

<sup>c</sup> Ludewig (p. 127–135) attempts to justify the Antician name of Justinian and Theodora, and to connect them with a family from which the house of Austria has been derived.

ed, for the profession of arms, the more useful employment of husbandmen or shepherds.<sup>d</sup> On foot, with a scanty provision of biscuit in their knapsacks, the three youths followed the high-road of Constantinople, and were soon inrolled, for their strength and stature, among the guards of the emperor Leo. Under the two succeeding reigns, the fortunate peasant emerged to wealth and honours; and his escape from some dangers which threatened his life, was afterwards ascribed to the guardian angel who watches over the fate of kings. His long and laudable service in the Isaurian and Persian wars, would not have preserved from oblivion the name of the hero; yet they might warrant the military promotion, which in the course of fifty years he gradually obtained; the rank of tribune, of count, and of general, the dignity of senator, and the command of the guards, who obeyed him as their chief, at the important crisis when the emperor Anastasius was removed from the world. The powerful kinsmen whom he had raised and enriched, were excluded from the throne; and the eunuch Amantius, who reigned in the palace, had secretly resolved to fix the diadem on the head of the most obsequious of his creatures. A liberal donative, to conciliate the suffrage of the guards, was intrusted for that purpose in the hands of their commander. But these

<sup>d</sup> See the anecdotes of Procopius (c. 6) with the notes of N. Ale-mannus. The satirist would not have sunk, in the vague and decent appellation of γιωργος, the βυκολος and ευφηρος of Menas. Yet why are those names disgraceful?—and what German baron would not be proud to descend from the Eumæus of the Odyssey?

## CHAP.

## XL.

Elevation  
and reign  
of his  
uncle  
Justin I,  
A. D. 518,  
July 10;  
A. D. 527,  
April 1,  
or Aug. 1.

weighty arguments were treacherously employed by Justin in his own favour; and as no competitor presumed to appear, the Dacian peasant was invested with the purple, by the unanimous consent of the soldiers, who knew him to be brave and gentle; of the clergy and people, who believed him to be orthodox, and of the provincials, who yielded a blind and implicit submission to the will of the capital. The elder Justin, as he is distinguished from another emperor of the same family and name, ascended the Byzantine throne at the age of sixty-eight years; and, had he been left to his own guidance, every moment of a nine years reign must have exposed to his subjects the impropriety of their choice. His ignorance was similar to that of Theodoric; and it is remarkable, that in an age not destitute of learning, two contemporary monarchs had never been instructed in the knowledge of the alphabet. But the genius of Justin was far inferior to that of the Gothic king: the experience of a soldier had not qualified him for the government of an empire; and, though personally brave, the consciousness of his own weakness was naturally attended with doubt, distrust, and political apprehension. But the official business of the state was diligently and faithfully transacted by the questor Proclus; and the aged emperor adopted the talents and ambition of his nephew Justinian, an aspiring youth, whom his uncle had drawn from the rustic solitude of Dacia, and

\* His virtues are praised by Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 11). The questor Proclus was the friend of Justinian, and the enemy of every other adoption.

educated at Constantinople, as the heir of his private fortune, and at length of the eastern empire.

CHAP.  
XI.

Since the eunuch Amantius had been defrauded of his money, it became necessary to deprive him of his life. The task was easily accomplished by the charge of a real or fictitious conspiracy; and the judges were informed, as an accumulation of guilt, that he was secretly addicted to the Manichæan heresy.<sup>f</sup> Amantius lost his head; three of his companions, the first domestics of the palace, were punished either with death or exile; and their unfortunate candidate for the purple was cast into a deep dungeon, overwhelmed with stones, and ignominiously ~~the same with the same in the same~~. The ruin of Vitalian was a work of more difficulty and danger. That Gothic chief had rendered himself popular by the civil war which he boldly waged against Anastasius for the defence of the orthodox faith, and, after the conclusion of an advantageous treaty, he still remained in the neighbourhood of Constantinople, at the head of a formidable and victorious army of barbarians. By the frail security of oaths, he was tempted to relinquish this advantageous situation, and to trust his person within the walls of a city, whose inhabitants, particularly the *blue* faction, were artfully incensed against him by the remembrance even of his pious hostili-

Adoption  
and suc-  
cession of  
Justinian,  
A. D. 520-  
527.

<sup>f</sup> Manichæan signifies Eutychian. Hear the furious acclamations of Constantinople and Tyre, the former no more than six days after the decease of Anastasius. They produced, the latter applauded, the eunuch's death, (Baronius, A. D. 518, P. ii, N°. 15. Fleury, Hist. Eccles. tom. vii, p. 200, 205, from the Councils, tom. v, p. 162, 207).

## CHAP.

## XL.

ties. The emperor and his nephew embraced him as the faithful and worthy champion of the church and state; and gratefully adorned their favourite with the titles of consul and general; but in the seventh month of his consulship, Vitalian was stabbed with seventeen wounds at the royal banquet;<sup>5</sup> and Justinian, who inherited the spoil, was accused as the assassin of a spiritual brother, to whom he had recently pledged his faith in the participation of the Christian mysteries. After the fall of his rival, he was promoted, without any claim of military service, to the office of master-general of the eastern armies, whom it was his duty to lead into the field against the public enemy. But, in the pursuit of fame, Justinian might have lost his present dominion over the age and weakness of his uncle; and instead of acquiring by Scythian or Persian trophies the applause of his countrymen,<sup>1</sup> the prudent warrior solicited their favour in the churches, the circus, and the senate, of Constantinople. The catholics were attached to the nephew of Justin, who, between the Nestorian and

<sup>5</sup> His power, character, and intentions, are perfectly explained by the Count de Buat, (tom. ix, p. 54-81). He was great-grandson of Aspar, hereditary prince in the Lesser Scythia, and count of the Gothic *federati* of Thrace. The Bessi, whom he could influence, are the minor Goths of Jornandes, (c. 51).

<sup>1</sup> Justiniani patricii factione dicitur interfectus fuisse, (Victor Tununensis, Chron. in Thesaur. Temp. Scaliger, P. ii, p. 7). Procopius (Anecdot. c. 7) styles him a tyrant, but acknowledges the ἀδελφονικία, which is well explained by Alemannus.

<sup>2</sup> In his earliest youth (plane adolescens) he had passed some time as an hostage with Theodoric. For this curious fact, Alemannus (ad Procop. Anecdot. c. 9, p. 34 of the first edition) quotes a MS. history of Justinian, by his preceptor Theophilus. Ludewig (p. 143) wishes to make him a soldier.

Eutychian heresies, trod the narrow path of inflexible and intolerant orthodoxy.<sup>\*</sup> In the first days of the new reign, he prompted and gratified the popular enthusiasm against the memory of the deceased emperor. After a schism of thirty-four years, he reconciled the proud and angry spirit of the Roman pontiff, and spread among the Latins a favourable report of his pious respect for the apostolic see. The thrones of the East were filled with catholic bishops devoted to his interest, the clergy and the monks were gained by his liberality, and the people were taught to pray for their future sovereign, the hope and pillar of the true religion. ~~His magnificence and his taste were displayed~~ in the superior pomp of his public spectacles, an object not less sacred and important in the eyes of the multitude, than the creed of Nice or Chalcedon; the expence of his consulship was esteemed at two hundred and eighty-eight thousand pieces of gold; twenty lions, and thirty leopards, were produced at the same time in the amphitheatre, and a numerous train of horses, with their rich trappings, was bestowed as an extraordinary gift on the victorious charioteers of the circus. While he indulged the people of Constantinople, and received the addresses of foreign kings, the nephew of Justin assiduously cultivated the friendship of the senate. That venerable name seemed to qualify its members to declare the sense of the nation, and to regulate the

<sup>\*</sup> The ecclesiastical history of Justinian will be shewn hereafter. See Baronius, A. D. 518-521, and the copious article *Justinianus* in the index to the viith volume of his Annals.

CHAP. XL. succession of the imperial throne: the feeble Anastasius had permitted the vigour of government to degenerate into the form or substance of an aristocracy; and the military officers who had obtained the senatorial rank, were followed by their domestic guards, a band of veterans, whose arms or acclamations might fix in a tumultuous moment the diadem of the East. The treasures of the state were lavished to procure the votes of the senators; and their unanimous wish, that he would be pleased to adopt Justinian for his colleague, was communicated to the emperor. But this request, which too clearly admonished him of his approaching end, was unwelcome to the jealous temper of an aged monarch, desirous to retain the power which he was incapable of exercising; and Justin, holding his purple with both his hands, advised them to prefer, since an election was so profitable, some older candidate. Notwithstanding this reproach, the senate proceeded to decorate Justinian with the royal epithet of *nobilissimus*; and their decree was ratified by the affection or the fears of his uncle. After some time the langour of mind and body, to which he was reduced by an incurable wound in his thigh, indispensably required the aid of a guardian. He summoned the patriarch and senators; and in their presence solemnly placed the diadem on the head of his nephew, who was conducted from the palace to the circus, and saluted by the loud and joyful applause of the people. The life of Justin was prolonged about four months, but from the instant of this ceremony, he was considered as

dead to the empire, which acknowledged Justinian, in the forty-fifth year of his age, for the lawful sovereign of the East.<sup>1</sup>

CHAP.  
XL

From his elevation to his death, Justinian governed the Roman empire thirty-eight years seven months and thirteen days. The events of his reign, which excite our curious attention by their number, variety, and importance, are diligently related by the secretary of Belisarius, a rhetorician whom eloquence had promoted to the rank of senator and prefect of Constantinople. According to the vicissitudes of courage or servitude, of favour or disgrace, Procopius<sup>2</sup> successfully composed the history of the Persian, Vandalic, and Gothic times. The eight books of the Persian, Vandalic, and Gothic wars,<sup>3</sup> which are continued in the five books of Agathias, deserve our esteem as a laborious and successful imitation of the Attic, or

The reign  
of Justinian, A. D.  
527, April  
1-A. D.  
565, Nov.  
14.

Character  
and histories of Pro-  
copius.

<sup>1</sup> The reign of the elder Justin may be found in the three Chronicles of Marcellinus, Victor, and John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 130-150), the last of whom (in spite of Hody, Prolegom. N<sup>o</sup>. 14, 39, edit. Oxon.) lived soon after Justinian, (Jorton's remarks, &c. vol. iv, p. 383); in the Ecclesiastical History of Evagrius, (l. iv, c. 1, 2, 3, 9), and the Excerpta of Theodorus, (Lector. N<sup>o</sup>. 37), and in Cedrenus, (p. 362-366), and Zonaras, (l. xiv, p. 58-61), who may pass for an original.

<sup>2</sup> See the characters of Procopius and Agathias in La Mothe le Vayer, (tom. viii, p. 144-174); Vosius, (de Historicis Græcis, l. ii, c. 22), and Fabricius, (Biblot. Græc. l. v, c. 5, tom. vi, p. 248-278). Their religion, an honourable problem, betrays occasional conformity, with a secret attachment to paganism and philosophy.

<sup>3</sup> In the seven first books, two Persian, two Vandalic, and three Gothic, Procopius has borrowed from Appian the division of provinces and wars: the ninth book, though it bears the name of Gothic, is a miscellaneous and general supplement down to the spring of the year 553, from whence it is continued by Agathias till 559, (Pagi, Critica, A. D. 579, N<sup>o</sup>. 5).

CHAP. at least of the Asiatic; writers of ancient Greece.  
 XL. His facts are collected from the personal experi-  
 ence and free conversation of a soldier, a states-  
 man, and a traveller; his style continually aspires,  
 and often attains, to the merit of strength and  
 elegance; his reflections, more especially in the  
 speeches, which he too frequently inserts, contain  
 a rich fund of political knowledge; and the histo-  
 rian, excited by the generous ambition of pleasing  
 and instructing posterity, appears to disdain the  
 prejudices of the people, and the flattery of courts.  
 The writings of Procopius<sup>o</sup> were read and ap-  
 plauded by his contemporaries; but, although  
 he respectfully laid them at the foot of the throne,  
 the pride of Justinian must have been wounded  
 by the praise of an hero, who perpetually eclipses  
 the glory of his inactive sovereign. The conscious

\* The literary fate of Procopius has been somewhat unlucky. 1. His books de Bello Gothico were stolen by Leonard Aretin, and published (Fulginit, 1470; Venet 1471, apud Janson; Mattaire, Annal. Typograph. tom i, edit. posterior, p. 290, 304, 279, 295) in his own name, (See Vossius de Hist. Lat. l. iii, c. 5, and the feeble defence of the Venite Giornale de Letterati, tom. xix, p. 207). 2. His works were mutilated by the first Latin translators, Christopher Persóna. (Giornale, tom. xix, p. 340-349), and Raphael de Volaterra, (Huet de Claris. Interpretibus, p. 166), who did not even consult the MS. of the Vatican library, of which they were prefects, (Aleman. in Præfat. Anecdot.). 3. The Greek text was not printed till 1607, by Hoeschelius of Augsburgh, (Dictionaire de Bayle, tom. ii, p. 782). 4. The Paris edition was imperfectly executed by Claude Maltret, a Jesuit of Thoulouse, (in 1663), far distant from the Louvre press and the Vatican MS. from which, however, he obtained some supplements. His promised commentaries, &c. have never appeared. The Agathias of Leyden (1594) has been wisely reprinted by the Parisian Editor, with the Latin version of Bonaventura Vulcanius, a learned interpreter, (Huet, p. 170).

<sup>p</sup> Agathias in Præfat. p. 7, 8, l. iv, p. 187. Evagrius, l. iv, c. 12. See likewise Photius, cod. lxxiii, p. 65.

dignity of independence was subdued by the hopes and fears of a slave; and the secretary of Belisarius laboured for pardon and reward in the six books of the imperial edifices. He had dexterously chosen a subject of apparent splendour, in which he could loudly celebrate the genius, the magnificence, and the piety of a prince, who, both as a conqueror and legislator, had surpassed the puerile virtues of Themistocles and Cyrus.<sup>1</sup> Disappointment might urge the flatterer to secret revenge; and the first glance of favour might again tempt him to suspend and suppress a libel; in which the Roman Cyrus is degraded into an odious and contemptible tyrant. Justinian and Theodora are seriously represented as two demons, who had assumed an human form for the destruction of mankind.<sup>2</sup> Such base inconsistency must doubtless sully the reputation, and detract from the credit, of Procopius: yet, after

<sup>1</sup> *Καὶ ὁ ἀρχιτέκτων* (says he, *Præfat. ad. de Edificiis πρὸς χριστιανούς*) is no more than *Κυρὸς καὶ δόξα*—a pun! In these five books, Procopius affects a Christian, as well as a courtly style.

<sup>2</sup> Procopius discloses himself, (*Præfat. ad Anecd. c. 1, 2, 5*), and the anecdotes are reckoned as the ixth book by Suidas, (tom. iii, p. 186, edit. Kuster). The silence of Evagrius is a poor objection. *Basil. Pontus* (A. D. 548, N<sup>o</sup>. 24) regrets the loss of this secret history: it was then in the Vatican library, in his own custody, and was first published sixteen years after his death, with the learned, but partial, notes of Nicholas Alemannus, (Lugd. 1623).

<sup>3</sup> Justinian an ass—the perfect likeness of Domitian—(*Anecd. c. 8*)—Theodora's lovers driven from her bed by rival demons—her marriage foretold with a great demon—a monk saw the prince of the demons, instead of Justinian, on the throne—the servants who watched, beheld a face without features, a body walking without an head, &c. &c. Procopius declares his own and his friends belief in these diabolical stories, (c. 12).

CHAP. the venom of his malignity has been suffered to  
 XL exhale, the residue of the *anecdotes*, even the  
 most disgraceful facts, some of which had been  
 tenderly hinted in his public history, are esta-  
 blished by their internal evidence, or the authentic  
 monuments of the times.<sup>1</sup> From these various  
 materials, I shall now proceed to describe the  
 reign of Justinian, which will deserve and occupy  
 an ample space. The present chapter will explain  
 the elevation and character of Theodora, the fac-  
 tions of the circus, and the peaceful administration  
 of the sovereign of the East. In the three suc-  
 ceeding chapters, I shall relate the wars of Justi-  
 nian which achieved the conquest of Africa and  
 Italy; and I shall follow the victories of Belisarius  
 and Narses, without disguising the vanity of  
 their triumphs, or the hostile virtue of the Per-  
 sian and Gothic heroes. The series of this and the  
 following volume will embrace the jurisprudence  
 and theology of the emperor; the controversies and  
 sects which still divide the oriental church; the  
 reformation of the Roman law, which is obeyed  
 or respected by the nations of modern Europe.

Division  
of the  
reign of  
Justinian.

Birth and  
vices of  
the em-  
press  
Theodora.

I. In the exercise of supreme power, the first  
 act of Justinian was to divide it with the woman  
 whom he loved, the famous Theodora,<sup>2</sup> whose  
 strange elevation cannot be applauded as the tri-

<sup>1</sup> Montesquieu (*Considerations sur la Grandeur et la Decadence des Romains*, c. xx) gives credit to these anecdotes, as connected, 1. with the weakness of the empire, and, 2. with the instability of Justinian's laws.

<sup>2</sup> For the life and manners of the empress Theodora, see the *Anecdotes*; more especially c. 1-5, 9, 10-15, 16, 17, with the learned notes of Alemannus—a reference of which is always implied.

triumph of female virtue. Under the reign of Anastasius, the care of the wild beasts maintained by the green faction of Constantinople, was intrusted to Acacius, a native of the isle of Cyprus, who, from his employment, was surnamed the master of the bears. This honourable office was given after his death to another candidate, notwithstanding the diligence of his widow, who had already provided a husband and a successor. Acacius had left three daughters, Comito,\* THEODORA, and Anastasia, the eldest of whom did not then exceed the age of seven years. On a solemn festival, these helpless orphans were sent by their distressed and indignant mother, in the garb of suppliants, into the midst of the theatre: the green faction received them with contempt, the blues with compassion; and this difference, which sunk deep into the mind of Theodora, was felt long afterwards in the administration of the empire. As they improved in age and beauty, the three sisters were successively devoted to the public and private pleasures of the Byzantine people; and Theodora, after following Comito on the stage, in the dress of a slave, with a stool on her head, was at length permitted to exercise her independent talents. She neither danced, nor sung, nor played on the flute; her skill was confined to the pantomime arts; she excelled in buffoon characters, and as often as the comedian swelled her cheeks, and complained with

\* Comito was afterwards married to Sittas duke of Armenia, the father perhaps, at least she might be the mother, of the empress Sophia. Two nephews of Theodora may be the sons of Anastasia, (Aleman. p. 30, 31).

CHAP.  
XL.

a ridiculous tone and gesture of the blows that were inflicted, the whole theatre of Constantinople resounded with laughter and applause. The beauty of Theodora<sup>1</sup> was the subject of more flattering praise, and the source of more exquisite delight. Her features were delicate and regular; her complexion, though somewhat pale, was tinged with a natural colour; every sensation was instantly expressed by the vivacity of her eyes; her easy motions displayed the graces of a small but elegant figure; and either love or adulation might proclaim, that painting and poetry were incapable of delineating the matchless excellence of her form. But this form was degraded by the facility with which it was exposed to the public eye, and prostituted to licentious desire. Her venal charms were abandoned to a promiscuous crowd of citizens and strangers, of every rank, and of every profession; the fortunate lover who had been promised a night of enjoyment, was often driven from her bed by a stronger or more wealthy favourite; and when she passed through the streets, her presence was avoided by all who wished to escape either the scandal or the temptation. The satirical historian has not blushed<sup>2</sup> to describe the naked scenes

<sup>1</sup> Her statue was raised at Constantinople, on a porphyry column. See Procopius, (de Edif. l. i, c. 11), who gives her portrait in the Anecdotes, (c. 10). Aleman. (p. 47) produces one from a Mosaic at Ravenna, loaded with pearls and jewels, and yet handsome.

<sup>2</sup> A fragment of the Anecdotes, (c. 9), somewhat too naked, was suppressed by Alemannus, though extant in the Vatican MS.; nor has the defect been supplied in the Paris or Venice editions. La Mothe le Vayer (tom. viii, p. 155) gave the first hint of this curious and genuine passage, (Jortin's Remarks, vol. iv, p. 366), which he had received from Rome, and it has been since published in the Me-nagiana, (tom. iii, p. 264-269), with a Latin version.

which Theodora was not ashamed to exhibit in the theatre.<sup>a</sup> After exhausting the arts of sensual pleasure,<sup>b</sup> she most ungratefully murmured against the parsimony of Nature;<sup>c</sup> but her murmurs, her pleasures, and her arts, must be veiled in the obscurity of a learned language. After reigning for sometime, the delight and contempt of the capital, she condescended to accompany Ecebolus, a native of Tyre, who had obtained the government of the African Pentapolis. But this union was frail and transient: Ecebolus soon rejected an expensive or faithless concubine; she was reduced at Alexandria to extreme distress; and in her laborious return to Constantinople, every city of the East admired and enjoyed the fair Cyprian, whose merit appeared to justify her descent from the peculiar island of Venus. The vague commerce of Theodora, and the most detestable precautions, preserved her from the danger which she feared; yet

<sup>a</sup> After the mention of a narrow girdle, (as none could appear stark-naked in the theatre), Procopius thus proceeds.—*Αντιστατικὴν γὰρ ἐστὶν ἰδαφι ὅππια αὐτὴ. Οὗτος δὲ τις . . . ἄλλας ἄνθ' ὁσέων τῶν αὐδαίων ἔργαται ἅς δι' οὐ χροί, δὲ ἐς ταῦτα περιεχόμενα προύχοντα καὶ ἐμφανὲς ἵδουσι κατὰ μίαν ἀνιλεμένην ἡδονήν.* I have heard that a learned prelate, now deceased, was fond of quoting this passage in conversation.

<sup>b</sup> Theodora surpassed the Crispa of Ausonius, (Epigram lxxi), who imitated the capitalis luxus of the females of Nola. See Quintilian Institut. viii, 6, and Torentius ad Horat. Sermon. l. i, sat. 2, v. 101. At a memorable supper, thirty slaves waited round the table; ten young men feasted with Theodora. Her charity was universal.

*Et lassata viris, tandem satiata, recessit.*

<sup>c</sup> *Ἡ δὲ καὶ ἑρμὶν ἐρρωματικῶν ἑργαζομένη μετὰ δὲ ἐν φρεσὶ διαφωτισμένη ὅτι δὲ καὶ αἰστέται αὐτὴ ἐρρωτικὸς ἢ οὐ καὶ ἑρρωτικὸς, αὐτὴ δὲ αὐτὴν καὶ ἐκείνην ἑργαζομένη.* She wished for a fourth altar, on which she might pour libations to the god of love.

CHAP. once, and once only, she became a mother. The  
 XL. infant was saved and educated in Arabia, by his  
 father, who imparted to him on his death-bed, that  
 he was the son of an empress. Filled with ambitious hopes, the unsuspecting youth immediately hastened to the palace of Constantinople, and was admitted to the presence of his mother. As he was never more seen, even after the decease of Theodora, she deserves the foul imputation of extinguishing with his life a secret so offensive to her imperial virtue.

Her marriage with Justinian.

In the most abject state of her fortune and reputation, some vision, either of sleep or of fancy, had whispered to Theodora the pleasing assurance that she was destined to become the spouse of a potent monarch. Conscious of her approaching greatness, she returned from Paphlagonia to Constantinople; assumed, like a skilful actress, a more decent character; relieved her poverty by the laudable industry of spinning wool; and affected a life of chastity and solitude in a small house, which she afterwards changed into a magnificent temple.<sup>d</sup> Her beauty, assisted by art or accident, soon attracted, captivated, and fixed, the patrician Justinian, who already reigned with absolute sway under the name of his uncle. Perhaps she contrived to enhance the value of a gift which she had so often lavished on the meanest of mankind: perhaps she inflamed, at first by modest delays,

<sup>d</sup> Anonym. de Antiquitat. C. P. l. iii, 132, in Banduri Imperium Orient. tom. i, p. 48. Ludwig (p. 164) argues sensibly that Theodora would not have immortalized a brothel: but I apply this fact to her second and chaster residence at Constantinople.

and at last by sensual allurements, the desires of a lover, who from nature or devotion was addicted to long vigils and abstemious diet. When his first transports had subsided, she still maintained the same ascendant over his mind, by the more solid merit of temper and understanding. Justinian delighted to ennoble and enrich the object of his affection; the treasures of the East were poured at her feet, and the nephew of Justin was determined, perhaps by religious scruples, to bestow on his concubine the sacred and legal character of a wife. But the laws of Rome expressly prohibited the marriage of a senator with any female who had been distinguished by a mean origin or theatrical profession: the empress Lupicina, or Euphemia, a barbarian of rustic manners, but of irreproachable virtue, refused to accept a prostitute for her niece: and even Vigilantia, the superstitious mother of Justinian, though she acknowledged the wit and beauty of Theodora, was seriously apprehensive, lest the levity and arrogance of that artful paramour might corrupt the piety and happiness of her son. These obstacles were removed by the inflexible constancy of Justinian. He patiently expected the death of the empress; he despised the tears of his mother, who soon sunk under the weight of her affliction; and a law was promulgated in the name of the emperor Justin, which abolished the rigid jurisprudence of antiquity. A glorious repentance (the words of the edict) was left open for the unhappy females who had prostituted their persons on the theatre, and they were permitted to contract a legal union with the most illustrious

CHAP.

XL.

of the Romans.<sup>c</sup> This indulgence was speedily followed by the solemn nuptials of Justinian and Theodora; her dignity was gradually exalted with that of her lover; and, as soon as Justin had invested his nephew with the purple, the patriarch of Constantinople placed the diadem on the heads of the emperor and empress of the East. But the usual honours which the severity of Roman manners had allowed to the wives of princes, could not satisfy either the ambition of Theodora or the fondness of Justinian. He seated her on the throne as an equal and independent colleague in the sovereignty of the empire, and an oath of allegiance was imposed on the governors of the provinces in the joint names of Justinian and Theodora.<sup>d</sup> The eastern world fell prostrate before the genius and fortune of the daughter of Aca-cius. The prostitute who, in the presence of innumerable spectators, had polluted the theatre of Constantinople, was adored as a queen in the same city, by grave magistrates, orthodox bishops, victorious generals, and captive monarchs.<sup>e</sup>

\* See the old law in Justinian's Code, (L. v. tit. v. leg. 7; tit. xxvii. leg. 1), under the years 336 and 454. The new edict (about the year 521 or 522, Aleman. p. 38, 96) very awkwardly repeals no more than the clause of *mulieres scœnicæ, libertinæ, tabernariæ*. See the novels 89 and 117, and a Greek rescript from Justinian to the bishops, (Aleman. p. 41).

<sup>c</sup> I swear by the father, &c. by the Virgin Mary, by the four Gospels, quæ in manibus teneo, and by the holy archangels Michael and Gabriel, puram conscientiam germanumque sêrvitium me servaturum, pœratissimis DDNN. Justiniano et Theodoræ conjugibus, (Novell. viii. tit. 3). Would the oath have been binding in favour of the widow? *Communes tituli et triumphus*, &c. (Aleman. p. 47, 48).

<sup>d</sup> "Let greatness own her, and she's mean no more," &c. Without Warburton's critical telescope, I should never have seen, in the general picture of triumphant vice, any personal allusion to Theodora.

Those who believe that the female mind is totally depraved by the loss of chastity, will eagerly listen to all the invectives of private envy or popular resentment, which have dissembled the virtues of Theodora, exaggerated her vices, and condemned with rigour the venal or voluntary sins of the youthful harlot. From a motive of shame or contempt, she often declined the servile homage of the multitude, escaped from the odious light of the capital, and passed the greatest part of the year in the palaces and gardens which were pleasantly seated on the sea-coast of the Propontis and the Bosphorus. Her private hours were devoted to the prudent and successful care of her beauty, the luxury of the bath and table, and the long slumber of the evening and the morning. Her secret apartments were occupied by the favourite women and eunuchs, whose interests and passions she indulged at the expence of justice; the most illustrious personages of the state were crowded into a dark and sultry antichamber, and when at last, after tedious attendance, they were admitted to kiss the feet of Theodora, they experienced, as her humour might suggest, the silent arrogance of an empress, or the capricious levity of a comedian. Her rapacious avarice to accumulate an immense treasury, may be excused by the apprehension of her husband's death, which could leave no alternative between ruin and the throne; and fear as well as ambition might exasperate Theodora against two generals, who, during a malady of the emperor, had rashly declared that they were not disposed to ac-

CHAP. quiesce in the choice of the capital. But the re-  
 XL. proach of cruelty, so repugnant even to her soft-  
 er vices, has left an indelible stain on the me-  
 mory of Theodora. Her numerous spies observ-  
 ed, and zealously reported, every action, or word,  
 or look, injurious to their royal mistress. Whom-  
 soever they accused were cast into her peculiar  
 prisons,<sup>b</sup> inaccessible to the inquiries of justice;  
 and it was rumoured, that the torture of the rack,  
 or scourge, had been inflicted in the presence of  
 a female tyrant, insensible to the voice of prayer  
 or of pity.<sup>c</sup> Some of these unhappy victims perish-  
 ed in deep unwholesome dungeons, while others  
 were permitted, after the loss of their limbs, their  
 reason, or their fortune, to appear in the world  
 the living monuments of her vengeance, which  
 was commonly extended to the children of those  
 whom she had suspected or injured. The senator  
 or bishop, whose death or exile Theodora had  
 pronounced, was delivered to a trusty messenger,  
 and his diligence was quickened by a menace  
 from her own mouth. “ If you fail in the exe-  
 cution of my commands, I swear by him who  
 liveth for ever, that your skin shall be flayed  
 from your body.”<sup>k</sup>

Her vir-  
 tues,

If the creed of Theodora had not been tainted  
 with heresy, her exemplary devotion might have

<sup>b</sup> Her prisons, a labyrinth, a Tartarus, (Anecdot. c. 4), were under the palace. Darkness is propitious to cruelty, but it is likewise favourable to calumny and fiction.

<sup>c</sup> A more jocular whipping was inflicted on Saturninus, for presuming to say that his wife, a favourite of the empress, had not been found *arpius*, (Anecdot. c. 17).

<sup>k</sup> Per viventem in sæcula excoriari te faciam. Anastasius de Vitis Pont. Roman. in Vigilio, p. 40.

atoned, in the opinion of her contemporaries, for pride, avarice, and cruelty. But if she employed her influence to assuage the intolerant fury of the emperor, the present age will allow some merit to her religion, and much indulgence to her speculative errors.<sup>1</sup> The name of Theodora was introduced, with equal honour, in all the pious and charitable foundations of Justinian; and the most benevolent institution of his reign may be ascribed to the sympathy of the empress for her less fortunate sisters, who had been seduced or compelled to embrace the trade of prostitution. A palace, on the Asiatic side of the Bosphorus, was converted into a stately and spacious monastery, and a liberal maintenance was assigned to five hundred women, who had been collected from the streets and brothels of Constantinople. In this safe and holy retreat, they were devoted to perpetual confinement; and the despair of some, who threw themselves headlong into the sea, was lost in the gratitude of the penitents, who had been delivered from sin and misery by their generous benefactress.<sup>m</sup> The prudence of Theodora is celebrated by Justinian himself; and his laws are attributed to the sage counsels of his most reverend wife, whom he had received as the gift of the deity.<sup>n</sup> Her cou-

<sup>1</sup> Ludewig, p. 161-166. I give him credit for the charitable attempt, although he hath not much charity in his temper.

<sup>m</sup> Compare the Anecdotes (c. 17) with the Edifices, (l. i, c. 9). How differently may the same fact be stated! John Malala (tom. ii, p. 174. 175) observes, that on this, or a similar occasion, she released and clothed the girls whom she had purchased from the stews at five aurei a-piece.

<sup>n</sup> Novel. viii, 1. An allusion to Theodora. Her enemies read the name *Dæmonodora*, (Aleman. p. 66).

CHAP.  
XL.

rage was displayed amidst the tumult of the people and the terrors of the court. Her chastity, from the moment of her union with Justinian, is founded on the silence of her implacable enemies: and, although the daughter of Acacius might be satiated with love, yet some applause is due to the firmness of a mind which could sacrifice pleasure and habit to the stronger sense either of duty or interest. The wishes and prayers of Theodora could never obtain the blessing of a lawful son, and she buried an infant daughter, the sole offspring of her marriage.\* Notwithstanding this disappointment, her dominion was permanent and absolute; she preserved, by art or merit, the affections of Justinian; and their seeming dissensions were always fatal to the courtiers who believed them to be sincere. Perhaps her health had been impaired by the licentiousness of her youth; but it was always delicate, and she was directed by her physicians to use the Pythian warm baths. In this journey, the empress was followed by the pretorian prefect, the great treasurer, several counts and patricians, and a splendid train of four thousand attendants: the highways were repaired at her approach; a palace was erected for her reception: and as she passed through Bithynia, she distributed liberal alms, to the churches, the monasteries, and the hospitals, that they might implore heaven for the restoration of her health.<sup>p</sup>

\* St. Sabas refused to pray for a son of Theodora, lest he should prove an heretic worse than Anastasius himself, (Cyril in Vit. St. Sabæ, apud Aleman. p. 70, 109).

<sup>p</sup> See John Malala, tom. ii, p. 174; Theophanes, p. 158; Procopius de Edific. l. v, c. 3.

At length, in the twenty-fourth year of her marriage, and the twenty-second of her reign, she was consumed by a cancer;<sup>1</sup> and the irreparable loss was deplored by her husband, who, in the room of a theatrical prostitute, might have selected the purest and most noble virgin of the East.<sup>2</sup>

CHAP.  
XL.

and death,  
A. D. 548.  
June 11.

II. A material difference may be observed in the games of antiquity : the most eminent of the Greeks were actors, the Romans were merely spectators. The Olympic stadium was open to wealth, merit, and ambition; and if the candidates could depend on their personal skill and activity, they might pursue the footsteps of Diomedes and Menelaus, and conduct their own horses in the rapid career.<sup>3</sup> Ten, twenty, forty, chariots, were allowed to start at the same instant; a crown of leaves was the reward of the victor : and his fame, with that of his family and country, was chaunted in lyric strains more durable than monuments of brass and marble. But a senator, or even a citi-

The factions of the  
circus,

<sup>1</sup> Theodora Chalcedonensis synodi inimica canceris plagâ toto corpore perfusa vitam prodigiöse finivit, (Victor Tununensis in Chron.). On such occasions, an orthodox mind is steeled against pity. Alemanus (p. 12, 13) understands the *veritas exequi* of Theophanes as civil language, which does not imply either piety or repentance; yet two years after her death, St. Theodora is celebrated by Paul Silentiarius, (in Proem. v. 58-62).

<sup>2</sup> As she persecuted the popes, and rejected a council, Baronius exhausts the names of Eve, Dalila, Herodias, &c. : after which he has recourse to his infernal dictionary : *civis inferni—alumna dæmonum—satanico agitata spiritû—astro percita diabolico*, &c. &c. (A. D. 548, N°. 24).

<sup>3</sup> Read and feel the xxiid book of the Iliad, a living picture of manners, passions, and the whole form and spirit of the chariot-race. West's Dissertation on the Olympic Games (sect. xii-xvii) affords much curious and authentic information.

CHAP. zen, conscious of his dignity, would have blushed  
 XL. to expose his person or his horses in the circus of  
 ~~~~~ Rome. The games were exhibited at the expence  
 of the republic, the magistrates, or the emperors :  
 but the reins were abandoned to servile hands ; and  
 if the profits of a favourite charioteer sometimes  
 exceeded those of an advocate, they must be consi-  
 dered as the effects of popular extravagance, and  
 the high wages of a disgraceful profession. The  
 race, in its first institution, was a simple contest of  
 two chariots, whose drivers were distinguished by  
*white* and *red* liveries ; two additional colours, a  
 light *green*, and a cerulean *blue*, were afterwards  
 introduced ; and as the races were repeated twenty-  
 five times, one hundred chariots contributed in the  
 same day to the pomp of the circus. The four  
*factions* soon acquired a legal establishment, and a  
 mysterious origin, and their fanciful colours were  
 derived from the various appearances of nature in  
 the four seasons of the year ; the red dog-star of  
 summer, the snows of winter, the deep shades of  
 autumn, and the cheerful verdure of the spring.<sup>†</sup>  
 Another interpretation preferred the elements to  
 the seasons, and the struggle of the green and blue  
 was supposed to represent the conflict of the earth  
 and sea. Their respective victories announced  
 either a plentiful harvest or a prosperous naviga-

<sup>†</sup> The four colours, *albat*, *russati*, *prasini*, *veneti*, represent the four seasons, according to Cassiodorius, (Var. iii, 51), who lavishes much wit and eloquence on this theatrical mystery. Of these colours, the three first may be fairly translated, *white*, *red*, and *green*. *Venetus* is explained by *cæruleus*, a word various and vague : it is properly the sky reflected in the sea ; but custom and convenience may allow *blue* as an equivalent, (Robert. Stephan. sub voce. Spence's Polymetis, p. 228).

tion, and the hostility of the husbandmen and mariners was somewhat less absurd than the blind ardour of the Roman people, who devoted their lives and fortunes to the colour which they had espoused. Such folly was disdained and indulged by the wisest princes; but the names of Caligula, Nero, Vitellius, Verus, Commodus, Caracalla, and Elagabalus, were inrolled in the blue or green factions of the circus: they frequented their stables, at Rome, applauded their favourites, chastised their antagonists, and deserved the esteem of the populace, by the natural or affected imitation of their manners. The bloody and tumultuous contest continued to disturb the public festival, till the rage of the spectacles of Rome; and Theodoric, from a motive of justice or affection, interposed his authority to protect the greens against the violence of a consul and a patrician, who were passionately addicted to the blue faction of the circus.<sup>u</sup>

Constantinople adopted the follies, though not the virtues, of ancient Rome; and the same factions which had agitated the circus, raged with redoubled fury in the hippodrome. Under the reign of Anastasius, this popular frenzy was inflamed by religious zeal; and the greens, who had treacherously concealed stones and daggers under baskets of fruit, massacred, at a solemn festival, three thousand of their blue adversaries.<sup>v</sup> From the ca-

They distract Constantinople and the East.

<sup>u</sup> See Onuphrius Panvinus de Ludis Circensibus, l. i, c. 10, 11: the xviiith Annotation on Mascou's History of the Germans, and Aleman. ad c. vii.

<sup>v</sup> Marcellin. in Chron. p. 47. Instead of the vulgar word *veneta*, he uses the more exquisite terms of *cærulea* and *cærealis*. Baronius,

(A. D.

CHAP.

XL

pital this pestilence was diffused into the provinces and cities of the East, and the sportive distinction of two colours produced two strong and irreconcilable factions, which shook the foundations of a feeble government.<sup>1</sup> The popular dissensions, founded on the most serious interest, or holy pretence, have scarcely equalled the obstinacy of this wanton discord, which invaded the peace of families, divided friends and brothers, and tempted the female sex, though seldom seen in the circus, to espouse the inclinations of their lovers, or to contradict the wishes of their husbands. Every law, either human or divine, was trampled under foot, and as long as the party was successful, its deluded followers appeared careless of private distress or public calamity. The license, without the freedom, of democracy, was revived at Antioch and Constantinople, and the support of a faction became necessary to every candidate for civil or ecclesiastical honours. A secret attachment to the family or sect of Anastasius was imputed to the greens; the blues were zealously devoted to the cause of orthodoxy and Justinian,<sup>2</sup> and their grateful patron protected, above five years, the disorders of a faction, whose seasonable tumults

Justinian  
favours the  
blues.

(A. D. 501, No. 4, 5, 6) is satisfied that the blues were orthodox; but Tillemont is angry at the supposition, and will not allow any martyrs in a playhouse, (*Hist. des Emp.* tom. vi, p. 554).

<sup>1</sup> See Procopius, *Persic.* l. i, c. 24. In describing the vices of the factions and of the government, the *public* is not more favourable than the *secret* historian. Aleman. (p. 26) has quoted a fine passage from Gregory Nazianzen, which proves the inveteracy of the evil.

<sup>2</sup> The partiality of Justinian for the blues, (*Anecd.* c. 7), is attested by Evagrius, (*Hist. Eccles.* l. iv, c. 32); John Malala, (tom. p. 139, 139), especially for Antioch; and Theophanes, (p. 142).

overawed the palace, the senate, and the capitals of the East. Insolent with royal favour, the blues affected to strike terror by a peculiar and barbaric dress, the long hair of the Huns, their close sleeves and ample garments, a lofty step, and a sonorous voice. In the day they concealed their two-edged poniards, but in the night they boldly assembled in arms, and in numerous bands, prepared for every act of violence and rapine. Their adversaries of the green faction, or even inoffensive citizens, were stripped and often murdered by these nocturnal robbers, and it became dangerous to wear any gold buttons or girdles, or to appear at a late hour in the streets of a peaceful capital. A daring spirit, rising with impunity, proceeded to violate the safeguard of private houses; and fire was employed to facilitate the attack, or to conceal the crimes, of these factious rioters. No place was safe or sacred from their depredations; to gratify either avarice or revenge, they profusely spilt the blood of the innocent; churches and altars were polluted by atrocious murders; and it was the boast of the assassins, that their dexterity could always inflict a mortal wound with a single stroke of their dagger. The dissolute youth of Constantinople adopted the blue livery of disorder; the laws were silent, and the bonds of society were relaxed; creditors were compelled to resign their obligations; judges to reverse their sentence; masters to enfranchise their slaves; fathers to supply the extravagance of their children; noble matrons were prostituted to the lust of their servants; beautiful boys were torn from the arms of

CHAP.

XL.

their parents; and wives, unless they preferred a voluntary death, were ravished in the presence of their husbands.<sup>a</sup> The despair of the greens, who were persecuted by their enemies, and deserted by the magistrate, assumed the privilege of defence; perhaps of retaliation: but those who survived the combat were dragged to execution, and the unhappy fugitives escaping to woods and caverns, preyed without mercy on the society from whence they were expelled. Those ministers of justice who had courage to punish the crimes, and to brave the resentment of the blues, became the victims of their indiscreet zeal: a prefect of Constantinople fled for refuge to the holy sepulchre; a count of the East was ignominiously whipped, and a governor of Cilicia was hanged, by the order of Theodora, on the tomb of two assassins whom he had condemned for the murder of his groom, and a daring attack upon his own life.<sup>b</sup> An aspiring candidate may be tempted to build his greatness on the public confusion, but it is the interest as well as duty of a sovereign to maintain the authority of the laws. The first edict of Justinian, which was often repeated, and sometimes executed, announced his firm resolution to support the innocent, and to chastise the guilty of every

<sup>a</sup> A wife, (says Procopius), who was seized and almost ravished by a blue coat, threw herself into the Bosphorus. The bishops of the second Syria (Athenan. p. 26) deplore a similar suicide, the guilt or glory of female chastity, and name the heroine.

<sup>b</sup> The doubtful credit of Procopius (Anecd. c. 17) is supported by the less partial Evagrius, who confirms the fact, and specifies the names. The tragic fate of the prefect of Constantinople is related by John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 139).

denomination and colour. Yet the balance of justice was still inclined in favour of the blue faction, by the secret affection, the habits, and the fears of the emperor; his equity, after an apparent struggle, submitted, without reluctance, to the implacable passions of Theodora, and the empress never forgot, or forgave, the injuries of the comedian. At the accession of the younger Justin, the proclamation of equal and rigorous justice indirectly condemned the partiality of the former reign. "Ye blues, Justinian is no more! ye greens, he is still alive!"<sup>c</sup>

A sedition, which almost laid Constantinople in ashes, was excited by the mutual hatred and momentary reconciliation of the two factions. In the fifth year of his reign, Justinian celebrated the festival of the ides of January: the games were incessantly disturbed by the clamorous discontent of the greens; till the twenty-second race, the emperor maintained his silent gravity; at length, yielding to his impatience, he condescended to hold, in abrupt sentences, and by the voice of a crier, the most singular dialogue<sup>d</sup> that ever passed between a prince and his subjects. Their first complaints were respectful and modest; they accused the subordinate ministers of oppression, and pro-

Sedition of  
Constantinople,  
surnamed  
Nika,  
A. D. 532;  
January.

<sup>c</sup> See John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 147); yet he owns that Justinian was attached to the blues. The seeming discord of the emperor and Theodora, is perhaps viewed with too much jealousy and refinement by Procopius, (Anecd. c. 10). See Aleman. Préfat. p. 6.

<sup>d</sup> This dialogue, which Theophanes has preserved, exhibits the popular language, as well as the manners, of Constantinople in the sixth century. Their Greek is mingled with many strange and barbarous words, for which Ducange cannot always find a meaning or etymology.

CHAP.

XL.

~~CHAPTER~~

claimed their wishes for the long life and victory of the emperor. "Be patient and attentive, ye insolent railers!" exclaimed Justinian; "be mute, ye Jews, Samaritans, and Manichæans!" The greens still attempted to awaken his compassion. "We are poor, we are innocent, we are injured, we dare not pass through the streets: a general persecution is exercised against our name and colour. Let us die, O emperor! but let us die by your command, and for your service!" But the repetition of partial and passionate invectives degraded, in their eyes, the majesty of the purple; they renounced allegiance to the prince who refused justice to his people; lamented that the father of Justinian had been born; and branded his son with the opprobrious names of an homicide, an ass, and a perjured tyrant. "Do you despise your lives?" cried the indignant monarch: the blues rose with fury from their seats; their hostile clamours thundered in the hippodrome; and their adversaries, deserting the unequal contest, spread terror and despair through the streets of Constantinople. At this dangerous moment, seven notorious assassins of both factions, who had been condemned by the prefect, were carried round the city, and afterwards transported to the place of execution in the suburb of Pera. Four were immediately beheaded; a fifth was hanged: but when the same punishment was inflicted on the remaining two, the rope broke, they fell alive to the ground, the populace applauded their escape, and the monks of St. Co-

non, issuing from the neighbouring convent, conveyed them in a boat to the sanctuary of the church.\* As one of these criminals was of the blue, and the other of the green livery, the two factions were equally provoked by the cruelty of their oppressor, or the ingratitude of their patron; and a short truce was concluded till they had delivered their prisoners, and satisfied their revenge. The palace of the prefect, who withstood the seditious torrent, was instantly burnt, his officers and guards were massacred, the prisons were forced open, and freedom was restored to those who could only use it for the public destruction. A military force, which had been dispatched to the aid of the civil magistrate, was fiercely encountered by an armed multitude, whose numbers and boldness continually increased; and the Heruli, the wildest barbarians in the service of the empire, overturned the priests and their relics, which, from a pious motive, had been rashly interposed to separate the bloody conflict. The tumult was exasperated by this sacrilege, the people fought with enthusiasm in the cause of God; the women, from the roofs and windows, showered stones on the heads of the soldiers; who darted firebrands against the houses; and the various flames, which had been kindled by the hands of citizens and strangers, spread without control over the face of the city. The conflagration involved the cathedral of St. Sophia, the baths of Zeuxippus, a part of the palace, from the first en-

\* See this church and monastery in Ducange, C. P. Christiana, l. iv, p. 182.

CHAP. XL.   
 ~~~~~  
 trance to the altar of Mars, and the long portico from the palace to the forum of Constantine; a large hospital, with the sick patients, was consumed; many churches and stately edifices were destroyed, and an immense treasure of gold and silver was either melted or lost. From such scenes of horror and distress, the wise and wealthy citizens escaped over the Bosphorus to the Asiatic side; and during five days Constantinople was abandoned to the factions, whose watch-word, *NIKA, vanquish!* has given a name to this memorable sedition.\*

The distress of Justinian.

As long as the factions were divided, the triumphant blues, and desponding greens, appeared to behold with the same indifference the disorders of the state. They agreed to censure the corrupt management of justice and the finance; and the two responsible ministers, the artful Tribonian, and the rapacious John of Cappadocia, were loudly arraigned as the authors of the public misery. The peaceful murmurs of the people would have been disregarded: they were heard with respect when the city was in flames; the questor, and the prefect, were instantly removed, and their offices were filled by two senators of blameless integrity. After this popular concession, Justinian proceeded to the hippodrome to confess his own errors, and to accept the repentance of his grateful subjects; but they distrusted his assurances, though solemnly pro-

\* The history of the *Nika* sedition is extracted from Marcellinus, (in Chron.); Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 26); John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 213-218); Chron. Paschal. (p. 336-340); Theophanes, (Chronograph. p. 154-158), and Zonaras, (l. xiv, p. 61-63).

nounced in the presence of the holy gospels ; and the emperor, alarmed by their distrust, retreated with precipitation to the strong fortress of the palace. The obstinacy of the tumult was now imputed to a secret and ambitious conspiracy, and a suspicion was entertained, that the insurgents, more especially the green faction, had been supplied with arms and money by Hypatius and Pompey, two patricians, who could neither forget with honour, nor remember with safety, that they were the nephews of the emperor Anastasius. Capriciously trusted, disgraced, and pardoned, by the jealous levity of the monarch, they had appeared as loyal servants before the throne ; and, during five days of the tumult, they were detained as important hostages ; till at length, the fears of Justinian prevailing over his prudence, he viewed the two brothers in the light of spies, perhaps of assassins, and sternly commanded them to depart from the palace. After a fruitless representation, that obedience might lead to involuntary treason, they retired to their houses, and in the morning of the sixth day, Hypatius was surrounded and seized by the people, who, regardless of his virtuous resistance, and the tears of his wife, transported their favourite to the forum of Constantine, and, instead of a diadem, placed a rich collar on his head. If the usurper, who afterwards pleaded the merit of his delay, had complied with the advice of his senate, and urged the fury of the multitude, their first irresistible effort might have oppressed or expelled his trembling competitor. The Byzantine palace enjoyed a

CHAP. free communication with the sea; vessels lay  
 XL. ready at the garden stairs; and a secret resolution was already formed, to convey the emperor with his family and treasures to a safe retreat, at some distance from the capital.

Firmness  
 of The-  
 odora.

Justinian was lost, if the prostitute whom he raised from the theatre had not renounced the timidity, as well as the virtues, of her sex. In the midst of a council, where Belisarius was present, Theodora alone displayed the spirit of an hero; and she alone, without apprehending his future hatred, could save the emperor from the imminent danger, and his unworthy fears. "If flight," said the consort of Justinian, "were the only means of safety, yet I should disdain to fly. Death is the condition of our birth; but they who have reigned should never survive the loss of dignity and dominion. I implore heaven, that I may never be seen, not a day, without my diadem and purple; that I may no longer behold the light, when I cease to be saluted with the name of queen. If you resolve, O Cæsar! to fly, you have treasures; behold the sea, you have ships; but tremble lest the desire of life should expose you to wretched exile and ignominious death. For my own part, I adhere to the maxim of antiquity, that the throne is a glorious sepulchre." The firmness of a woman restored the courage to deliberate and act, and courage soon discovers the resources of the most desperate situation. It was an easy and a decisive measure to revive the animosity of the factions; the blue were astonished at their own guilt and folly, that a trifling injury should provoke them to conspire with their implor-

CHAP.

XL

The sedition is suppressed.

capable enemies against a gracious and liberal benefactor; they again proclaimed the majesty of Justinian, and the greens, with their upstart emperor, were left alone in the hippodrome. The fidelity of the guards was doubtful; but the military force of Justinian consisted in three thousand veterans, who had been trained to valour and discipline in the Persian and Illyrian wars. Under the command of Belisarius and Mundus, they silently marched in two divisions from the palace, forced their obscure way through narrow passages, expiring flames, and falling edifices, and burst open at the same moment the two opposite gates of the hippodrome. In this narrow space, the disorderly and affrighted crowd was incapable of resisting on either side a firm and regular attack; the blues signalized the fury of their repentance; and it is computed, that above thirty thousand persons were slain in the merciless and promiscuous carnage of the day. Hypatius was dragged from his throne, and conducted with his brother Pompey to the feet of the emperor: they implored his clemency; but their crime was manifest, their innocence uncertain, and Justinian had been too much terrified to forgive. The next morning the two nephews of Anastasius, with eighteen illustrious accomplices, of patrician or consular rank, were privately executed by the soldiers; their bodies were thrown into the sea, their palaces razed, and their fortunes confiscated. The hippodrome itself was condemned during several years to a mournful silence: with the restoration of the games, the same dis-

CHAP. orders revived: and the blue and green factions  
 XL. continued to afflict the reign of Justinian, and to  
 disturb the tranquillity of the eastern empire.\*

Agriculture and manufactures of the eastern empire.

III. That empire, after Rome was barbarous, still embraced the nations whom she had conquered beyond the Hadriatic, and as far as the frontiers of Æthiopia and Persia. Justinian reigned over sixty-four provinces, and nine hundred and thirty-five cities;<sup>b</sup> his dominions were blessed by nature with the advantages of soil, situation, and climate: and the improvements of human art had been perpetually diffused along the coast of the Mediterranean and the banks of the Nile, from ancient Troy to the Ægyptian Thebes. Abraham<sup>c</sup> had been relieved by the well-known plenty of Egypt; the same country, a small and populous tract, was still capable of exporting, each year, two hundred and sixty thousand quarters of wheat for the use of Constantinople;<sup>d</sup> and the capital of Justinian was supplied with the manufactures of

\* Marcellinus says in general terms, *innumeris populis in circotrucidatis*. Procopius numbers 30,000 victims: and the 35,000 of Theophanes are swelled to 40,000 by the more recent Zonaras. Such is the usual progress of exaggeration.

<sup>b</sup> Hierocles, a contemporary of Justinian, composed his *Συνεχμῆς*, (Itineraria, p. 631), or review of the eastern provinces and cities, before the year 535, (Wesseling in *Præfat.* and *Not. ad.* p. 623, &c.).

<sup>c</sup> See the book of Genesis, (xii, 10), and the administration of Joseph. The annals of the Greeks and Hebrews agree in the early arts and plenty of Ægypt: but this antiquity supposes a long series of improvements: and Warburton, who is almost stifled by the Hebrew, calls aloud for the Samaritan chronology, (*Divine Legation*, vol. iii, p. 29, &c.).

<sup>d</sup> Eight millions of Roman modii, besides a contribution of 80,000 aurei for the expences of water-carriage, from which the subject was graciously excused. See the xiii<sup>th</sup> Edict of Justinian: the numbers are checked and verified by the agreement of the Greek and Latin texts.

Sidon, fifteen centuries after they had been celebrated in the poems of Homer.<sup>1</sup> The annual powers of vegetation, instead of being exhausted by two thousand harvests, were renewed and invigorated by skilful husbandry, rich manure, and seasonable repose. The breed of domestic animals was infinitely multiplied. Plantations, buildings, and the instruments of labour and luxury, which are more durable than the term of human life, were accumulated by the care of successive generations. Tradition preserved, and experience simplified, the humble practice of the arts: society was enriched by the division of labour and the facility of exchange; and every Roman was lodged, clothed, and subsisted, by the industry of a thousand hands. The invention of the loom and distaff has been piously ascribed to the gods. In every age, a variety of animal and vegetable productions, hair, skins, wool, flax, cotton, and at length *silk*, have been skilfully manufactured to hide or adorn the human body; they were stained with an infusion of permanent colours; and the pencil was successfully employed to improve the labours of the loom. In the choice of those colours<sup>m</sup> which imitate the beauties of nature, the freedom of taste and fashion

<sup>1</sup> Homer's *Iliad*, vi, 289. These veils, *πεπλοὶ ποικιλοὶ*, were the work of the Sidonian women. But this passage is more honourable to the manufactures than to the navigation of Phœnicia, from whence they had been imported to Troy in Phrygian bottoms.

<sup>m</sup> See in Ovid (*de Arte Amandi*, iii, 269, &c.) a poetical list of twelve colours borrowed from flowers, the elements, &c. But it is almost impossible to discriminate by words all the nice and various shades both of art and nature.

CHAP. was indulged; but the deep purple<sup>a</sup> which the  
 XL. Phœnicians extracted from a shell-fish, was re-  
 strained to the sacred person and palace of the  
 emperor; and the penalties of treason were de-  
 nounced against the ambitious subjects, who  
 dared to usurp the prerogative of the throne.\*

The use of  
 silk by the  
 Romans.

I need not explain that *silk*<sup>p</sup> is originally spun  
 from the bowels of a caterpillar, and that it com-  
 poses the golden tomb from whence a worm e-  
 merges in the form of a butterfly. Till the reign  
 of Justinian, the silk-worms who feed on the leaves  
 of the white mulberry-tree, were confined to  
 China; those of the pine, the oak, and the ash,  
 were common in the forests both of Asia and  
 Europe; but as their education is more difficult,  
 and their produce more uncertain, they were ge-  
 nerally neglected, except in the little island of

\* By the discovery of cochineal, &c. we far surpass the colours of antiquity. Their royal purple had a strong smell, and a dark cast as deep as bull's blood.—*Obscuritas rubens*, (says Cassiodorus, Var. 1, 2), *ningredo sanguinea*. The president Goguet (*Origine des Loix et des Arts*, part ii, l. ii, c. 2, p. 184–215) will amuse and satisfy the reader. I doubt whether his book, especially in England, is as well known as it deserves to be.

° Historical proofs of this jealousy have been occasionally introduced, and many more might have been added: but the arbitrary acts of despotism were justified by the sober and general declarations of law, (Codex Theodosian. l. x, tit. 21, leg. 3. Codex Justinian. l. xi, tit. 8, leg. 5). An inglorious permission, and necessary restriction, was applied to the *mimæ*, the female-dancers, (Cod. Theodos. l. xv, tit. 7, leg. 11).

<sup>p</sup> In the history of insects (far more wonderful than Ovid's *Metamorphoses*) the silk-worm holds a conspicuous place. The bombyx of the isle of Ceos, as described by Pliny, (*Hist. Natur.* xi, 26, 27, with the notes of the two learned Jesuits, Hardouin and Brotier), may be illustrated by a similar species in China, (*Memoires sur les Chi-nois*, tom. ii, p. 575–598); but our silk-worm, as well as the white mulberry-tree, were unknown to Theophrastus and Pliny.

Ceos, near the coast of Attica. A thin gauze was procured from their webs; and this Cean manufacture, the invention of a woman, for female use, was long admired both in the East and at Rome. Whatever suspicions may be raised by the garments of the Medes and Assyrians, Virgil is the most ancient writer, who expressly mentions the soft wool which was combed from the trees of the Seres or Chinese;<sup>4</sup> and this natural error, less marvellous than the truth, was slowly corrected by the knowledge of a valuable insect, the first artificer of the luxury of nations. That rare and elegant luxury was censured in the reign of Tiberius, by the games of the Romans; and Pliny, in affected though forcible language, has condemned the thirst of gain, which explored the last confines of the earth, for the pernicious purpose of exposing to the public eye naked draperies and transparent matrons.<sup>5</sup> A dress which shewed the turn of the limbs, and colour of the skin, might gratify vanity, or provoke desire; the silks which had been closely woven in China, were sometimes unravelled by the Phœnician women, and the precious materials were multiplied by a looser texture, and the

<sup>4</sup> Georgic. ii, 121. *Serica quando venerint in usum planissime non scio: suspicor tamen in Julii Caesaris ævo, nam ante non invenio*, says Justus Lipsius, (*Excursus i, ad Tacit. Annal. ii, 32*). See Dion Cassius, (l. xliii, p. 358, edit. Reimar), and Pausanias, (l. vi, p. 519), the first who describes, however strangely, the Seric insect.

<sup>5</sup> *Tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico matrona transluceat . . . ut denudet feminas vestis*, (Plin. vi, 20, xi, 21). Varro and Publius Syrus had already played on the *Toga ventrea*, *ventus textilis*, and *nebula linea*, (Horat. Sermon. i, 2, 101, with the notes of Torrentius and Dacier).

CHAP. intermixture of linen threads.<sup>1</sup> Two hundred  
 XL. years after the age of Pliny, the use of pure or  
 even of mixed silks was confined to the female sex, till the opulent citizens of Rome and the provinces were insensibly familiarized with the example of Elagabalus, the first who, by this effeminate habit, had sullied the dignity of an emperor and a man. Aurelian complained, that a pound of silk was sold at Rome for twelve ounces of gold: but the supply increased with the demand, and the price diminished with the supply. If accident or monopoly sometimes raised the value even above the standard of Aurelian, the manufacturers of Tyre and Berytus were sometimes compelled, by the operation of the same causes, to content themselves with a ninth part of that extravagant rate.<sup>2</sup> A law was thought necessary to discriminate the dress of comedians from that of senators; and of the silk exported from its native country, the far greater part was consumed by the subjects of Justinian. They were still more intimately acquainted with a shell-fish of the Mediterranean, surnamed the silk-worm of the sea; the fine wool or hair by which the mother-of-pearl affixes itself to the rock, is now manufactured for curiosity rather than use; and a robe obtained from the same singular materials, was the

<sup>1</sup> On the texture, colours, names, and use of the silk, half silk, and linen garments of antiquity, see the profound, diffuse, and obscure researches of the great Salmasius, (in *Hist. August.* p. 127, 309, 310, 339, 341, 342, 344, 388-391, 395, 513), who was ignorant of the most common trades of Dijon or Leyden.

<sup>2</sup> Flavius Vopiscus in Aurelian. c. 45, in *Hist. August.* p. 224. See Salmasius ad *Hist. Aug.* p. 392, and Plinian. *Exercitat.* in Solinum, p. 694, 695. The Anecdotes of Procopius (c. 25) state a partial and imperfect rate of the price of silk in the time of Justinian.

gift of  emperor to the satraps of Armenia. CHAP. XL.

A valuable merchandize of small bulk is capable of defraying the expence of land-carriage; and the caravans traversed the whole latitude of Asia in two hundred and forty-three days from the Chinese ocean to the sea-coast of Syria. Silk was immediately delivered to the Romans by the Persian merchants,\* who frequented the fairs of Armenia and Nisibis: but this trade, which in the intervals of truce was oppressed by avarice and jealousy, was totally interrupted by the long wars of the rival monarchies. The great king might proudly number Sogdiana, and even Sereca, among the provinces of his empire; but his real dominion was bounded by the Oxus, and his useful intercourse with the Sogdoites, beyond the river, depended on the pleasure of their conquerors, the white Huns, and the Turks, who successively reigned over that industrious people. Yet the most savage dominion has not extirpated the seeds of agriculture and commerce, in a region which is celebrated as one of the four gardens of Asia; the cities of Samarcand and Bochara are advantageously seated for the exchange of its various productions; and their merchants pur-

Importa-  
tion from  
China by  
land and  
sea.

\* Procopius de Edif. l. iii, c. 1. These *pinnes de mer* are found near Smyrna, Sicily, Corsica, and Minorca; and a pair of gloves of their silk was presented to Pope Benedict XIV.

\* Procopius Persic. l. i, c. 20; l. ii, c. 25. Gothic. l. iv, c. 17. Menander in Excerpt. Legat. p. 107. Of the Parthian or Persian empire, Isidore of Charax (in Stathmis Parthicis, p. 7, 8, in Hudson, Geograph. Minor. tom. ii), has marked the roads, and Ammianus Marcellinus (l. xxiii, c. 6, p. 400) has enumerated the provinces.

CHAP.

XL.

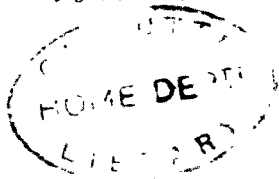
chased from the Chinese<sup>1</sup> the raw or manufactur-  
ed silk which they transported into Persia for the  
use of the Roman empire. In the vain capital of  
China, the Sogdian caravans were entertained as  
the suppliant embassies of tributary kingdoms, and  
if they returned in safety, the bold adventure was  
rewarded with exorbitant gain. But the difficult  
and perilous march from Samarcand to the first  
town of Shensi, could not be performed in less  
than sixty, eighty, or one hundred days : as soon  
as they had passed the Jazartes, they entered the  
desert ; and the wandering hords, unless they are  
restrained by armies and garrisons, have always  
considered the citizen and the traveller as the  
objects of lawful rapine. To escape the Tartar  
robbers, and the tyrants of Persia, the silk cara-  
vans explored a more southern road ; they tra-  
versed the mountains of Thibet, descended the  
streams of the Ganges or the Indus, and pa-  
tiently expected, in the ports of Guzerat and  
Malabar, the annual fleets of the West.<sup>2</sup> But the

<sup>1</sup> The blind admiration of the Jesuits confounds the different periods of the Chinese history. They are more critically distinguished by M. de Guignes, (*Hist. des Huns*, tom. i, part i, in the *Tables*, part ii, in the *Geography* ; *Memoires de l'Academie des Inscriptions*, tom. xxxii, xxxvi, xlii, xliii), who discovers the gradual progress of the truth of the annals, and the extent of the monarchy, till the Christian era. He has searched, with a curious eye, the connections of the Chinese with the nations of the West : but these connections are slight, casual, and obscure ; nor did the Romans entertain a suspicion that the Seres or Sinae possessed an empire not inferior to their own.

<sup>2</sup> The roads from China to Persia and Hindostan may be investigated in the relations of Hackluyt and Thevenot, (the ambassadors of Shahrak, Anthony Jenkinson, the Pere Greuber, &c. See likewise Hanway's *Travels*, vol. i. p. 345-357). A communication through Thibet has been lately explored by the English sovereigns of Bengal.

dangers of the sea were found less intolerable than toils and the loss of time; the attempt was soon renewed, and the only European who has passed that unfrequented way, applauds his own diligence, that in nine months after his departure from Pekin, he reached the mouth of the Indus. The ocean, however, was open to the free communication of mankind. From the great river to the tropic of Cancer, the provinces of China were subdued and civilized by the emperors of the North; they were filled about the time of the Christian era with cities and men, mulberry-trees and their precious inhabitants; and if the Chinese, with the knowledge of the compass, had possessed the genius of the Greeks or Phœnicians, they might have spread their discoveries over the southern hemisphere. I am not qualified to examine, and I am not disposed to believe, their distant voyages to the Persian gulf, or the Cape of Good Hope: but their ancestors might equal the labours and success of the present race, and the sphere of their navigation might extend from the isles of Japan to the straits of Malacca, the pillars, if we may apply that name, of an Oriental Hercules.\* Without losing sight of land, they might sail along the coast to the extreme promontory of Achin, which is annually visited by ten or twelve ships laden with the productions, the manufactures, and even the artifi-

\* For the Chinese navigation to Malacca and Achin, perhaps to Ceylon, See Renaudot, (on the two Mahometan Travellers, p. 8-11, 13-17, 141-157); Dampier, (vol. ii, p. 136); the Hist. Philosophique des deux Indes, (tom. i, p. 98), and the Hist. Generales des Voyages, (tom. vi, p. 201).



CHAP.  
XL.

cers, of China; the island of Sumatra and the opposite peninsula, are faintly delineated<sup>b</sup> as the regions of gold and silver; and the trading cities named in the geography of Ptolemy, may indicate, that this wealth was not solely derived from the mines. The direct interval between Sumatra and Ceylon is about three hundred leagues; the Chinese and Indian navigators were conducted by the flight of birds and periodical winds, and the ocean might be securely traversed in square-built ships, which, instead of iron, were sewed together with the strong thread of the cocoa-nut. Ceylon, Serendib, or Taprobana, was divided between two hostile princes; one of whom possessed the mountains, the elephants, and the luminous carbuncle; and the other enjoyed the more solid riches of domestic industry, foreign trade, and the capacious harbour of Trinquemale, which received and dismissed the fleets of the East and West. In this hospitable isle, at an equal distance (as it was computed) from their respective countries, the silk merchants of China, who had collected in their voyages aloes, cloves, nutmeg, and santal wood, maintained a free and beneficial commerce with the inhabitants of the Persian gulf. The subjects of the great king exalted, without a rival, his power and magnificence; and the Roman,

<sup>b</sup> The knowledge, or rather ignorance, of Strabo, Pliny, Ptolemy, Arrian, Marcian, &c. of the countries eastward of Cape Comorin, is finely illustrated by d'Anville, (*Antiquité Géographique de l'Inde*, especially p. 161–198). Our geography of India is improved by commerce and conquest; and has been illustrated by the excellent maps and memoirs of Major Rennel. If he extends the sphere of his inquiries with the same critical knowledge and sagacity, he will succeed, and may surpass, the first of modern geographers.

who ~~c~~ their vanity by comparing his CHAP.  
XL.  
~~~~~  
paltry ~~c~~ with a gold medal of the emperor  
Anastasius, had sailed to Ceylon in an Æthio-  
pian ship, as a simple passenger.<sup>c</sup>

As silk became of indispensable use, the emperor Justinian saw, with concern, that the Persians had occupied by land and sea the monopoly of this important supply, and that the wealth of his subjects was continually drained by a nation of enemies and idolaters. An active government would have restored the trade of Egypt and the navigation of the Red Sea, which had decayed with the prosperity of the empire; and the Roman vessels might have sailed, for the purchase of silk, to the ports of Ceylon, of Malacca, or even of China. Justinian embraced a more humble expedient, and solicited the aid of his Christian allies, the Æthiopians of Abyssinia, who had recently acquired the arts of navigation, the spirit of trade, and the sea-port of Adulis,<sup>d</sup> still decorated with the trophies of a Grecian conqueror. Along the African coast, they penetrated to the equator in search of gold, emeralds, and aromatics; but they wisely declined an unequal competition, in which

Introduc-  
tion of silk-  
worms into  
Greece.

<sup>c</sup> The Taprobane of Pliny, (vi, 24), Solinus, (c. 53), and Salmas. Plinianæ Exercitat. (p. 781, 782), and most of the ancients, who often confound the islands of Ceylon and Sumatra, is more clearly described by Cosmas Indicopleustes; yet even the Christian topographer has exaggerated its dimensions. His information on the Indian and Chinese trade is rare and curious, (l. ii, p. 138; l. xi, p. 337, 338, edit. Montfaucon).

<sup>d</sup> See Procopius, Persic. (l. ii, c. 20). Cosmas affords some interesting knowledge of the port and inscription of Adulis, (Topograph. Christ. l. ii, p. 138, 140-143), and of the trade of the Axumites along the African coast of Barbaria or Zingi, (p. 138, 139), and as far as Taprobane, (l. xi, p. 339).

CHAP.  
XL.  
.....

they must be always prevented by the vicinity of the Persians to the markets of India; and the emperor submitted to the disappointment, till his wishes were gratified by an unexpected event. The gospel had been preached to the Indians: a bishop already governed the Christians of St. Thomas on the pepper-coast of Malabar; a church was planted in Ceylon, and the missionaries pursued the footsteps of commerce to the extremities of Asia.\* Two Persian monks had long resided in China, perhaps in the royal city of Nankin, the seat of a monarch addicted to foreign superstitions, and who actually received an embassy from the isle of Ceylon. Amidst their pious occupations, they viewed with a curious eye the common dress of the Chinese, the manufactures of silk, and the myriads of silk-worms, whose education (either on trees or in houses) had once been considered as the labour of queens.† They soon discovered that it was impracticable to transport the short-lived insect, but that in the eggs a numerous progeny might be preserved and multiplied in a distant climate. Religion or interest had more power over the Persian monks than the love of their country: after a long journey, they arrived at Constantinople, imparted their project to the emperor, and were liberally

\* See the Christian missions in India, in Cosmas, (l. iii, p. 178; 179; l. xi, p. 337), and consult Asseman. Bibilot. Orient. (tom. iv, p. 413-548).

† The invention, manufacture, and general use of silk in China, may be seen in Duhalde, (Description Generale de la Chine, tom. ii, p. 165, 205-223). The province of Chekian is the most renowned both for quantity and quality.



encouraged by the gifts and promises of Justinian. To the historians of that prince, a campaign at the foot of mount Caucasus has seemed more deserving of a minute relation, than the labours of these missionaries of commerce, who again entered China, deceived a jealous people by concealing the eggs of the silk-worm in a hollow cane, and returned in triumph with the spoils of the East. Under their direction, the eggs were hatched at the proper season by the artificial heat of dung; the worms were fed with mulberry leaves; they lived and laboured in a foreign climate: a sufficient number of butterflies was saved to propagate the race, and were planted to supply the nourishment of the rising generations. Experience and reflection corrected the errors of a new attempt, and the Sogdoite ambassadors acknowledged, in the succeeding reign, that the Romans were not inferior to the natives of China in the education of the insects, and the manufactures of silk,<sup>s</sup> in which both China and Constantinople have been surpassed by the industry of modern Europe. I am not insensible of the benefits of elegant luxury; yet I reflect with some pain, that if the importers of silk had introduced the art of printing, already practised by the Chinese, the comedies of Menander, and the entire

<sup>s</sup> Procopius, l. viii. Gothic. iv, c. 17. Theophanes, Byzant. apud Phot. Cod. lxxxiv, p. 38. Zonaras, tom. ii, l. xiv, p. 69. Pagi (tom. ii, p. 602) assigns to the year 552 this memorable importation. Menander (in Excerpt. Legat. p. 107) mentions the admiration of the Sogdoites; and Theophylact Simocatta (l. vii, c. 9) darkly represents the two rival kingdoms in (*China*) the country of silk.

CHAP.  
XL.

decads of Livy, would have been perpetuated in the editions of the sixth century. A larger view of the globe might at least have promoted the improvement of speculative science, but the Christian geography was forcibly extracted from texts of scripture, and the study of nature was the surest symptom of an unbelieving mind. The orthodox faith confined the habitable world to one temperate zone, and represented the earth as an oblong surface, four hundred days journey in length, two hundred in breadth, encompassed by the ocean, and covered by the solid chrysal of the firmament.<sup>h</sup>

State of  
the reve-  
nue.

IV. The subjects of Justinian were dissatisfied with the times, and with the government. Europe was over-run by the barbarians, and Asia by the monks: the poverty of the West discouraged the trade and manufactures of the East; the produce of labour was consumed by the unprofitable servants of the church, the state, and the army, and a rapid decrease was felt in the fixed and circulating capitals which constitute the national wealth. The public distress had been al-

<sup>h</sup> Cosmas, surnamed Indicopleustes, or the Indian navigator, performed his voyage about the year 522, and composed at Alexandria, between 535 and 547, Christian Topography, (Montfaucon, Præfat. c. i), in which he refutes the impious opinion, that the earth is a globe; and Photius had read this work, (Cod. xxxvi, p. 9, 10), which displays the prejudices of a monk, with the knowledge of a merchant: the most valuable part has been given in French, and in Greek by Melchisedec Thevenot, (Relations Curieuses, part i), and the whole is since published in a splendid edition by the Pere Montfaucon, (Nova Collectio Patrum, Paris, 1707, 2 vols. in fol. tom. ii, p. 113-346). But the editor, a theologian, might blush at not discovering the Nestorian heresy of Cosmas, which has been detected by la Croze, (Christianisme des Indes, tom. i, p. 40-56).



levies on the economy of Anastasius, and that prudent emperor accumulated an immense treasure, while he delivered his people from the most odious or oppressive taxes. Their gratitude universally applauded the abolition of the *gold of affliction*, a personal tribute on the industry of the poor;<sup>1</sup> but more tolerable, as it should seem, in the form than in the substance, since the flourishing city of Edessa paid only one hundred and forty pounds of gold, which was collected in four years from ten thousand artificers.<sup>k</sup> Yet such was the parsimony which supported this liberal disposition, that, in a reign of twenty-seven years, ~~Anastasius saved, from his annual revenue,~~ the enormous sum of thirteen millions sterling, or three hundred and twenty thousand pounds of gold.<sup>l</sup> His example was neglected, and his treasure was abused, by the nephew of Justin. The riches of Justinian were speedily exhausted by alms and buildings, by ambitious wars, and ignominious treaties. His revenues were found in-

<sup>1</sup> Evagrius (l. iii, c. 39, 40) is minute and grateful, but angry with Zosimus for calumniating the great Constantine. In collecting all the bonds and records of the tax, the humanity of Anastasius was diligent and artful; fathers were sometimes compelled to prostitute their daughters, (Zosim. Hist. l. ii, c. 38, p. 165, 166; Lipsiæ, 1784). Timotheus of Gaza chose such an event for the subject of a tragedy, (Suidas, tom. iii, p. 475), which contributed to the abolition of the tax, (Cedrenus, p. 35),—an happy instance (if it be true) of the use of the theatre.

<sup>k</sup> See Josua Stylites, in the Bibliotheca Orientalis of Asseman, (tom. i, p. 268). This capitation-tax is slightly mentioned in the Chronicle of Edessa.

<sup>l</sup> Procopius (Anecd. c. 19) fixes this sum from the report of the treasurers themselves. Tiberius had *vicies ter milles*; but far different was his empire from that of Anastasius.

CHAP.

XL.

Avarice  
and pro-  
fusion of  
Justinian.

adequate to his expences. Every art was tried to extort from the people the gold and silver which he scattered with a lavish hand from Persia to France ;<sup>m</sup> his reign was marked by the vicissitudes, or rather by the combat, of rapaciousness and avarice, of splendour and poverty ; he lived with the reputation of hidden treasures,<sup>n</sup> and bequeathed to his successor the payment of his debts.\* Such a character has been justly accused by the voice of the people and of posterity : but public discontent is credulous ; private malice is bold ; and a lover of truth will peruse with a suspicious eye the instructive anecdotes of Procopius. The secret historian represents only the vices of Justinian, and those vices are darkened by his malevolent pencil. Ambiguous actions are imputed to the worst motives : error is confounded with guilt, accident with design, and laws with abuses : the partial injustice of a moment is dexterously applied as the general maxim of a reign of thirty-two years : the emperor alone is made responsible for the faults of his officers, the disorders of the times, and the corruption of his subjects ;

<sup>m</sup> Evagrius, (l. iv, c. 30), in the next generation, was moderate and well-informed ; and Zouaras, (l. 14, c. 61), in the xiith century, had read with care, and thought without prejudice : yet their colours are almost as black as those of the Anecdotes.

<sup>n</sup> Procopius (Anecd. c. 30) relates the idle conjectures of the times. The death of Justinian, says the secret historian, will expose his wealth or poverty.

\* See Corippus de Laudibus Justini Aug. l. ii, 260, &c. 384, &c.

“ Plurima sunt vivo nimium neglecta parenti,

“ Unde tot exhaustus contraxit debita fiscus.”

Centenaries of gold were brought by strong arms into the hippodrome.—

“ Debita genitoris persolvit, cauta recepit.”

and even the calamities of nature, plagues, earthquakes, and inundations, are imputed to the prince of the demons, who had mischievously assumed the form of Justinian.<sup>P</sup>

CHAP.  
XL.

After this precaution, I shall briefly relate the anecdotes of avarice and rapine, under the following heads.—I. Justinian was so profuse that he could not be liberal. The civil and military officers, when they were admitted into the service of the palace, obtained an humble rank and a moderate stipend; they ascended by seniority to a station of affluence and repose; the annual pensions, of which the most honourable class was abolished by Justinian, amounted to four hundred thousand pounds; and this domestic economy was deplored by the venal or indigent courtiers as the last outrage on the majesty of the empire. The posts, the salaries of physicians, and the nocturnal illuminations, were objects of more general concern; and the cities might justly complain, that he usurped the municipal revenues which had been appropriated to these useful institutions. Even the soldiers were injured; and such was the decay of military spirit, that they were injured with impunity. The emperor refused, at the return of each fifth year, the customary donative of five pieces of gold, reduced his veterans to beg their bread, and suffered unpaid armies to melt away in the wars of Italy and Persia. II. The humanity of his predecessors had always remitted, in some

Pernicious  
savings.

Remit-  
tances.

<sup>P</sup> The Anecdotes (c. 11-14, 18, 20-30) supply many facts and more complaints.

CHAP.

XL

auspicious circumstance of their reign, the arrears of the public tribute; and they dexterously assumed the merit of resigning those claims which it was impracticable to enforce. "Justinian, in the space of thirty-two years, has never granted a similar indulgence; and many of his subjects have renounced the possession of those lands whose value is insufficient to satisfy the demands of the treasury. To the cities which had suffered by hostile inroads, Anastasius promised a general exemption of seven years: the provinces of Justinian have been ravaged by the Persians and Arabs, the Huns and Slavonians; but his vain and ridiculous dispensation of a single year has been confined to those places which were actually taken by the enemy." Such is the language of the secret historian, who expressly denies that *any* indulgence was granted to Palestine after the revolt of the Samaritans; a false and odious charge, confuted by the authentic record, which attests a relief of thirteen centenaries of gold, (fifty-two thousand pounds), obtained for that desolate province by the intercession of St. Sabas.<sup>9</sup> III. Procopius has not condescended to explain the system of taxation, which fell like a hail-storm upon the land, like a devouring pestilence on its inhabitants; but we should become the accomplices of his malignity, if we imputed to Justinian alone the ancient though

<sup>9</sup> One to Scythopolis, capital of the second Palestine, and twelve for the rest of the province. Aleman. (p. 59) honestly produces this fact from a MS. life of St. Sabas, by his disciple Cyril, in the Vatican library, and since published by Cotelierius.

rigorous people, that a whole district should be condemned to sustain the partial loss of the persons or property of individuals. The *Anona*, or supply of corn for the use of the army and capital, was a grievous and arbitrary exaction, which exceeded, perhaps in a tenfold proportion, the ability of the farmer; and his distress was aggravated by the partial injustice of weights and measures, and the expence and labour of distant carriage. In a time of scarcity, an extraordinary requisition was made to the adjacent provinces of Thrace, Bithynia, and Phrygia; but the proprietors, after a wearisome journey and a perilous navigation, received so inadequate a compensation, that they would have chosen the alternative of delivering both the corn and price at the doors of their granaries. These precautions might indicate a tender solicitude for the welfare of the capital; yet Constantinople did not escape the rapacious despotism of Justinian. Till his reign, the straits of the Bosphorus and Hellespont were open to the freedom of trade, and nothing was prohibited except the exportation of arms for the service of the barbarians. At each of these gates of the city, a pre-tor was stationed, the minister of imperial avarice; heavy customs were imposed on the vessels and their merchandise; the oppression was retaliated on the helpless consumer: the poor were afflicted by the artificial scarcity, and exorbitant price of the market; and a people, accustomed to depend on the liberality of their prince, might sometimes complain of the deficiency of water

CHAP.

XL.

Taxes.

CHAP.

XL.

Monopolies.

and bread.\* The *aerial* tribute, without a name, a law, or a definite object, was an annual gift of one hundred and twenty thousand pounds, which the emperor accepted from his pretorian prefect; and the means of payment were abandoned to the discretion of that powerful magistrate. IV. Even such a tax was less intolerable than the privilege of monopolies, which checked the fair competition of industry, and, for the sake of a small and dishonest gain, imposed an arbitrary burden on the wants and luxury of the subject. "As soon (I transcribe the anecdotes) as the exclusive sale of silk was usurped by the imperial treasurer, a whole people, the manufacturers of Tyre and Berytus, was reduced to extreme misery, and either perished with hunger, or fled to the hostile dominions of Persia." A province might suffer by the decay of its manufactures; but in this example of silk, Procopius has partially overlooked the inestimable and lasting benefit which the empire received from the curiosity of Justinian. His addition of one-seventh to the ordinary price of copper-money may be interpreted with the same candour; and the alteration, which might be wise, appears to have been innocent; since he neither allayed the purity, nor enhanced the value, of the gold coin,† the legal

\* John Malala (tom. ii, p. 232) mentions the want of bread, and Zonaras (l. xiv, p. 63) the leaden pipes, which Justinian, or his servants, stole from the aqueducts.

† For an aureus, one-sixth of an ounce of gold, instead of 210, he gave no more than 180 folles, or ounces of copper. A disproportion of the mint, below the market price, must have soon produced a scarcity

measure of public and private payments. V. The ample justice required by the farmers of the revenue to accomplish their engagements, might be placed in an odious light, as if they had purchased from the emperor the lives and fortunes of their fellow-citizens. And a more direct sale of honours and offices was transacted in the palace, with the permission, or at least with the connivance, of Justinian and Theodora. The claims of merit, even those of favour, were disregarded, and it was almost reasonable to expect, that the bold adventurer, who had undertaken the trade of a magistrate, should find a rich compensation for infamy, labour, danger, the debts which he had contracted, and the heavy interest which he paid. A sense of the disgrace and mischief of this venal practice, at length awakened the slumbering virtue of Justinian; and he attempted, by the sanction of oaths<sup>t</sup> and penalties, to guard the integrity of his government: but at the end of a year of perjury, his rigorous edict was suspended, and corruption licentiously abused her triumph over the impotence of the laws. VI. The testament of Eulalius, count of the domestics, declared the emperor his sole heir, on condition, however,

CHAP.

XL.

Venality.

Testaments.

scarcity of small money. In England, twelve pence in copper would sell for no more than seven pence, (Smith's Inquiry into the Wealth of Nations, vol. i, p. 49). For Justinian's gold coin, see *Novellus*, (l. iv, c. 30).

<sup>t</sup> The oath is conceived in the most formidable words, (Novell. viii, tit. 3). The defaulters imprecate on themselves, quicquid habent telorum armamentaria cœli; the part of Judas, the leprosy of Giezi, the tremor of Cain, &c. besides all temporal pains.

CHAP.

XL.

that he should discharge his debts and legacies, allow to his three daughters a decent maintenance, and bestow each of them in marriage, with a portion of ten pounds of gold. But the splendid fortune of Eulalius had been consumed by fire; and the inventory of his goods did not exceed the trifling sum of five hundred and sixty-four pieces of gold. A similar instance, in Grecian history, admonished the emperor of the honourable part prescribed for his imitation. He checked the selfish murmurs of the treasury, applauded the confidence of his friend, discharged the legacies and debts, educated the three virgins under the eye of the empress Theodora, and doubled the marriage-portion which had satisfied the tenderness of their father.\* The humanity of a prince (for princes cannot be generous) is entitled to some praise; yet even in this act of virtue we may discover the inveterate custom of supplanting the legal or natural heirs, which Procopius imputes to the reign of Justinian. His charge is supported by eminent names and scandalous examples; neither widows nor orphans were spared; and the art of soliciting, or extorting, or supposing testaments, was beneficially practised by the agents of the palace. This base and mischievous tyranny invades the security of private life; and the monarch who has indulged an appetite for gain will soon be tempted to anticipate the moment of suc-

\* A similar or more generous act of friendship is related by Lucian of Eudamidas of Corinth, (in *Toxare*, c. 22, 28, tom. ii, p. 530), and the story has produced an ingenious, though feeble, comedy of Follenelle.

cession, to interpret wealth as an evidence of guilt, and to prevent from the claim of inheritance, to the power of confiscation. VII. Among the forms of rapine, a philosopher may be permitted to name the conversion of pagan or heretical riches to the use of the faithful; but in the time of Justinian this holy plunder was condemned by the sectaries alone, who became the victims of his orthodox avarice.<sup>x</sup>

CHAP.  
XL.

Dishonour might be ultimately reflected on the character of Justinian; but much of the guilt, and still more of the profit, was intercepted by the ministers, who were seldom promoted for their virtues, and not always selected for their talents.<sup>y</sup> The merits of Tribonian the questor will hereafter be weighed in the reformation of the Roman law; but the economy of the East was subordinate to the pretorian prefect, and Procopius has justified his anecdotes by the portrait which he exposes in his public history, of the notorious vices of John of Cappadocia.<sup>z</sup> His knowledge was not borrowed from the schools,<sup>a</sup> and his style was scarcely legible; but

The ministers of Justinian.

John of Cappadocia.

<sup>x</sup> John Malala, tom. ii, p. 101, 102, 103.

<sup>y</sup> One of these, Anatolius, perished in an earthquake—doubtless a judgment! The complaints and clamours of the people in Agathias (l. v, p. 146, 147) are almost an echo of the anecdote. The aliena pecunia reddenda of Corippus (l. ii, 391, &c.) is not very honourable to Justinian's memory.

<sup>z</sup> See the history and character of John of Cappadocia in Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 24, 25; l. ii, c. 30. Vandal l. i, c. 13. Anecdote. c. 2, 17, 22). The agreement of the history and anecdotes is a mortal wound to the reputation of the prefect.

<sup>a</sup> Οὐ γὰρ ἄλλο ὕδιν ἐς γραμματικὴς φωνῶν μαθεῖν ὅτι μὴ γραμματὰ, καὶ αὐτὰ κακὰ κακῶς γράφει—a forcible expression.

CHAP. he excelled in the powers of native genius, to  
XL. suggest the wisest counsels, and to find expedients  
in the most desperate situations. The corruption  
of his heart was equal to the vigour of his understanding. Although he was suspected of magic and pagan superstition, he appeared insensible to the fear of God or the reproaches of man; and his aspiring fortune was raised on the death of thousands, the poverty of millions, the ruin of cities, and the desolation of provinces. From the dawn of light to the moment of dinner, he assiduously laboured to enrich his master and himself at the expence of the Roman world; the remainder of the day was spent in sensual and obscene pleasures, and the silent hours of the night were interrupted by the perpetual dread of the justice of an assassin. His abilities, perhaps his vices, recommended him to the lasting friendship of Justinian: the emperor yielded with reluctance to the fury of the people; his victory was displayed by the immediate restoration of their enemy; and they felt above ten years, under his oppressive administration, that he was stimulated by revenge, rather than instructed by misfortune. Their murmurs served only to fortify the resolution of Justinian; but the prefect, in the insolence of favour, provoked the resentment of Theodora, disdained a power before which every knee was bent, and attempted to sow the seeds of discord between the emperor and his beloved consort. Even Theodora herself was constrained to dissemble, to wait a favourable moment, and by an artful conspiracy to render John of Cappadocia

the acceptance of his own destruction. At a time when Belisarius, unless he had been a hero, must have shown himself a rebel, his wife Antonina, who enjoyed the secret confidence of the empress, communicated his feigned discontent to Euphemia, the daughter of the prefect; the credulous virgin imparted to her father the dangerous project, and John, who might have known the value of oaths and promises, was tempted to accept a nocturnal, and almost treasonable, interview with the wife of Belisarius. An ambuscade of guards and eunuchs had been posted by the command of Theodora; they rushed with drawn swords to seize or punish the guilty minister: he was saved by the fidelity of his attendants; but instead of appealing to a gracious sovereign, who had privately warned him of his danger, he pusillanimously fled to the sanctuary of the church. The favourite of Justinian was sacrificed to conjugal tenderness or domestic tranquillity; the conversion of a prefect into a priest extinguished his ambitious hopes, but the friendship of the emperor alleviated his disgrace, and he retained, in the mild exile of Cyzicus, an ample portion of his riches. Such imperfect revenge could not satisfy the unrelenting hatred of Theodora; the murder of his old enemy, the bishop of Cyzicus, afforded a decent pretence; and John of Capadocia, whose actions had deserved a thousand deaths, was at last condemned for a crime of which he was innocent. A great minister, who had been invested with the honours of consul and

CHAP.

XL.

patrician, was ignominiously scourged like the vilest of malefactors; a tattered cloak was the sole remnant of his fortunes; he was transported in a bark to the place of his banishment at Antinopolis in Upper Egypt, and the prefect of the East begged his bread through the cities which had trembled at his name. During an exile of seven years, his life was protracted and threatened by the ingenious cruelty of Theodora; and when her death permitted the emperor to recall a servant whom he had abandoned with regret, the ambition of John of Cappadocia was reduced to the humble duties of the sacerdotal profession. His successors convinced the subjects of Justinian, that the arts of oppression might still be improved by experience and industry; the frauds of a Syrian banker were introduced into the administration of the finances; and the example of the prefect was diligently copied by the questor, the public and private treasurer, the governors of provinces, and the principal magistrates of the eastern empire.<sup>b</sup>

His edifices and architects.

V. The *edifices* of Justinian were cemented with the blood and treasure of his people; but those stately structures appeared to announce the prosperity of the empire, and actually displayed the skill of their architects. Both the theory and

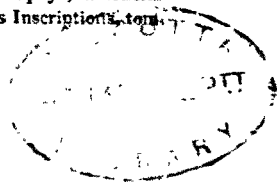
<sup>b</sup> The chronology of Procopius is loose and obscure; but with the aid of Pagi, I can discern that John was appointed pretorian prefect of the East in the year 530; that he was removed in January 532—restored before June 533—banished in 541—and recalled between June 548 and April 1, 549. Aleman. (p. 96, 97) gives the list of his ten successors—a rapid series in a part of a single reign.

practice of the arts which depend on mathematical science and mechanical power, were cultivated under the patronage of the emperors; the fame of Archimedes was rivalled by Proclus and Anthemius; and if their *miracles* had been related by intelligent spectators, they might now enlarge the speculations, instead of exciting the distrust, of philosophers. A tradition has prevailed, that the Roman fleet was reduced to ashes in the port of Syracuse by the burning-glasses of Archimedes; and it is asserted that a similar expedient was employed by Proclus to destroy the Gothic vessels in the harbour of Constantinople. ~~Proclus was the first who employed burning-glasses against the bold enterprise of Vitalian.~~ A machine was fixed on the walls of the city, consisting of an hexagon mirror of polished brass, with many smaller and moveable polygons to receive and reflect the rays of the meridian sun; and a consuming flame was darted, to the distance, perhaps, of two hundred feet.\* The truth

\* This conflagration is hinted by Lucian. (in Hippias, c. 2), and Galen, (l. iii, de temperamentis, tom. i, p. 81, edit Basil), in the second century. A thousand years afterwards, it is positively affirmed by Zonaras, (l. ix, p. 424), on the faith of Dion Cassius, by Tzetzes, (Chiliad 5, 119, &c.), Eustathius, (ad Iliad E, p. 338), and the scholiast of Lucian. See Fabricius, (Bibliot. Græc. l. iii, c. 22; tom. ii, p. 551; 552), to whom I am more or less indebted for several of these quotations.

<sup>d</sup> Zonaras (l. xiv, p. 55) affirms the fact, without quoting any evidence.

• Tzetzes describes the artifice of these burning-glasses, which he had read, perhaps with no learned eyes, in a mathematical treatise of Anthemius. That treatise, *επιστολή περὶ πυρρῶν ὀφθαλμῶν*, has been lately published, translated, and illustrated, by M. Dupuys, a scholar and a mathematician, (Mémoires de l'Académie des Inscriptions, tom. xliii, p. 392-451).



CHAP.

XL.

of these two extraordinary facts is invalidated by the silence of the most authentic historians; and the use of burning-glasses was never adopted in the attack or defence of places.<sup>f</sup> Yet the admirable experiments of a French philosopher<sup>g</sup> have demonstrated the possibility of such a mirror; and, since it is possible, I am more disposed to attribute the art to the greatest mathematicians of antiquity, than to give the merit of the fiction to the idle fancy of a monk or a copist. According to another story, Proclus applied sulphur to the destruction of the Gothic fleet;<sup>h</sup> in a modern imagination, the name of sulphur is instantly connected with the suspicion of gun-powder, and that suspicion is propagated by the secret arts of his disciple Anthemius.<sup>i</sup> A citizen of Tralles in Asia had five sons, who were all distinguished in their respective professions by merit and success. Olympius excelled in the knowledge and practice of the Roman jurisprudence. Dioscorus and Alexander became learned physicians; but the skill of the former was exercised

<sup>f</sup> In the siege of Syracuse, by the silence of Polybius, Plutarch, Livy; in the siege of Constantinople, by that of Marcellinus, and all the contemporaries of the sixth century.

<sup>g</sup> Without any previous knowledge of Tzetzes or Anthemius, the immortal Buffon imagined and executed a set of burning-glasses, with which he could flame planks at the distance of 200 feet, (*Supplement à l'Hist. Naturelle*, tom. i., p. 389-483, quarto edition). What miracles would not his genius have performed for the public service, with royal expence, and in the strong sun of Constantinople or Syracuse?

<sup>h</sup> John Malala (tom. ii, p. 120-124) relates the fact: but he seems to confound the names or persons of Proclus and Marinus.

<sup>i</sup> Agathias, l. v, p. 149-152. The merit of Anthemius as an architect is loudly praised by Procopius, (*de Edif.* l. i, c. 1), and Paulus Silentarius, (part i., 134, &c.).

for the benefit of his fellow-citizens, while his more ambitious brother acquired wealth and reputation at Rome. The fame of Metrodorus the grammarian, and of Anthemius the mathematician and architect, reached the ears of the emperor Justinian, who invited them to Constantinople; and while the one instructed the rising generation in the schools of eloquence, the other filled the capital and provinces with more lasting monuments of his art. In a trifling dispute relative to the walls or windows of their contiguous houses, he had been vanquished by the eloquence of his neighbour Zeno; but the orator was defeated in his turn by the master of mechanics, whose malicious, though harmless, stratagems, are darkly represented by the ignorance of Agathias. In a lower room, Anthemius arranged several vessels, or cauldrons of water; each of them covered by the wide bottom of a leathern tube, which rose to a narrow top, and was artificially conveyed among the joists and rafters of the adjacent building. A fire was kindled beneath the cauldron; the steam of the boiling water ascended through the tubes; the house was shaken by the efforts of imprisoned air, and its trembling inhabitants might wonder that the city was unconscious of the earthquake which they had felt. At another time, the friends of Zeno, as they sat at table, were dazzled by the intolerable light which flashed in their eyes from the reflecting mirrors of Anthemius; they were astonished by the noise which he produced from a collision of certain minute and sonorous particles; and the orator de-

CHAP.

XL

clared, in tragic style, to the senate, that a mere mortal must yield to the power of an antagonist, who shook the earth with the trident of Neptune, and imitated the thunder and lightning of Jove himself. The genius of Anthemius and his colleague Isidore the Milesian, was excited and employed by a prince, whose taste for architecture had degenerated into a mischievous and costly passion. His favourite architects submitted their designs and difficulties to Justinian, and discreetly confessed how much their laborious meditations were surpassed by the intuitive knowledge or celestial inspiration of an emperor, whose views were always directed to the benefit of his people, the glory of his reign, and the salvation of his soul.<sup>\*</sup>

Founda-  
tion of the  
church of  
St. Sophia.

The principal church, which was dedicated by the founder of Constantinople to St. Sophia, or the eternal wisdom, had been twice destroyed by fire; after the exile of John Chrysostom, and during the *Nika* of the blue and green factions. No sooner did the tumult subside, than the Christian populace deplored their sacrilegious rashness; but they might have rejoiced in the calamity, had they foreseen the glory of the new temple, which at the end of forty days was strenuously undertaken by the piety of Justinian.<sup>1</sup> The ruins were

<sup>\*</sup> See Procopius, (de Edificiis, l. i, c. 1, 2; l. ii, c. 3). He relates a coincidence of dreams which supposes some fraud in Justinian or his architect. They both saw, in a vision, the same plan for stopping an inundation at Dara. A stone-quarry near Jerusalem was revealed to the emperor, (l. v, c. 6): an angel was tricked into the perpetual custody of St. Sophia, (Anonym. de Antiq. C. P. l. iv, p. 70).

<sup>1</sup> Among the crowd of ancients and moderns who have celebrated the edifice of St. Sophia, I shall distinguish and follow,—1. Four original

cleared away, a more spacious plan was described, and as it required the consent of some proprietors of ground, they obtained the most exorbitant terms from the eager desires and timorous conscience of the monarch. Anthemius formed the design, and his genius directed the hands of ten thousand workmen, whose payment in pieces of fine silver was never delayed beyond the evening. The emperor himself, clad in a linen tunic, surveyed each day their rapid progress, and encouraged their diligence by his familiarity, his zeal, and his rewards. The new cathedral of St. Sophia was consecrated by the patriarch, five years eleven months and ten days from the first foundation; and in the midst of the solemn festival, Justinian exclaimed with devout vanity, "Glory be to God, " who hath thought me worthy to accomplish so " great a work; I have vanquished thee, O Solo- " mon!" But the pride of the Roman Solomon,

original spectators and historians: 1. Procopius, (*de Edific. l. i, c. 1*); Agathias, (*l. v, p. 152, 153*); Paul Silentarius, (in a poem of 1026 hexameters, *ad calcem Annæ Comnenæ, Alexiad.*), and Evagrius, (*l. iv, c. 31*). 2. Two legendary Greeks of a later period: George Codinus, (*de Origin. C. P. p. 64-74*), and the anonymous writer of Banduri, (*Imp. Orient. tom. i, l. iv, p. 65-80*). 3. The great Byzantine antiquarian, Ducange, (*Comment. ad Paul Silentiar. p. 525-598*; and *C. P. Christ. l. iii, p. 5-78*). 4. Two French travellers—the one, Peter Gyllius, (*de Topograph. C. P. l. ii, c. 3, 4*), in the xvth; the other, Grelot, (*Voyage de C. P. p. 95-164*; Paris, 1680, in 4to); he has given plans, prospects, and inside-views of St. Sophia; and his plans, though on a smaller scale, appear more correct than those of Ducange. I have adopted and reduced the measures of Grelot: but as no Christian can now ascend the dome, the height is borrowed from Evagrius, compared with Gyllius, Greaves, and the Oriental Geographer.

2. Solomon's temple was surrounded with courts, porticoes, &c.; but the proper structure of the house of God was no more (if we take the

CHAP.

XL.

~~~~~

Descrip-  
tion.

before twenty years had elapsed, was humbled by an earthquake, which overthrew the eastern part of the dome. Its splendour was again restored by the perseverance of the same prince; and in the thirty-sixth year of his reign, Justinian celebrated the second dedication of a temple, which remains, after twelve centuries, a stately monument of his fame. The architecture of St. Sophia, which is now converted into the principal mosch, has been imitated by the Turkish sultans, and that venerable pile continues to excite the fond admiration of the Greeks, and the more rational curiosity of European travellers. The eye of the spectator is disappointed by an irregular prospect of half domes and shelving roofs: the western front, the principal approach, is destitute of simplicity and magnificence: and the scale of dimensions has been much surpassed by several of the Latin cathedrals. But the architect who first erected an *aerial* cupola, is entitled to the praise of bold design and skilful execution. The dome of St. Sophia, illuminated by four-and-twenty windows, is formed with so small a curve, that the depth is equal only to one-sixth of its diameter; the measure of that diameter is one hundred and fifteen feet, and the lofty centre, where a crescent has supplanted the cross, rises to the perpendicular height of one hundred and eighty feet above the pavement. The circle which encompasses the dome, lightly reposes on four strong

the Egyptian or Hebrew cubit at 22 inches) than 55 feet in height, 36½ in breadth, and 110 in length—a small parish-church, says Priedaux, (*Connection*, vol. i, p. 144, folio); but few sanctuaries could be valued at four or five millions sterling!

arches, and their weight is firmly supported by four massy piles, whose strength is assisted on the northern and southern sides by four columns of Egyptian granite. A Greek cross, inscribed in a quadrangle, represents the form of the edifice; the exact breadth is two hundred and forty-three feet, and two hundred and sixty-nine may be assigned for the extreme length from the sanctuary in the east to the nine western doors which open into the vestibule, and from thence into the *narthex*, or exterior portico. That portico was the humble station of the penitents. The nave or body of the church was filled by the congregation of the faithful; but the two sexes were prudently distinguished, and the upper and lower galleries were allotted for the more private devotion of the women. Beyond the northern and southern piles, a balustrade, terminated on either side by the thrones of the emperor and the patriarch, divided the nave from the choir: and the space, as far as the steps of the altar, was occupied by the clergy and singers. The altar itself, a name which insensibly became familiar to Christian ears, was placed in the eastern recess, artificially built in the form of a demi-cylinder; and this sanctuary communicated by several doors with the sacristy, the vestry, the baptistery, and the contiguous buildings, subservient either to the pomp of worship, or the private use of the ecclesiastical ministers. The memory of past calamities inspired Justinian with a wise resolution, that no wood, except for the doors, should be admitted into the new edifice; and the choice of the ma-

CHAP.

XL.

terials was applied to the strength, the lightness, or the splendour of the respective parts. The solid piles which sustained the cupola were composed of huge blocks of freestone, hewn into squares and triangles, fortified by circles of iron, and firmly cemented by the infusion of lead and quick lime: but the weight of the cupola was diminished by the levity of its substance, which consists either of pumice stone that floats in the water, or of bricks from the isle of Rhodes, five times less ponderous than the ordinary sort. The whole frame of the edifice was constructed of brick; but those base materials were concealed by a crust of marble; and the inside of St. Sophia, the cupola, the two larger, and the six smaller, semi-domes, the walls, the hundred columns, and the pavement, delight even the eyes of barbarians, with a rich and variegated picture. A poet,<sup>n</sup> who beheld the primitive lustre of St. Sophia, enumerates the colours, the shades, and the spots of ten or twelve marbles, jaspers, and porphyries, which nature had profusely diversified, and which were blended and contrasted as it were by a skilful painter. The tri-

Marbles.

<sup>n</sup> Paul Silentarius, in dark and poetic language, describes the various stones and marbles that were employed in the edifice of St. Sophia, (P. ii, p. 129, 133, &c. &c.): 1. The *Carystian*—pale, with iron veins. 2. The *Phrygian*—of two sorts, both of a rosy hue; the one with a white shade, the other purple, with silver flowers. 3. The *Porphyry of Egypt*—with small stars. 4. The *green marble of Laconia*. 5. The *Carian*—from Mount Iassus, with oblique veins, white and red. 6. The *Lydian*—pale, with a red flower. 7. The *African or Mauritanian*—of a gold or saffron hue. 8. The *Celtic*—black, with white veins. 9. The *Bothporic*—white, with black edges. Besides the *Proconnesian*, which formed the pavement; the *Thessalian*, *Molosian*, &c. which are less distinctly painted.

umph of Christ was adorned with the last spoils of paganism; but the greater part of these costly stones was extracted from the quarries of Asia Minor, the isles and continent of Greece, Egypt, Africa, and Gaul. Eight columns of porphyry, which Aurelian had placed in the temple of the sun, were offered by the piety of a Roman matron; eight others of green marble were presented by the ambitious zeal of the magistrates of Ephesus: both are admirable by their size and beauty, but every order of architecture disclaims their fantastic capitals. A variety of ornaments and figures was curiously expressed in mosaic; and the images of Christ, of the Virgin, of saints, and of angels, which have been defaced by Turkish fanaticism, were dangerously exposed to the superstition of the Greeks. According to the sanctity of each object, the precious metals were distributed in thin leaves or in solid masses. The balustrade of the choir, the capitals of the pillars, the ornaments of the doors and galleries, were of gilt bronze; the spectator was dazzled by the glittering aspect of the cupola; the sanctuary contained forty thousand pound weight of silver; and the holy vases and vestments of the altar were of the purest gold, enriched with inestimable gems. Before the structure of the church had risen two cubits above the ground, forty-five thousand two hundred pounds were already consumed; and the whole expence amounted to three hundred and twenty thousand: each reader, according to the measure of his belief, may estimate their value either in gold or silver;

CHAP.

XL.

but the sum of one million sterling is the result of the lowest computation. A magnificent temple is a laudable monument of national taste and religion, and the enthusiast who entered the dome of St. Sophia, might be tempted to suppose that it was the residence, or even the workmanship, of the Deity. Yet how dull is the artifice, how insignificant is the labour, if it be compared with the formation of the vilest insect that crawls upon the surface of the temple.

Churches  
and  
palaces.

So minute a description of an edifice which time has respected, may attest the truth, and excuse the relation of the innumerable works, both in the capital and provinces, which Justinian constructed on a smaller scale and less durable foundations.\* In Constantinople alone, and the adjacent suburbs, he dedicated twenty-five churches to the honour of Christ, the Virgin, and the saints: most of these churches were decorated with marble and gold; and their various situation was skilfully chosen in a populous square, or a pleasant grove; on the margin of the sea-shore, or on some lofty eminence which overlooked the continents of Europe and Asia. The church of the Holy Apostles at Constantinople, and that of St. John at Ephesus, appear to have been framed on the same model: their domes aspired to imitate the cupolas of St. Sophia; but the altar was more judiciously placed under the

\* These six books of the Edifices of Procopius are thus distributed.—The *first* is confined to Constantinople; the *second* includes Mesopotamia and Syria; the *third*, Armenia and the Euxine; the *fourth*, Europe; the *fifth*, Asia Minor and Palestine; the *sixth*, Egypt and Africa. Italy is forgot by the emperor or the historian, who published this work of adulation before the date (A. D. 555) of its final conquest. ●

centre of the dome, at the junction of four stately porticoes; which more accurately expressed the figure of the Greek cross. The Virgin of Jerusalem might exult in the temple erected by her imperial votary on a most ungrateful spot, which afforded neither ground nor materials to the architect. A level was formed, by raising part of a deep valley to the height of the mountain. The stones of a neighbouring quarry were hewn into regular forms; each block was fixed on a peculiar carriage, drawn by forty of the strongest oxen, and the roads were widened for the passage of such enormous weights. Lebanon furnished no timber for the timbers of the church; and the seasonable discovery of a vein of red marble, supplied its beautiful columns, two of which, the supporters of the exterior portico, were esteemed the largest in the world. The pious munificence of the emperor was diffused over the Holy Land; and if reason should condemn the monasteries of both sexes which were built or restored by Justinian, yet charity must applaud the wells which he sunk, and the hospitals which he founded, for the relief of the weary pilgrims. The schismatical temper of Egypt was ill entitled to the royal bounty; but in Syria and Africa some remedies were applied to the disasters of wars and earthquakes, and both Carthage and Antioch, emerging from their ruins, might revere the name of their gracious benefactor.<sup>p</sup> Almost every saint in the calendar acquired the honours of a temple; almost

<sup>p</sup> Justinian once gave forty-five centenaries of gold (180,000*l.*) for the repairs of Antioch after the earthquake, (John Malala, tom. ii, p. 146-149).

CHAP. every city of the empire obtained the solid ad-  
 XL. vantages of bridges, hospitals, and aqueducts;  
 ~~~~~ but the severe liberality of the monarch disdained  
 to indulge his subjects in the popular luxury  
 of baths and theatres. While Justinian laboured  
 for the public service, he was not unmindful of  
 his own dignity and ease. The Byzantine palace,  
 which had been damaged by the conflagration,  
 was restored with new magnificence; and some  
 notion may be conceived of the whole edifice, by  
 the vestibule or hall, which, from the doors per-  
 haps, or the roof, was surnamed *chalice*, or the bra-  
 zen. The dome of a spacious quadrangle was sup-  
 ported by massy pillars; the pavement and walls  
 were incrustated with many-coloured marbles—  
 the emerald green of Lacedæmon, the fiery red, and the  
 white Phrygian stone intersected with veins of a  
 sea-green hue: the mosaic paintings of the dome  
 and sides represented the glories of the African and  
 Italian triumphs. On the Asiatic shore of the Pro-  
 pontis, at a small distance to the east of Chalce-  
 don, the costly palace and gardens of Heræum<sup>4</sup>  
 were prepared for the summer residence of Justi-  
 nian, and more especially of Theodora. The poets  
 of the age have celebrated the rare alliance of  
 nature and art, the harmony of the nymphs of the  
 groves, the fountains, and the waves; yet the crowd  
 of attendants who followed the court complained  
 of their inconvenient lodgings,<sup>5</sup> and the nymphs

<sup>4</sup> For the Heræum, the palace of Theodora, see Gyllius, (*de Bosphoro Thracico*, l. iii, c. xi); Aleman. (*Not. ad Anecd.* p. 80, 81, who quotes several epigrams of the Anthology), and Ducange, (*C. P. Christ.* l. iv, c. 13, p. 175, 176).

<sup>5</sup> Compare, in the Edifices, (l. i, c. 11), and in the Anecdotes, (c. 8, 16), the different styles of adulation and malevolence: stript of the paint, or cleansed from the dirt, the object appears to be the same.

were too often alarmed by the famous Porphyrio, a whale of ten cubits in breadth, and thirty in length, who was stranded at the mouth of the river Sangaris, after he had infested more than half a century the seas of Constantinople.\*

The fortifications of Europe and Asia were multiplied by Justinian; but the repetition of those timid and fruitless precautions exposes to a philosophic eye the debility of the empire.† From Belgrade to the Euxine, from the conflux of the Save to the mouth of the Danube, a chain of above fourscore fortified places was extended along the banks of the great river. Single watch-towers were changed into spacious citadels, vacant walls, which the engineers contracted or enlarged according to the nature of the ground, were filled with colonies or garrisons; a strong fortress defended the ruins of Trajan's bridge,‡ and several military stations affected to spread beyond the Da-

Fortifica-  
tions of  
Europe.

\* Procopius, l. viii, 29; most probably a stranger and wanderer, as the Mediterranean does not breed whales. *Balæna quoque in nostra maria penetrant*, (Plin. Hist. Natur. ix, 2). Between the polar circle and the tropic, the cetaceous animals of the ocean grow to the length of 50, 80, or 100 feet, (Hist. des Voyages, tom. xv, p. 289. Pennant's British Zoology, vol. iii, p. 35).

† Montesquieu observes (tom. iii, p. 503, *Considerations sur la Grandeur et la Decadence des Romains*, c. xx) that Justinian's empire was like France in the time of the Norman inroads—never so weak as when every village was fortified.

‡ Procopius affirms, (l. iv, c. 6), that the Danube was stopped by the ruins of the bridge. Had Apollodorus, the architect, left a description of his own work, the fabulous wonders of Dion Cassius (l. lxxviii, p. 1129) would have been corrected by the genuine picture. Trajan's bridge consisted of twenty or twenty-two stone piles with wooden arches; the river is shallow, the current gentle, and the whole interval no more than 443 (Reimar ad Dion, from Marsigh) or 515 *toises*, (d'Anville *Geographie Ancienne*, tom. i, p. 305).

CHAP.  
XL.

nube the pride of the Roman name. But that name was divested of its terrors; the barbarians, in their annual inroads, passed, and contemptuously repassed, before these useless bulwarks; and the inhabitants of the frontier, instead of reposing under the shadow of the general defence, were compelled to guard, with incessant vigilance, their separate habitations. The solitude of ancient cities was replenished; the new foundations of Justinian acquired, perhaps too hastily, the epithets of impregnable and populous; and the auspicious place of his own nativity attracted the grateful reverence of the vainest of princes. Under the name of *Justiniana prima*, the obscure village of Tauresium became the seat of an archbishop and a prefect, whose jurisdiction extended over seven warlike provinces of Illyricum,<sup>2</sup> and the corrupt appellation of *Giustendil* still indicates, about twenty miles to the south of Sophia, the residence of a Turkish sanjak.<sup>3</sup> For the use of the emperor's countrymen, a cathedral, a palace, and an aqueduct, were speedily constructed; the public and private edifices were adapted to the greatness of a royal city; and the strength of the walls resisted, during the lifetime of Justinian, the unskilful assaults of the

<sup>2</sup> Of the two *Dacias*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, the second *Mæsia*, and the second *Macedonia*. See Justinian, (Novell. xi), who speaks of his castles beyond the Danube, and of *homines semper bellicis sudoribus inhaerentes*.

<sup>3</sup> See d'Anville, (*Memoires de l'Academie*, &c. tom. xxxi. p. 289, 290); Rycaut, (*Present State of the Turkish Empire*, p. 97, 316); Marsigli, (*Stato Militare del Imperio Ottomano*, p. 130). The sanjak of Giustendil is one of the twenty under the beglerbeg of Rumelia, and his district maintains 48 *caims* and 588 *timariots*.

Huns and Sclavonians. Their progress was sometimes retarded, and their hopes of rapine were disappointed, by the innumerable castles, which, in the provinces of Dacia, Epirus, Thessaly, Macedonia, and Thrace, appeared to cover the whole face of the country. Six hundred of these forts were built or repaired by the emperor: but it seems reasonable to believe, that the far greater part consisted only of a stone or brick tower, in the midst of a square or circular area, which was surrounded by a wall and ditch, and afforded in a moment of danger some protection to the peasants and cattle of the neighbouring villages.\* Yet these military works, which exhausted the public treasure, could not remove the just apprehensions of Justinian and his European subjects. The warm baths of Anchialus in Thrace were rendered as safe as they were salutary; but the rich pastures of Thessalonica were foraged by the Scythian cavarly; the delicious vale of Tempe, three hundred miles from the Dunube, was continually alarmed by the sound of war;<sup>a</sup> and no unfortified spot, however distant or solitary, could securely enjoy the blessings of peace. The streights of Thermopylæ, which seemed to protect, but which had so often betrayed, the safety of Greece, were diligently strength-

\* These fortifications may be compared to the castles in Mingrelia, (Chardin, *Voyages en Perse*, tom. i, p. 60, 131)—a natural picture.

<sup>a</sup> The valley of Tempe is situate along the river Peneus, between the hills of Ossa and Olympus: it is only five miles long, and in some places no more than 120 feet in breadth. Its verdant beauties are elegantly described by Pliny, (*Hist. Natur.* l. iv, 15), and more diffusely by Ælian, (*Hist. Var.* l. iii, c. i).

CHAP.  
XL.

ened by the labours of Justinian. From the edge of the sea-shore, through the forest and valleys, and as far as the summit of the Thessalian mountains, a strong wall was continued, which occupied every practicable entrance. Instead of an hasty crowd of peasants, a garrison of two thousand soldiers was stationed along the rampart; granaries of corn, and reservoirs of water, were provided for their use; and by a precaution that inspired the cowardice which it foresaw, convenient fortresses were erected for their retreat. The walls of Corinth, overthrown by an earthquake, and the mouldering bulwarks of Athens and Plataea, were carefully restored; the barbarians were discouraged by the prospect of successive and painful sieges; and the naked cities of Peloponnesus were covered by the fortifications of the isthmus of Corinth. At the extremity of Europe, another peninsula, the Thracian Chersonesus, runs three days journey into the sea, to form, with the adjacent shores of Asia, the straits of the Hellespont. The intervals between eleven populous towns were filled by lofty woods, fair pastures, and arable lands: and the isthmus, or thirty-seven stadia or furlongs, had been fortified by a Spartan general nine hundred years before the reign of Justinian.<sup>b</sup> In an age of freedom and valour, the slightest rampart may prevent a surprise; and Procopius appears insensible of the superiority of ancient times, while he

<sup>b</sup> Xenophon Hellenic. l. iii, c. 2. After a long and tedious conversation with the Byzantine declaimers, how refreshing is the truth, the simplicity, the elegance, of an Attic writer!

praises the solid construction and double parapet of a wall, whose long arms stretched on either side into the sea; but whose strength was deemed insufficient to guard the Chersonesus, if each city, and particularly Galipoli and Sestus, had not been secured by their peculiar fortifications. The long wall, as it was emphatically styled, was a work as disgraceful in the object, as it was respectable in the execution. The riches of a capital diffuse themselves over the neighbouring country, and the territory of Constantinople, a paradise of nature, was adorned with the luxurious gardens and villas of the senators and opulent citizens. But their wealth served only to attract the bold and rapacious barbarians; the noblest of the Romans, in the bosom of peaceful indolence, were led away into Scythian captivity, and their sovereign might view, from his palace, the hostile flames which were insolently spread to the gates of the imperial city. At the distance only of forty miles, Anastasius was constrained to establish a last frontier; his long wall, of sixty miles from the Propontis to the Euxine, proclaimed the impotence of his arms; and as the danger became more imminent, new fortifications were added by the indefatigable prudence of Justinian.<sup>c</sup>

Asia Minor, after the submission of the Isaurians,<sup>d</sup> remained without enemies and without

Security of Asia, after the conquest of Isauria.

<sup>c</sup> See the long wall in Evagrius, (l. iv, c. 38). This whole article is drawn from the fourth book of the Edifices, except Anchialus, (l. iii, c. 7).

<sup>d</sup> Turn back to vol. i, p. 454. In the course of this history, I have sometimes mentioned, and much oftener slighted, the hasty inroad of the Isaurians, which were not attended with any consequences.

CHAP.

XL

fortifications. Those bold savages, who had disdained to be the subjects of Galienus, persisted two hundred and thirty years in a life of independence and rapine. The most successful princes respected the strength of the mountains and the despair of the natives; their fierce spirit was sometimes soothed with gifts, and sometimes restrained by terror; and a military count, with three legions, fixed his permanent and ignominious station in the heart of the Roman provinces.\* But no sooner was the vigilance of power relaxed or diverted, than the light-armed squadrons descended from the hills, and invaded the peaceful plenty of Asia. Although the Isaurians were not remarkable for stature or bravery, want rendered them bold, and experience made them skilful in the exercise of predatory war. They advanced with secrecy and speed to the attack of villages and defenceless towns; their flying parties have sometimes touched the Hellespont, the Euxine, and the gates of Tarsus, Antiöch, or Damascus;† and the spoil was lodged in their inaccessible mountains, before the Roman troops had received their orders, or the distant province had computed its loss. The guilt of rebellion and robbery excluded them from the rights of national enemies; and the magistrates were instructed by an edict, that the trial or punishment of an Isaurian, even on the festival of Easter, was

\* Trebellius Pollio in Hist. August. p. 107, who lived under Diocletian, or Constantine. See likewise Pancirolus ad Not. Imp. Orient. c. 115, 141. See Cod. Theodos. l. ix. tit. 35, leg. 37, with a copious collective Annotation of Godefroy, tom. iii, p. 256, 257.

† See the full and wide extent of their inroads in Philostorgius, Hist. Eccles. l. xi, c. 8), with Godefroy's learned Dissertation.

a meritorious act of justice and piety.<sup>6</sup> If the captives were condemned to domestic slavery, they maintained, with their sword or dagger, the private quarrel of their masters; and it was found expedient for the public tranquillity, to prohibit the service of such dangerous retainers. When their countryman Tarcalsæus or Zeno ascended the throne, he invited a faithful and formidable band of Isaurians, who insulted the court and city, and were rewarded by an annual tribute of five thousand pounds of gold. But the hopes of fortune depopulated the mountains, luxury enervated the hardness of their minds and bodies, and in proportion as they mixed with mankind, they became less qualified for the enjoyment of poor and solitary freedom. After the death of Zeno, his successor Anastasius suppressed their pensions, exposed their persons to the revenge of the people, banished them from Constantinople, and prepared to sustain a war, which left only the alternative of victory or servitude. A brother of the last emperor usurped the title of Augustus; his cause was powerfully supported by the arms, the treasures, and the magazines, collected by Zeno; and the native Isaurians must have formed the smallest portion of the hundred and fifty thousand barbarians under his standard, which was sanctified, for the first time, by the presence of a fighting bishop. Their disorderly numbers were vanquished in the plains of Phrygia by the va-

<sup>6</sup> Cod. Justinian. l. ix, tit. 12, leg. 10. The punishments are severe—a fine of an hundred pounds of gold, degradation, and even death. The public peace might afford a pretence, but Zeno was desirous of monopolizing the valour and service of the Isaurians.

CHAP.  
XL.  
A. D.  
492-498.

lour and discipline of the Goths; but a war of six years almost exhausted the courage of the emperor.<sup>a</sup> The Isaurians retired to their mountains; their fortresses were successively besieged and ruined; their communication with the sea was intercepted; the bravest of their leaders died in arms; the surviving chiefs, before their execution, were dragged in chains through the hippodrome; a colony of their youth was transplanted into Thrace, and the remnant of the people submitted to the Roman government. Yet some generations elapsed before their minds were reduced to the level of slavery. The populous villages of mount Taurus were filled with horsemen and archers; they resisted the imposition of tributes, but they recruited the armies of Justinian; and his civil magistrates, the proconsul of Cappadocia, the count of Isauria, and the pretors of Lycaonia and Pisidia, were invested with military power to restrain the licentious practice of rapes and assassinations.<sup>i</sup>

Fortifications of the empire,

If we extend our view from the tropic to the mouth of the Tanais, we may observe on one hand,

<sup>a</sup> The Isaurian war and the triumph of Anastasius are briefly and darkly represented by John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 106, 107); Evagrius, (l. iii, c. 35); Theophanes, (p. 118-120), and the Chronicle of Marcellinus.

<sup>i</sup> *Fortes ea regio* (says Justinian) *viros habet, nec in ullo differt ab Isauria*, though Procopius (*Persic.* l. i, c. 18) marks an essential difference between their military character; yet in former times the Lycaonians and Pisidians had defended their liberty against the great king, (Xenophon. *Anabasis*, l. iii, c. 2). Justinian introduces some false and ridiculous erudition of the ancient empire of the Pisidians, and of Lycaon, who, after visiting Rome, (long before Æneas), gave a name and people to Lycaonia, (*Novell.* 24, 25, 27, 30).

CHAP.

XL.

from the  
Euxine to  
the Persian  
frontier.

the precautions of Justinian to curb the savages of Æthiopia,<sup>k</sup> and on the other, the long walls which he constructed in Crimæa for the protection of his friendly Goths, a colony of three thousand shepherds and warriors.<sup>l</sup> From that peninsula to Trebizond, the eastern curve of the Euxine was secured by forts, by alliance, or by religion: and the possession of *Lazica*, the Colchos of ancient, the Mingrelia of modern, geography, soon became the object of an important war. Trebizond, in after-times the seat of a romantic empire, was indebted to the liberality of Justinian for a church, an aqueduct, and a castle, whose ditches are hewn in the solid rock. From that maritime city, a frontier-line of five hundred miles may be drawn to the fortress of Circesium, the last Roman station on the Euphrates.<sup>m</sup> Above Trebizond immediately, and five days journey to the south, the country rises into dark forests and craggy mountains, as savage, though not so lofty, as the Alps and the Pyrenees.

<sup>k</sup> See Procopius, *Persic.* l. i, c. 19. The altar of national concord, of annual sacrifice and oaths, which Diocletian had erected in the isle of Elephantine, was demolished by Justinian with less policy than zeal.

<sup>l</sup> Procopius de *Edificiis*, l. iii, c. 7. *Hist.* l. viii, c. 3, 4. These unambitious Goths had refused to follow the standard of Theodoric. As late as the xvth and xvth century, the name and nation might be discovered between Caffa and the straits of Azoph, (d'Anville *Memoires de l'Academie*, tom. xxx, p. 240). They well deserved the curiosity of Busbequius, (p. 321-326); but seem to have vanished in the more recent account of the *Missions du Levant*, (tom. i), Tott, Peyssonel, &c.

<sup>m</sup> For the geography and architecture of this Armenian border, see the *Persian Wars and Edifices* (l. ii, c. 4-7; l. iii, c. 2-5) of Procopius.

CHAP. In this rigorous climate,<sup>a</sup> where the snows seldom  
 XL. melt, the fruits are tardy and tasteless; even  
 honey is poisonous; the most industrious tillage  
 would be confined to some pleasant valleys; and  
 the pastoral tribes obtained a scanty sustenance  
 from the flesh and milk of their cattle. The  
*Chalybians*<sup>o</sup> derived their name and temper  
 from the iron quality of the soil; and, since  
 the days of Cyrus, they might produce, un-  
 der the various appellations of Chaldeans and  
 Zanians, an uninterrupted prescription of war  
 and rapine. Under the reign of Justinian, they  
 acknowledged the God and the emperor of the  
 Romans, and seven fortresses were built in the  
 most accessible passes, to exclude the ambition  
 of the Persian monarch.<sup>p</sup> The principal source  
 of the Euphrates descends from the Chalybian

<sup>a</sup> The country is described by Tournefort, (*Voyage au Levant*, tom. iii, lettre xvii, xviii). That skilful botanist soon discovered the plant that infects the honey, (Plin. xxi, 44, 45). He observes, that the soldiers of Lucullus might indeed be astonished at the cold, since, even in the plain of Erzerum, snow sometimes falls in June, and the harvest is seldom finished before September. The hills of Armenia are below the fortieth degree of latitude; but in the mountainous country which I inhabit, it is well known that an ascent of some hours carries the traveller from the climate of Languedoc to that of Norway, and a general theory has been introduced, that under the line, an elevation of 2,400 *toises* is equivalent to the cold of the polar circle, (Remond, *Observations sur les Voyages de Coxe dans la Suisse*, tom. ii, p. 104).

<sup>o</sup> The identity or proximity of the Chalybians, or Chaldeans, may be investigated in Strabo, (l. xii, p. 825, 826); Cellarius, *Geograph. Antiq.* tom. ii, p. 202-204, and Freret, (*Mem. de l'Academie*, tom. iv, p. 594). Xenophon supposes, in his romance, (*Cyropæd.* l. iii), the same barbarians against whom he had fought in his retreat, (*Anabasis*, l. iv).

<sup>p</sup> Procopius, *Persic.* l. i, c. 15. *De Edific.* l. iii, c. 6.

mountains, and seems to flow towards the west and the Euxine; bending to the south-west, the river passes under the walls of Satala and Melitene, (which were restored by Justinian as the bulwarks of the Lesser Armenia), and gradually approaches the Mediterranean sea; till at length, repelled by mount Taurus,<sup>a</sup> the Euphrates inclines his long and flexible course to the south-east and the gulph of Persia. Among the Roman cities beyond the Euphrates, we distinguish two recent foundations, which were named from Theodosius, and the relics of the martyrs; and two capitals, Amida and Edessa, which are celebrated in the history of every age. Their strength was proportioned, by Justinian, to the danger of their situation. A ditch and palisade might be sufficient to resist the artless force of the cavalry of Scythia; but more elaborate works were required to sustain a regular siege against the arms and treasures of the great king. His skilful engineers understood the methods of conducting deep mines, and of raising platforms to the level of the rampart: he shook the strongest battlements with his military engines, and sometimes advanced to the assault with a line of moveable turrets on the backs of elephants. In the great cities of the East, the disadvantage of space, perhaps of position, was compensated by the zeal of the people, who seconded the garrison in the defence of their country and religion; and the fabulous promise

<sup>a</sup> Ni Taurus obstet in nostra maria venturus, (Pomponius Mela, iii, 8). Pliny, a poet as well as a naturalist, (v, 20), personifies the river and mountain, and describes their combat. See the course of the Tigris and Euphrates, in the excellent treatise of d'Anville.

CHAP. of the Son of God, that Edessa should never be  
 XL. taken, filled the citizens with violent confidence,  
 and chilled the besiegers with doubt and dismay.\* The subordinate towns of Armenia and Mesopotamia were diligently strengthened, and the posts which appeared to have any command of ground or water, were occupied by numerous forts, substantially built of stone, or more hastily erected with the obvious materials of earth and brick. The eye of Justinian investigated every spot; and his cruel precautions might attract the war into some lonely vale, whose peaceful natives, connected by trade and marriage, were ignorant of national discord and the quarrels of princes. Westward of the Euphrates, a sandy desert extends above six hundred miles to the Red Sea. Nature had interposed a vacant solitude between the ambition of two rival empires: the Arabians, till Mahomet arose, were formidable only as robbers: and, in the proud security of peace, the fortifications of Syria were neglected on the most vulnerable side.

Death of  
 Perozes,  
 king of  
 Persia,  
 A. D. 488.

But the national enmity, at least the effects of that enmity, had been suspended by a truce, which continued above fourscore years. An ambassador from the emperor Zeno accompanied the rash and unfortunate Perozes, in his expedition against the Nepthalites or White Huns, whose

\* Procopius (Persic. l. ii, c. 12) tells the story with the tone half sceptical, half superstitious, of Herodotus. The promise was not in the primitive lie of Eusebius, but dates at least from the year 400; and a third lie, the *Veronica*, was soon raised on the two former, (Evagrius, l. iv, c. 27). As Edessa has been taken, Tillemont must disclaim the promise, (Mem. Eccles. tom. i, p. 362, 383, 617).

conquest had been stretched from the Caspian to the heart of India, whose throne was enriched with emeralds,\* and whose cavalry was supported by a line of two thousand elephants.<sup>†</sup> The Persians were twice circumvented, in a situation which made valour useless and flight impossible; and the double victory of the Huns was achieved by military stratagem. They dismissed their royal captive after he had submitted to adore the majesty of a barbarian; and the humiliation was poorly evaded by the casuistical subtlety of the Magi, who instructed Perozes to direct his intention to the rising sun. The indignant successor of Cyrus forgot his danger and his gratitude; he renewed the attack with headstrong fury, and lost both his army and his life.<sup>‡</sup> The death of

\* They were purchased from the merchants of Adulis who traded to India, (Cosmas, *Topograph. Christ.* l. xi, p. 339); yet, in the estimate of precious stones, the Scythian emerald was the first, the Bactrian the second, the Ethiopian only the third, (Pill's *Theophrastus*, p. 61, &c. 92). The production, mines, &c. of emeralds, are involved in darkness; and it is doubtful whether we possess any of the twelve sorts known to the ancients, (Goguet, *Origine des Loix*, &c. part ii, l. ii, c. 2, art. 3). In this war the Huns got, or at least Perozes lost, the finest pearl in the world, of which Procopius relates a ridiculous fable.

† The Indo-Scythæ continued to reign from the time of Augustus (Dionys. *Perieget.* 1088, with the Commentary of Eustathius, in Hudson, *Geograph. Minor.* tom. iv) to that of the elder Justin, (Cosmas, *Topograph. Christ.* l. xi, p. 338, 339). On their origin and conquests, see d'Anville, (*sur l'Inde*, p. 18, 45, &c. 69, 85, 89). In the second century they were masters of Larice or Guzerat.

‡ See the fate of Phrouz or Perozes, and its consequences, in Procopius, (*Persic.* l. i, c. 3-6), who may be compared with the fragments of oriental history, (d'Herbelot, *Bibhot. Orient.* p. 351, and Teixeira, *History of Persia*, translated or abridged by Stevens, l. i, c. 32, p. 132-138). The chronology is ably ascertained by Asseman, (*Bibliot. Orient.* tom. iii, p. 396-427).

CHAP.  
XL.

The Persi-  
an war,  
A. D. 502-  
505.

Perozes abandoned Persia to her foreign and domestic enemies; and twelve years of confusion elapsed before his son Cabades or Kobad could embrace any designs of ambition or revenge. The unkind parsimony of Anastasius was the motive or pretence of a Roman war;<sup>\*</sup> the Huns and Arabs marched under the Persian standard, and the fortifications of Armenia and Mesopotamia were, at that time, in a ruinous or imperfect condition. The emperor returned his thanks to the governor and people of Martyropolis, for the prompt surrender of a city which could not be successfully defended, and the conflagration of Theodosiopolis might justify the conduct of their prudent neighbours. Amida sustained a long and destructive siege: at the end of three months the loss of fifty thousand of the soldiers of Cabades was not balanced by any prospect of success, and it was in vain that the Magi deduced a flattering prediction from the indecency of the women on the ramparts, who had revealed their most secret charms to the eyes of the assailants. At length, in a silent night, they ascended the most accessible tower, which was guarded only by some monks, oppressed, after the duties of a festival, with sleep and wine. Scaling ladders were applied at the dawn of day; the presence of Cabades, his stern command, and his drawn sword, compelled the Persians to vanquish; and

<sup>\*</sup> The Persian war, under the reigns of Anastasius and Justin, may be collected from Procopius, (*Persic. l. i. c. 7, 8, 9*; Theophanes, (*in Chronograph. p. 124-127*); Evagrius, (*l. iii. c. 37*); Marcellinus, (*in Chron. p. 47*), and Josue Stylites), (*apud Asseman. tom. i. p. 272-281*).

before it was sheathed, fourscore thousand of the inhabitants had expiated the blood of their companions. After the siege of Amida, the war continued three years, and the unhappy frontier tasted the full measure of its calamities. The gold of Anastasius was offered too late, the number of his troops was defeated by the number of their generals; the country was stripped of its inhabitants, and both the living and the dead were abandoned to the wild beasts of the desert. The resistance of Edessa, and the deficiency of spoil, inclined the mind of Cabades to peace; he sold his conquests for an exorbitant price: and the same line, though marked with slaughter and devastation, still separated the two empires. To avert the repetition of the same evils, Anastasius resolved to found a new colony, so strong, that it should defy the power of the Persian, so far advanced towards Assyria, that its stationary troops might defend the province by the menace or operation of offensive war. For this purpose, the town of Dara,<sup>7</sup> fourteen miles from Nisibis, and four days journey from the Tigris, was peopled and adorned; the hasty works of Anastasius were improved by the perseverance of Justinian; and without insisting on places less important, the fortifications of Dara may represent the military architecture of the age. The city was surrounded with two walls, and the interval between them of

Fortifica-  
tions of  
Dara.

<sup>7</sup> The description of Dara is amply and correctly given by Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 10; l. ii, c. 13. De Edific. l. ii, c. 1, 2, 3; l. iii, c. 5). See the situation in d'Anville, (l'Euphrate et le Tigre, p. 53, 54, 55), though he seems to double the interval between Dara and Nisibis.

CHAP. fifty paces, afforded a retreat to the cattle of the  
 XL. besieged. The inner wall was a monument of  
 strength and beauty: it measured sixty feet from  
 the ground, and the height of the towers was one  
 hundred feet; the loop-holes, from whence an  
 enemy might be annoyed with missile weapons,  
 were small, but numerous: the soldiers were  
 planted along the rampart, under the shelter of  
 double galleries, and a third platform, spacious  
 and secure, was raised on the summit of the  
 towers. The exterior wall appears to have been  
 less lofty, but more solid; and each tower was  
 protected by a quadrangular bulwark. A hard  
 rocky soil resisted the tools of the miners, and on  
 the south-east, where the ground was more tract-  
 able, their approach was retarded by a new work,  
 which advanced in the shape of an half-moon.  
 The double and treble ditches were filled with a  
 stream of water; and in the management of the  
 river, the most skilful labour was employed to  
 supply the inhabitants, to distress the besiegers,  
 and to prevent the mischiefs of a natural or arti-  
 ficial inundation. Dara continued more than sixty  
 years to fulfil the wishes of its founders, and to  
 provoke the jealousy of the Persians, who inces-  
 santly complained, that this impregnable fortress  
 had been constructed in manifest violation of the  
 treaty of peace between the two empires.

The Cas-  
 pian or  
 Iberian  
 gates.

Between the Euxine and the Caspian, the  
 countries of Cholchos, Iberia, and Albania, are  
 intersected in every direction by the branches of  
 mount Caucasus; and the two principal gates, or  
 passes, from north to south, have been frequently

confounded in the geography both of the ancients and moderns. The name of *Caspian* or *Albanian* gates, is properly applied to *Derbend*,<sup>2</sup> which occupies a short declivity between the mountains and the sea; the city, if we give credit to local tradition, had been founded by the Greeks; and this dangerous entrance was fortified by the kings of Persia with a mole, double walls, and doors of iron. The *Iberian* gates<sup>3</sup> are formed by a narrow passage of six miles in mount Caucasus, which opens from the northern side of Iberia or Georgia, into the plain that reaches to the Tanais and the Volga. A fortress, designed by Alexander perhaps, or one of his successors, to command that important pass, had descended by right of conquest or inheritance to a prince of the Huns, who offered it for a moderate price to the emperor: but while Anastasius paused, while he timorously computed the cost and the distance, a more vigilant rival interposed, and Cabades forcibly occupied the straits of Caucasus. The Albanian and Iberian gates excluded the horsemen of Scythia from the shortest and most practicable roads, and the whole front of the mountains was covered by the rampart of Gog and Magog, the

<sup>2</sup> For the city and pass of *Derbend*, see d'Herbelot, (*Bibliot. Orient.* p. 157, 291, 807); *Petite de la Croix*, (*Hist. de Gengiscan*, l. iv, c. 9); *Histoire Genealogique des Tatars*, tom. i, p. 120); *Olearius*, (*Voyage en Perse*, p. 1039-1041), and *Corneille le Bruyn*, (*Voyages*, tom. i, p. 146, 147): his view may be compared with the plan of *Olearius*, who judges the wall to be of shells and gravel hardened by time.

<sup>3</sup> *Procopius*, though with some confusion, always denominates them *Caspian*, (*Persic.* l. i, c. 10). The pass is now styled *Tatartopa*, the *Tartar-gates*, (*d'Anville*, *Geographie Ancienne*, tom. ii, p. 119, 120).

CHAP. long wall which has excited the curiosity of an  
 XL. Arabian caliph<sup>b</sup> and a Russian conqueror.<sup>c</sup> According to a recent description, huge stones, seven feet thick, twenty-one feet in length, or height, are artificially joined without iron or cement, to compose a wall, which runs above three hundred miles from the shores of Derbend, over the hills and through the valleys of Daghestan and Georgia. Without a vision, such a work might be undertaken by the policy of Cabades; without a miracle, it might be accomplished by his son, so formidable to the Romans under the name of Chosroes; so dear to the Orientals, under the appellation of Nushirwan. The Persian monarch held in his hand the keys both of peace and war; but he stipulated in every treaty, that Justinian should contribute to the expence of a common barrier, which equally protected the two empires from the inroads of the Scythians.<sup>d</sup>

VII. Justinian suppressed the schools of Athens and the consulship of Rome, which had given so many sages and heroes to mankind. Both these

<sup>b</sup> The imaginary rampart of Gog and Magog, which was seriously explored and believed by a caliph of the ixth century, appears to be derived from the gates of Mount Caucasus, and a vague report of the wall of China, (Geograph. Nubiensis, p. 267-270. *Memoires de l'Academie*, tom. xxxi, p. 210-219.)

\* See a learned dissertation of Baier, *de muro Caucaseo*, in *Comment. Acad. Petropol.* ann. 1726, tom. i, p. 425-463; but it is destitute of a map or plan. When the Czar Peter I became master of Derbend in the year 1722, the measure of the wall was found to be 3285 Russian *orgyæ*, or fathom, each of seven feet English; in the whole somewhat more than four miles in length.

<sup>d</sup> See the fortifications and treaties of Chosroes or Nushirwan, in *Procopius*, (Persic. l. i, c. 16, 22; l. ii), and d'Herbelot, (p. 682).

institutions had long since degenerated from CHAR.  
 their primitive glory; yet some reproach may be XL.  
 justly inflicted on the avarice and jealousy of a  
 prince, by whose hands such venerable ruins  
 were destroyed.

Athens, after her Persian triumphs, adopted the The  
 philosophy of Ionia and the rhetoric of Sicily; schools of  
 and these studies became the patrimony of a city Athens.  
 whose inhabitants, about thirty thousand males,  
 condensed, within the period of a single life, the  
 genius of ages and millions. Our sense of the  
 dignity of human nature is exalted by the simple  
 recollection, that Isocrates<sup>e</sup> was the companion  
 of Plato and Xenophon; that he assisted, perhaps  
 with the historian Thucydides, at the first repre-  
 sentations of the Oedipus of Sophocles and the  
 Iphigenia of Euripides; and that his pupils  
 Æschines and Demosthenes contended for the  
 crown of patriotism in the presence of Aristotle,  
 the master of Theophrastus, who taught at Athens  
 with the founders of the Stoic and Epicurean  
 sects.<sup>f</sup> The ingenious youth of Attica enjoyed  
 the benefits of their domestic education, which was  
 communicated without envy to the rival cities.  
 Two thousand disciples heard the lessons of Theo-

<sup>e</sup> The life of Isocrates extends from Olymp. lxxxvi, 1, to cx. 3, (ante Christ. 436-338). See Dionys. Halicarn. tom. ii, p. 149, 150, edit. Hudson; Plutarch (sive anonymous) in Vit. X, Oratorum, p. 1538-1543, edit. H. Steph.; Phot. cod. cclix, p. 1453.

<sup>f</sup> The schools of Athens are copiously, though concisely, represented in the Fortuna Attica of Meusius, (c. viii, p. 59-73, in tom. i, Opp.). For the state and arts of the city, see the first book of Pausanias, and a small tract of Dicæarchus, (in the second volume of Hudson's Geographers), who wrote about Olymp. cxvii; Dodwell's Dissertation, sect. 4).

CHAP.

XL.

~~~~~

phrastus;<sup>6</sup> the schools of rhetoric must have been still more populous than those of philosophy; and a rapid succession of students diffused the fame of their teachers, as far as the utmost limits of the Grecian language and name. Those limits were enlarged by the victories of Alexander; the arts of Athens survived her freedom and dominion; and the Greek colonies which the Macedonians planted in Egypt, and scattered over Asia, undertook long and frequent pilgrimages to worship the Muses in their favourite temple on the banks of the Ilissus. The Latin conquerors respectfully listened to the instructions of their subjects and captives; the names of Cicero and Horace were inrolled in the schools of Athens; and after the perfect settlement of the Roman empire, the natives of Italy, of Africa, and of Britain, conversed in the groves of the academy with their fellow-students of the East. The studies of philosophy and eloquence are congenial to a popular state, which encourages the freedom of inquiry, and submits only to the force of persuasion. In the republics of Greece and Rome, the art of speaking was the powerful engine of patriotism or ambition; and the schools of rhetoric poured forth a colony of statesmen and legislators. When the liberty of public debate was suppressed, the orator, in the honourable profession of an advocate, might plead the cause of innocence and justice; he might abuse his talents in the more profitable trade of panegyric; and the same pre-

<sup>6</sup> Diogen. Laert. de Vit. Philosoph. l. v, segm. 37, p. 289.

cepts continued to dictate the fanciful declamations of the sophist, and the chaster beauties of historical composition. The systems which professed to unfold the nature of God, of man, and of the universe, entertained the curiosity of the philosophic student; and according to the temper of his mind, he might doubt with the sceptics, or decide with the stoics, sublimely speculate with Plato, or severely argue with Aristotle. The pride of the adverse sects had fixed an unattainable term of moral happiness and perfection; but the race was glorious and salutary; the disciples of Zeno, and even those of Epicurus, were taught both to act and to suffer; and the death of Petronius was not less effectual than that of Seneca, to humble a tyrant by the discovery of his impotence. The light of science could not indeed be confined within the walls of Athens. Her incomparable writers address themselves to the human race; the living masters emigrated to Italy and Asia; Berytus, in later times, was devoted to the study of the law; astronomy and physic were cultivated in the museum of Alexandria; but the Attic schools of rhetoric and philosophy maintained their superior reputation from the Peloponnesian war to the reign of Justinian. Athens, though situate in a barren soil, possessed a pure air, a free navigation, and the monuments of ancient art. That sacred retirement was seldom disturbed by the business of trade or government; and the last of the Athenians were distinguished by their lively wit, the purity of their taste and language, their social manners, and

CHAP.

XL.  
~~~~~

some traces, at least in discourse, of the magnanimity of their fathers. In the suburbs of the city, the *academy* of the Platonists, the *lyceum* of the Peripatetics, the *portico* of the Stoics, and the *garden* of the Epicureans, were planted with trees and decorated with statues : and the philosophers, instead of being immured in a cloister, delivered their instructions in spacious and pleasant walks, which, at different hours, were consecrated to the exercises of the mind and body. The genius of the founders still lived in those venerable seats; the ambition of succeeding to the masters of human reason, excited a generous emulation ; and the merit of the candidates was determined, on each vacancy, by the free voices of an enlightened people. The Athenian professors were paid by their disciples : according to their mutual wants and abilities, the price appears to have varied from a mina to a talent; and Isocrates himself, who derides the avarice of the sophists, required in his school of rhetoric, about thirty pounds from each of his hundred pupils. The wages of industry are just and honourable, yet the same Isocrates shed tears at the first receipt of a stipend ; the stoic might blush when he was hired to preach the contempt of money ; and I should be sorry to discover, that Aristotle or Plato so far degenerated from the example of Socrates, as to exchange knowledge for gold. But some property of lands and houses was settled by the permission of the laws, and the legacies of deceased friends, on the philosophic chairs of Athens. Epicurus bequeathed to his disciples the gardens

which he had purchased for eighty minæ, or two hundred and fifty pounds, with a fund sufficient for their frugal subsistence and monthly festivals;<sup>h</sup> and the patrimony of Plato afforded an annual rent, which, in eight centuries, was gradually increased from three to one thousand pieces of gold.<sup>i</sup> The schools of Athens were protected by the wisest and most virtuous of the Roman princes. The library which Hadrian founded, was placed in a portico, adorned with pictures, statues, and a roof of alabaster, and supported by one hundred columns of Phrygian marble. The public salaries were assigned by the generous spirit of the Antonines; and each professor, of politics, of rhetoric, of the Platonic, the Peripatetic, the Stoic, and the Epicurean philosophy, received an annual stipend of ten thousand drachmæ, or more than three hundred pounds sterling.<sup>k</sup> After the death of Marcus, these liberal donations, and the privileges attached to the *thrones* of science, were abolished and revived, diminished and enlarged: but some vestige

<sup>h</sup> See the testament of Epicurus in Diogen. Laert. l. x. *segm.* 16-20, p. 611, 612. A single epistle (ad Familiares, xiii, 1) displays the injustice of the Areopagus, the fidelity of the Epicureans, the dexterous politeness of Cicero, and the mixture of contempt and esteem with which the Roman senators considered the philosophy and philosophers of Greece.

<sup>i</sup> Damascius, in Vit. Isidor. apud Photium, cod. ccxlii, p. 1054.

<sup>k</sup> See Lucian, (in Eunech. tom. ii, p. 350-359, edit. Reitz); Philostratus, (in Vit. Sophist. l. ii, c. 2), and Dion Cassius, or Xiphilin, (l. lxxi, p. 1195), with their editors Du Soul, Olearius, and Reimar, and, above all, Salmasius, (ad Hist. August. p. 72). A judicious philosopher (Smith's Wealth of Nations, vol. ii, p. 340-374,) prefers the free contributions of the students to a fixed stipend for the professor.

CHAP.  
XL.

of royal bounty may be found under the successors of Constantine; and their arbitrary choice of an unworthy candidate might tempt the philosophers of Athens to regret the days of independence and poverty.<sup>1</sup> It is remarkable, that the impartial favour of the Antonines was bestowed on the four adverse sects of philosophy, which they considered as equally useful, or at least as equally innocent. Socrates had formerly been the glory and the reproach of his country; and the first lessons of Epicurus so strangely scandalized the pious ears of the Athenians, that by his exile, and that of his antagonists, they silenced all vain disputes concerning the nature of the gods. But in the ensuing year they recalled the hasty decree, restored the liberty of the schools, and were convinced, by the experience of ages, that the moral character of philosophers is not affected by the diversity of their theological speculations.<sup>m</sup>

They are  
suppressed  
by Justi-  
nian.

The Gothic arms were less fatal to the schools of Athens than the establishment of a new religion, whose ministers superseded the exercise of reason, resolved every question by an article of faith, and condemned the infidel or sceptic to eternal flames.

<sup>1</sup> Brucker. Hist. Crit. Philosoph. tom. ii, p. 310, &c.

<sup>m</sup> The birth of Epicurus is fixed to the year 342 before Christ, (Bayle), Olympiad cix, 3; and he opened his school at Athens, Olymp. cxviii, 3, 306 years before the same era. This intolerant law (Athenæus, l. xiii, p. 610; Diogen. Lærtius, l. v, s. 38, p. 290; Julius Pollux, ix, 5) was enacted in the same, or the succeeding year, (Sigonius, Opp. tom. v, p. 62; Menagius, ad Diogen. Laert. p. 204; Corsini Fasti Attici, tom. iv, p. 67, 68). Theophrastus, chief of the Peripatetics, and disciple of Aristotle, was involved in the same exile.

CHAP.

XL.

In many a volume of laborious controversy, they exposed the weakness of the understanding and the corruption of the heart, insulted human nature in the sages of antiquity, and proscribed the spirit of philosophical inquiry, so repugnant to the doctrine, or at least to the temper, of an humble believer. The surviving sect of the Platonists, whom Plato would have blushed to acknowledge, extravagantly mingled a sublime theory with the practice of superstition and magic; and as they remained alone in the midst of a Christian world, they indulged a secret rancour against the government of the church and state; whose severity was still suspended over their heads. ~~About a century after the reign of~~ Julian<sup>a</sup>, Proclus<sup>o</sup> was permitted to teach in the philosophic chair of the academy; and such was his industry that he frequently, in the same day, pronounced five lessons, and composed seven hundred lines. His sagacious mind explored the deepest questions of morals and metaphysics, and he ventured to urge eighteen arguments against the Christian doctrine of the creation of the world. But in the intervals of study, he *personally* conversed with Pan, Æsculapius, and Minerva, in whose mysteries he was secretly initiated, and whose prostrate statues he

Proclus.

<sup>a</sup> This is no fanciful era; the pagans reckoned their calamities from the reign of their hero. Proclus, whose nativity is marked by his horoscope, (A. D. 412, February 8, at C. P.), died 124 years *απο Ιουλιανου βασιλευς*, A. D. 485, (Marin. in *Vitâ Procli*, c. 36).

<sup>o</sup> The life of Proclus, by Marinus, was published by Fabricius, (Hamburgh, 1700, et ad calcem Bibliot. Latin. Lond. 1703.) See Suidas, (tom. iii. p. 185, 186); Fabricius, (Bibliot. Græc. l. v. c. 26, p. 449-552), and Brucker, (Hist. Crit. Philosoph. tom. ii, p. 319-326).

CHAP.  
XL.  
~~~~~

His suc-  
cessors,  
A. D. 485-  
529.

adored; in the devout persuasion that the philosopher, who is a citizen of the universe, should be the priest of its various deities. An eclipse of the sun announced his approaching end: and his life, with that of his scholar Isidore,<sup>p</sup> compiled by two of their most learned disciples, exhibits a deplorable picture of the second childhood of human reason. Yet the golden chain, as it was fondly styled, of the Platonic succession, continued forty-four years from the death of Proclus; to the edict of Justinian,<sup>q</sup> which imposed a perpetual silence on the schools of Athens, and excited the grief and indignation of the few remaining votaries of Grecian science and superstition. Seven friends and philosophers, Diogenes and Hermias, Eulalius and Priscian, Damascius, Isidore, and Simplicius; who dissented from the religion of their sovereign, embraced the resolution of seeking in a foreign land the freedom which was denied in their native country. They had heard, and they credulously believed, that the republic of Plato was realized in the despotic government of Persia, and that a patriot king reigned over the happiest and most virtuous of nations. They were soon astonished by the natural discovery that Persia resembled the other countries of the globe; that Chosroes, who affected the name of a philosopher, was vain, cruel, and ambitious; that bigotry; and

<sup>p</sup> The life of Isidore was composed by Damascius, (apud Photium, cod. cexlii, p. 1028-1076). See the last age of the pagan philosophers in Brucker, (tom. ii, p. 341-351).

<sup>q</sup> The suppression of the schools of Athens is recorded by John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 187, sur Decio Cos. Sol.), and an anonymous Chronicle in the Vatican Library, (apud Aleman, p. 106).

a spirit of intolerance, prevailed among the Magi; that the nobles were haughty, the courtiers servile, and the magistrates unjust; that the guilty sometimes escaped, and that the innocent were often oppressed. The disappointment of the philosophers, provoked them to overlook the real virtues of the Persians; and they were scandalized, more deeply perhaps than became their profession, with the plurality of wives and concubines, the incestuous marriages, and the custom of exposing dead bodies to the dogs and vultures, instead of hiding them in the earth, or consuming them with fire. Their repentance was expressed by a precipitate return, and they loudly declared that they had rather die on the borders of the empire, than enjoy the wealth and favour of the barbarian. From this journey, however, they derived a benefit which reflects the purest lustre on the character of Chosroes. He required, that the seven sages who had visited the court of Persia, should be exempted from the penal laws which Justinian enacted against his pagan subjects; and this privilege, expressly stipulated in a treaty of peace, was guarded by the vigilance of a powerful mediator.<sup>r</sup> Simplicius and his companions ended their lives in peace and obscurity: and as they left no disciples, they terminate the long list of Grecian philosophers, who may be justly praised, notwithstanding their defects, as the wisest and most virtuous of their con-

CHAP.  
XL.

The last of  
the philo-  
sophers.

<sup>r</sup> Agathias (l. ii, p. 69, 70, 71) relates this curious story. Chosroes ascended the throne in the year 531, and made his first peace with the Romans in the beginning of 533, a date most compatible with his young fame and the old age of Isidore, (Asseman. Bibliot. Orient. tom. iij, p. 404. Pagi, tom. ii, p. 513, 551).

CHAP. temporaries. The writings of Simplicius are now  
 XL. extant. His physical and metaphysical comment-  
 aries on Aristotle have passed away with the fa-  
 shion of the times ; but his moral interpretation  
 of Epictetus, is preserved in the library of nations,  
 as a classic book, most excellently adapted to  
 direct the will, to purify the heart, and to confirm  
 the understanding, by a just confidence in the na-  
 ture both of God and man.

The Ro-  
 man con-  
 sulship ex-  
 tinguished  
 by Justi-  
 nian,  
 A. D. 541.

About the same time that Pythagoras first in-  
 vented the appellation of philosopher, liberty and  
 the consulship were founded at Rome by the elder  
 Brutus. The revolutions of the consular office,  
 which may be viewed in the successive lights of  
 a substance, a shadow, and a name, have been oc-  
 casionally mentioned in the present history. The  
 first magistrates of the republic had been chosen by  
 the people, to exercise, in the senate and in the  
 camp, the powers of peace and war, which were  
 afterwards translated to the emperors. But the  
 tradition of ancient dignity was long revered by the  
 Romans and barbarians. A Gothic historian ap-  
 plauds the consulship of Theodoric as the height  
 of all temporal glory and greatness ;\* the king of  
 Italy himself congratulates those annual favour-  
 ites of fortune, who, without the cares, enjoyed  
 the splendour of the throne ; and at the end of a  
 thousand years, two consuls were created by the  
 sovereigns of Rome and Constantinople, for the  
 sole purpose of giving a date to the year, and a

\* Cassiodor. Variarum Epist. vi, l. Jornandes, c. 57, p. 696, edit.  
 Grot. Quod summum bonum primumque in mundo decus edicitur.

festival to the people. But the expences of this festival, in which the wealthy and the vain aspired to surpass their predecessors, insensibly arose to the enormous sum of fourscore thousand pounds; the wisest senators declined an useless honour, which involved the certain ruin of their families; and to this reluctance I should impute the frequent chasms in the last age of the consular *Fasti*. The predecessors of Justinian had assisted from the public treasures the dignity of the less opulent candidates; the avarice of that prince preferred the cheaper and more convenient method of advice and regulation.<sup>t</sup> Seven *processions* or spectacles were the number to which ~~his edict confined the horse and~~ chariot races, the athletic sports, the music, and pantomimes of the theatre, and the hunting of wild beasts; and small pieces of silver were discreetly substituted to the gold medals, which had always excited tumult and drunkenness, when they were scattered with a profuse hand among the populace. Notwithstanding these precautions and his own example, the succession of consuls finally ceased in the thirteenth year of Justinian, whose despotic temper might be gratified by the silent extinction of a title which admonished the Romans of their ancient freedom.<sup>u</sup> Yet the annual consulship still lived in the minds of the people: they

<sup>t</sup> See the regulations of Justinian, (Novell. cv), dated at Constantinople, July 5, and addressed to Strategius, treasurer of the empire.

<sup>u</sup> Procopius, in Anecd. c. 26. Aleman. p. 106. In the xviii<sup>th</sup> year after the consulship of Basilius, according to the reckoning of Marcellinus, Victor, Marius, &c. the secret history was composed, and, in the eyes of Procopius, the consulship was finally abolished.

CHAP.

XL.

~~~~~

fondly expected its speedy restoration ; they applauded the gracious condescension of successive princes, by whom it was assumed in the first year of their reign ; and three centuries elapsed, after the death of Justinian, before that obsolete dignity, which had been suppressed by custom, could be abolished by law.<sup>x</sup> The imperfect mode of distinguishing each year by the name of a magistrate, was usually supplied by the date of a permanent era : the creation of the world, according to the septuagint version, was adopted by the Greeks ;<sup>y</sup> and the Latins, since the age of Charlemagne, have computed their time from the birth of Christ.<sup>z</sup>

<sup>x</sup> By Leo the philosopher, (Novell. xciv, A. D. 886-911). See Pagi, (Dissertat. Hypatica, p. 325-362), and Ducange, (Gloss. Græc. p. 1635, 1636). Even the title was vilified ; *consulatus codicilli* : . . vilescunt, says the emperor himself.

<sup>y</sup> According to Julius Africanus, &c. the world was created the first of September, 5508 years three months and twenty-five days before the birth of Christ, (see Pezron, *Antiquité des Temps défendue*, p. 20-28) ; and this era has been used by the Greeks, the Oriental Christians, and even by the Russians, till the reign of Peter I. The period, however arbitrary, is clear and convenient. Of the 7296 years which are supposed to elapse since the creation, we shall find 3000 of ignorance and darkness ; 2000 either fabulous or doubtful ; 1000 of ancient history, commencing with the Persian empire, and the republics of Rome and Athens ; 1000 from the fall of the Roman empire in the west to the discovery of America ; and the remaining 296 will almost complete three centuries of the modern state of Europe and mankind. I regret this chronology, so far preferable to our double and perplexed method of counting backwards and forwards the years before and after the Christian era.

<sup>z</sup> The era of the world has prevailed in the East since the sixth general council, (A. D. 681). In the West the Christian era was first invented in the sixth century : it was propagated in the eighth by the authority and writings of venerable Bede ; but it was not till the tenth that the use became legal and popular. See *l'Art de vérifier les Dates*, Dissert. Préliminaire, p. iii, xii. *Dictionnaire Diplomatique*, tom. i, p. 329-337 ; the works of a laborious society of Benedictine monks.

## CHAP. XLI.

*Conquests of Justinian in the West—Character and first campaigns of Belisarius—He invades and subdues the Vandal kingdom of Africa—His triumph—The Gothic war—He recovers Sicily, Naples, and Rome—Siege of Rome by the Goths—Their retreat and losses—Surrender of Ravenna—Glory of Belisarius—His domestic shame and misfortunes.*

WHEN Justinian ascended the throne, about fifty years after the fall of the western empire, the kingdoms of the Goths and Vandals had obtained a solid, and, as it might seem, a legal establishment both in Europe and Africa. The titles which Roman victory had inscribed, were erased with equal justice by the sword of the barbarians; and their successful rapine derived a more venerable sanction from time, from treaties, and from the oaths of fidelity, already repeated by a second or third generation of obedient subjects. Experience and Christianity had refuted the superstitious hope, that Rome was founded by the gods to reign for ever over the nations of the earth. But the proud claim of perpetual and indefeasible dominion, which her soldiers could no longer maintain, was firmly asserted by her statesmen and lawyers, whose opinions have been sometimes

CHAP.  
XLI.

Justinian  
resolves to  
invade  
Africa,  
A. D. 533.

CHAP. revived and propagated in the modern schools of  
 XLI. jurisprudence. After Rome herself had been  
 stripped of the imperial purple, the princes of Constantinople assumed the sole and sacred sceptre of the monarchy; demanded, as their rightful inheritance, the provinces which had been subdued by the consuls, or possessed by the Cæsars; and feebly aspired to deliver their faithful subjects of the West from the usurpation of heretics and barbarians. The execution of this splendid design was in some degree reserved for Justinian. During the five first years of his reign, he reluctantly waged a costly and unprofitable war against the Persians; till his pride submitted to his ambition, and he purchased, at the price of four hundred and forty thousand pounds sterling, the benefit of a precarious truce, which, in the language of both nations, was dignified with the appellation of the *endless* peace. The safety of the East enabled the emperor to employ his forces against the Vandals; and the internal state of Africa afforded an honourable motive, and promised a powerful support, to the Roman arms.<sup>a</sup>

State of  
 the Vandals.  
 Hilderic,  
 A. D. 523-  
 530.

According to the testament of the founder, the African kingdom had lineally descended to Hilderic the eldest of the Vandal princes. A mild

\* The complete series of the Vandal war is related by Procopius in regular and elegant narrative, (l. i, c. 9-25; l. ii, c. 1-13); and happy would be my lot, could I always tread in the footsteps of such a guide. From the entire and diligent perusal of the Greek text, I have a right to pronounce that the Latin and French versions of Grotius and Cousin may not be implicitly trusted: yet the president Cousin has been often praised, and Hugo Grotius was the first scholar of a learned age.

CHAP.

XLI.

disposition inclined the son of a tyrant, the grandson of a conqueror, to prefer the counsels of clemency and peace; and his accession was marked by the salutary edict, which restored two hundred bishops to their churches, and allowed the free profession of the Athanasian creed.<sup>b</sup> But the catholics accepted, with cold and transient gratitude, a favour so inadequate to their pretensions, and the virtues of Hilderic offended the prejudices of his countrymen. The Arian clergy presumed to insinuate that he had renounced the faith, and the soldiers more loudly complained that he had degenerated from the courage, of his ancestors. His ambassadors were suspected of a secret and disgraceful negotiation in the Byzantine court; and his general, the Achilles,<sup>c</sup> as he was named, of the Vandals, lost a battle against the naked and disorderly Moors. The public discontent was exasperated by Gelimer, whose age, descent, and military fame, gave him an apparent title to the succession: he assumed, with the consent of the nation, the reins of government; and his unfortunate sovereign sunk without a struggle from the

Gelimer,  
A. D. 530-  
534.

<sup>b</sup> See Ruinart, *Hist. Persecut. Vandal.* c. xii, p. 589. His best evidence is drawn from the life of St. Fulgentius, composed by one of his disciples, transcribed in a great measure in the annals of Baronius, and printed in several great collections, (*Catalog. Bibliot. Buzavianæ*, tom. i, vol ii, p. 1258.

<sup>c</sup> For what quality of the mind or body? For speed, or beauty, or valour?—In what language did the Vandals read Homer?—Did he speak German?—The Latins had four versions, (*Fabric. tom. i, l. ii, c. 3, p. 297*): yet in spite of the praises of Seneca, (*Consol. c. 26*), they appear to have been more successful in imitating, than in translating, the Greek poets. But the name of Achilles might be famous and popular, even among the illiterate barbarians.

CHAP. throne to a dungeon, where he was strictly  
 XLI. guarded with a faithful counsellor, and his unpopu-  
 lar nephew the Achilles of the Vandals. But the indulgence which Hilderic had shewn to his catholic subjects had powerfully recommended him to the favour of Justinian, who, for the benefit of his own sect, could acknowledge the use and justice of religious toleration : their alliance, while the nephew of Justin remained in a private station, was cemented by the mutual exchange of gifts and letters ; and the emperor Justinian asserted the cause of royalty and friendship. In two successive embassies, he admonished the usurper to repent of his treason, or to abstain, at least, from any further violence, which might provoke the displeasure of God and of the Romans ; to reverence the laws of kindred and succession, and to suffer an infirm old man peaceably to end his days, either on the throne of Carthage, or in the palace of Constantinople. The passions or even the prudence of Gelimer compelled him to reject these requests, which were urged in the haughty tone of menace and command ; and he justified his ambition in a language rarely spoken in the Byzantine court, by alleging the right of a free people to remove or punish their chief magistrate, who had failed in the execution of the kingly office. After this fruitless expostulation, the captive monarch was more rigorously treated, his nephew was deprived of his eyes, and the cruel Vandal, confident in his strength and distance, derided the vain threats and slow preparations of the emperor of the East. Justinian

resolved to deliver or revenge his friend, Gelimer to maintain his usurpation: and the war was preceded, according to the practice of civilized nations, by the most solemn protestations that each party was sincerely desirous of peace.

CHAP.  
XLI.

The report of an African war was grateful only to the vain and idle populace of Constantinople, whose poverty exempted them from tribute, and whose cowardice was seldom exposed to military service. But the wiser citizens, who judged of the future by the past, revolved in their memory the immense loss, both of men and money, which the empire had sustained in the expedition of Basiliscus. The troops, which after five laborious campaigns had been recalled from the Persian frontier, dreaded the sea, the climate, and the arms of an unknown enemy. The ministers of the finances computed, as far as they might compute, the demands of an African war; the taxes which must be found and levied to supply those insatiate demands; and the danger, lest their own lives, or at least their lucrative employments, should be made responsible for the deficiency of the supply. Inspired by such selfish motives, (for we may not suspect him of any zeal for the public good), John of Cappadocia ventured to oppose in full council the inclinations of his master. He confessed, that a victory of such importance could not be too dearly purchased; but he represented in a grave discourse the certain difficulties and the uncertain event. "You undertake," said the prefect, "to besiege Carthage by land; the

Debates on  
the Afri-  
can war.

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

“ distance is not less than one hundred and forty  
 “ days journey ; on the sea, a whole year<sup>a</sup> must  
 “ elapse before you can receive any intelligence  
 “ from your fleet. If Africa should be reduced,  
 “ it cannot be preserved without the additional  
 “ conquest of Sicily and Italy. Success will impose  
 “ the obligation of new labours; a single misfor-  
 “ tune will attract the barbarians into the heart  
 “ of your exhausted empire.” Justinian felt the  
 weight of this salutary advice; he was confounded  
 by the unwonted freedom of an obsequious servant;  
 and the design of the war would perhaps have been  
 relinquished, if his courage had not been revived  
 by a voice which silenced the doubts of profane  
 reason. “ I have seen a vision,” cried an artful  
 or fanatic bishop of the East. “ It is the will of  
 “ heaven, O emperor! that you should not abandon  
 “ your holy enterprise for the deliverance of the  
 “ African church. The God of battles will march  
 “ before your standard, and disperse your enemies,  
 “ who are the enemies of his Son.” The empe-  
 ror might be tempted, and his counsellors were  
 constrained, to give credit to this seasonable reve-  
 lation: but they derived more rational hope from  
 the revolt, which the adherents of Hilderic or  
 Athanasius had already excited on the borders of  
 the Vandal monarchy. Pudentius, an African  
 subject, had privately signified his loyal intentions,

<sup>a</sup> *A year*—absurd exaggeration! The conquest of Africa may be dated A. D. 533, September 14: it is celebrated by Justinian in the preface to his Institutes, which were published November 21 of the same year. Including the voyage and return, such a computation might be truly applied to our Indian empire.

and a small military aid restored the province of Tripoli to the obedience of the Romans. The government of Sardinia had been intrusted to Godas, a valiant barbarian; he suspended the payment of tribute, disclaimed his allegiance to the usurper, and gave audience to the emissaries of Justinian, who found him master of that fruitful island, at the head of his guards, and proudly invested with the ensigns of royalty. The forces of the Vandals were diminished by discord and suspicion; the Roman armies were animated by the spirit of Belisarius: one of those heroic names which are familiar to every age and to every nation.

CHAP.  
XLI.

The Africanus of new Rome was born, and perhaps educated, among the Thracian peasants, without any of those advantages which had formed the virtues of the elder and the younger Scipio; a noble origin, liberal studies, and the emulation of a free state. The silence of a loquacious history may be admitted, to prove that the youth of Belisarius could not afford any subject of praise: he served, most assuredly with valour and reputation, among the private guards of Justinian; and when his patron became emperor, the domestic was promoted to military command. After a bold inroad into Persarmenia, in which his glory was shared by a colleague, and his progress was checked by an enemy, Belisarius repaired to the important sta-

Character  
and choice  
of Belisarius.

\* *Origine de Belisarius* est Thracien, & *Belisarius* non *Belisarius* parat *senior*, (Procop. Vandal. l. i, c. 11). Aleman, (*Not. ad Anecd.* p. 5), an Italian, could easily reject the German vanity of Giphanius and Velserus, who wished to claim the hero; but his Germania, a metropolis of Thrace, I cannot find in any civil or ecclesiastical lists of the provinces and cities.

CHAP.  
XLI.

His servi-  
ces in the  
Persian  
war,  
A. D. 529-  
532.

tion of Dara, where he first accepted the service of Procopius, the faithful companion, and diligent historian, of his exploits.<sup>f</sup> The Mirranes of Persia advanced, with forty thousand of her best troops, to raze the fortifications of Dara; and signified the day and the hour on which the citizens should prepare a bath for his refreshment after the toils of victory. He encountered an adversary equal to himself, by the new title of *General of the East*; his superior in the science of war, but much inferior in the number and quality of his troops, which amounted only to twenty-five thousand Romans and strangers, relaxed in their discipline, and humbled by recent disasters. As the level plain of Dara refused all shelter to stratagem and ambush, Belisarius protected his front with a deep trench, which was prolonged at first in perpendicular, and afterwards in parallel, lines, to cover the wings of cavalry advantageously posted to command the flanks and rear of the enemy. When the Roman centre was shaken, their well-timed and rapid charge decided the conflict: the standard of Persia fell; the *immortals* fled; the infantry threw away their bucklers, and eight thousand of the vanquished were left on the field of battle. In the next campaign, Syria was invaded on the side of the desert; and Belisarius, with twenty thousand men, hastened from Dara to the relief of the province. During the whole summer, the designs of the enemy were baffled by his skilful dispositions: he

<sup>f</sup> The two first Persian campaigns of Belisarius are fairly and copiously related by his secretary, (Persic. l. i, c. 12-18).

pressed their retreat, occupied each night their camp of the preceding day, and would have secured a bloodless victory, if he could have resisted the impatience of his own troops. Their valiant promise was faintly supported in the hour of battle: the right wing was exposed by the treacherous or cowardly desertion of the Christian Arabs; the Huns, a veteran band of eight hundred warriors, were oppressed by superior numbers; the flight of the Isaurians was intercepted; but the Roman infantry stood firm on the left, for Belisarius himself, dismounting from his horse, shewed them that intrepid despair was their only safety. They turned their backs to the Euphrates, and their faces to the enemy; innumerable arrows glanced without effect from the compact and shelving order of their bucklers; an impenetrable line of pikes was opposed to the repeated assaults of the Persian cavalry; and after a resistance of many hours, the remaining troops were skilfully embarked under the shadow of the night. - The Persian commander retired with disorder and disgrace, to answer a strict account of the lives of so many soldiers which he had consumed in a barren victory. But the fame of Belisarius was not sullied by a defeat, in which alone he had saved his army from the consequences of their own rashness: the approach of peace relieved him from the guard of the eastern frontier, and his conduct in the sedition of Constantinople amply discharged his obligations to the emperor. When the African war became the topic of popular discourse and secret deliberation, each of the Roman generals was apprehensive, rather than

CHAP. ambitious, of the dangerous honour; but as soon  
 XLI. as Justinian had declared his preference of superior merit, their envy was rekindled by the unanimous applause which was given to the choice of Belisarius. The temper of the Byzantine court may encourage a suspicion, that the hero was darkly assisted by the intrigues of his wife, the fair and subtle Antonina, who alternately enjoyed the confidence, and incurred the hatred, of the empress Theodora. The birth of Antonina was ignoble; she descended from a family of charioteers; and her chastity has been stained with the foulest reproach. Yet she reigned with long and absolute power over the mind of her illustrious husband; and if Antonina disdained the merit of conjugal fidelity, she expressed a manly friendship to Belisarius, whom she accompanied with undaunted resolution in all the hardships and dangers of a military life.<sup>6</sup>

Preparations for the African war, A. D. 533.

The preparations for the African war were not unworthy of the last contest between Rome and Carthage. The pride and flower of the army consisted of the guards of Belisarius, who, according to the pernicious indulgence of the times, devoted themselves by a particular oath of fidelity to the service of their patron. Their strength and stature, for which they had been curiously selected, the goodness of their horses and armour, and the assiduous practice of all the exercises of war, enabled them to act whatever their courage might prompt;

<sup>6</sup> See the birth and character of Antonina, in the Anecdotes, c. 1, and the notes of Alemannus, p. 3.

CHAP.

XII.

and their courage was exalted by the social honour of their rank, and the personal ambition of favour and fortune. Four hundred of the bravest of the Heruli marched under the banner of the faithful and active Pharas; their untractable valour was more highly prized than the tame submission of the Greeks and Syrians; and of such importance was it deemed to procure a reinforcement of six hundred Massagetæ, or Huns, that they were allured by fraud and deceit to engage in a naval expedition. Five thousand horse and ten thousand foot were embarked at Constantinople for the conquest of Africa; but the infantry, for the most part levied in Thrace and Isauria, yielded to the more prevailing use and reputation of the cavalry; and the Scythian bow was the weapon on which the armies of Rome were now reduced to place their principal dependence. From a laudable desire to assert the dignity of his theme, Procopius defends the soldiers of his own time against the morose critics, who confined that respectable name to the heavy-armed warriors of antiquity, and maliciously observed, that the word *archer* is introduced by Homer<sup>a</sup> as a term of contempt. "Such contempt " might perhaps be due to the naked youths who " appeared on foot in the fields of Troy, and, " lurking behind a tomb-stone, or the shield of a

<sup>a</sup> See the preface of Procopius. The enemies of archery might quote the reproaches of Diomedes, (*Iliad*, A, 836, &c.), and the *permittere vulnera ventis* of Lucan, (viii, 384): yet the Romans could not despise the arrows of the Parthians; and in the siege of Troy, Pandarus, Paris, and Teucer, pierced those haughty warriors who insulted them as women or children.

CHAP.

XLI.

“ friend, drew the bow-string to their breast,<sup>f</sup>  
 “ and dismissed a feeble and lifeless arrow. But  
 “ our archers (pursues the historian) are mounted  
 “ on horses, which they manage with admirable  
 “ skill; their head and shoulders are protected by  
 “ a cask or buckler; they wear greaves of iron on  
 “ their legs, and their bodies are guarded by a coat  
 “ of mail. On their right side hangs a quiver, a  
 “ sword on their left, and their hand is accustom-  
 “ ed to wield a lance, or javelin, in closer combat.  
 “ Their bows are strong and weighty; they shoot  
 “ in every possible direction, advancing, retreat-  
 “ ing, to the front, to the rear, or to either flank;  
 “ and as they are taught to draw the bow-string  
 “ not to the breast, but to the right ear, firm in-  
 “ deed must be the armour that can resist the ra-  
 “ pid violence of their shaft.” Five hundred trans-  
 ports, navigated by twenty thousand mariners  
 of Egypt, Cilicia, and Ionia, were collected in the  
 harbour of Constantinople. The smallest of these  
 vessels may be computed at thirty, the largest at  
 five hundred tons; and the fair average will sup-  
 ply an allowance, liberal, but not profuse, of about  
 one hundred thousand tons,<sup>k</sup> for the reception of

<sup>f</sup> Νιῦρη μὲν μάχῃ πιλάσσει, τοῦ δὲ σιδήρου, (Iliad. Δ., 123). How con-  
 cise—how just—how beautiful is the whole picture! I see the atti-  
 tudes of the archer—I hear the twanging of the bow,—

Διγῆς βίαις, νιῦρη δὲ μεγ' ἰαχίν, αὐτο δ' αἶσος.

<sup>k</sup> The text appears to allow for the largest vessels 50,000 medimni,  
 or 3000 tons, (since the *medimnus* weighed 160 Roman, or 120 aver-  
 dupois, pounds). I have given a more rational interpretation, by  
 supposing that the Attic style of Procopius conceals the legal and po-  
 pular *medius*, a sixth part of the *medimnus*, (Hooper's Ancient Measures,

thirty-five thousand soldiers and sailors, of five thousand horses, of arms, engines, and military stores, and of a sufficient stock of water and provisions for a voyage, perhaps, of three months. The proud galleys, which in former ages swept the Mediterranean with so many hundred oars, had long since disappeared; and the fleet of Justinian was escorted only by ninety-two light brigantines, covered from the missile weapons of the enemy, and rowed by two thousand of the brave and robust youth of Constantinople. Twenty-two generals are named, most of whom were afterwards distinguished in the wars of Africa and Italy; but the supreme command, both by land and sea, was delegated to Belisarius alone, with a boundless power of acting according to his discretion, as if the emperor himself were present. The separation of the naval and military professions is at once the effect and the cause of the modern improvements in the science of navigation and maritime war.

In the seventh year of the reign of Justinian, and about the time of the summer solstice, the whole fleet of six hundred ships was ranged in martial pomp before the gardens of the palace. The patriarch pronounced his benediction, the emperor signified his last commands, the general's trumpet gave the signal of departure, and every heart, according to its fears or wishes, explored

Departure  
of the  
fleet,  
A. D. 533,  
June.

p. 152, &c.). A contrary, and indeed a stranger, mistake, has crept into an oration of Dinarchus, (contra Demosthenem, in Reiske Orator. Græc. tom. iv, P. ii, p. 34). By reducing the number of ships from 500 to 50, and translating *μείζονας* by *mines*, or pounds, Cousin has generously allowed 500 tons for the whole of the imperial fleet!—  
Did he never think?

CHAP.  
XII

with anxious curiosity the omens of misfortune and success. The first halt was made at Perinthus or Heraclea, where Belisarius waited five days to receive some Thracian horses, a military gift of his sovereign. From thence the fleet pursued their course through the midst of the Propontis; but as they struggled to pass the straits of the Hellespont, an unfavourable wind detained them four days at Abydos, where the general exhibited a memorable lesson of firmness and severity. Two of the Huns, who, in a drunken quarrel, had slain one of their fellow-soldiers, were instantly shewn to the army suspended on a lofty gibbet. The national indignity was represented by their countrymen, who disclaimed the servile laws of the empire, and asserted the free privilege of Scythia, where a small fine was allowed to expiate the hasty sallies of intemperance and anger. Their complaints were specious, their clamours were loud, and the Romans were not averse to the example of disorder and impunity. But the rising sedition was appeased by the authority and eloquence of the general: and he represented to the assembled troops the obligation of justice, the importance of discipline, the rewards of piety and virtue, and the unpardonable guilt of murder, which, in his apprehension, was aggravated rather than excused by the vice of intoxication.<sup>1</sup> In the navigation from the Hellespont to Peloponnesus, which the Greeks,

<sup>1</sup> I have read of a Greek legislator, who inflicted a double penalty on the crimes committed in a state of intoxication; but it seems agreed that this was rather a political than a moral law.

after the siege of Troy, had performed in four days,<sup>m</sup> the fleet of Belisarius was guided in their course by his master-galley, conspicuous in the day by the redness of the sails, and in the night by the torches blazing from the mast-head. It was the duty of the pilots, as they steered between the islands, and turned the capes of Malea and Tænarium, to preserve the just order and regular intervals of such a multitude of ships; as the wind was fair and moderate, their labours were not unsuccessful, and the troops were safely disembarked at Methone on the Messenian coast, to repose themselves for a while after the fatigues of the sea. In this place they experienced how ~~avarice~~, invested with authority, may sport with the lives of thousands which are bravely exposed for the public service. According to military practice, the bread or biscuit of the Romans was twice prepared in the oven, and a diminution of one-fourth was cheerfully allowed for the loss of weight. To gain this miserable profit, and to save the expence of wood, the prefect John of Cappadocia had given orders that the flour should be slightly baked by the same fire which warmed the baths of Constantinople: and when the sacks were opened, a soft and mouldy paste was distributed to the army. Such unwholesome food, assisted by the heat of the climate and season, soon produced an epidemical

<sup>m</sup> Or even in three days, since they anchored the first evening in the neighbouring isle of Tenedos: the second day they sailed to Lesbos, the third to the promontory of Eubœa, and on the fourth they reached Argos, (Homer, *Odysse* 1, 130-183. Wood's Essay on Homer, p. 40-46). A pirate sailed from the Hellespont to the seaport at Sparta in three days, (Xenophon, *Hellen.* l. ii, c. 1).

CHAP. disease, which swept away five hundred soldiers,  
 XLI. Their health was restored by the diligence of Belisarius, who provided fresh bread at Methone, and boldly expressed his just and humane indignation: the emperor heard his complaint; the general was praised; but the minister was not punished. From the port of Methone, the pilots steered along the western coast of Peloponnesus, as far as the isle of Zacynthus or Zant, before they undertook the voyage (in their eyes a most arduous voyage) of one hundred leagues over the Ionian sea. As the fleet was surprised by a calm, sixteen days were consumed in the slow navigation; and even the general would have suffered the intolerable hardship of thirst, if the ingenuity of Antonina had not preserved the water in glass bottles, which she buried deep in the sand in a part of the ship impervious to the rays of the sun. At length the harbour of Caucana,<sup>a</sup> on the southern side of Sicily, afforded a secure and hospitable shelter. The Gothic officers who governed the island in the name of the daughter and grandson of Theodoric, obeyed their imprudent orders, to receive the troops of Justinian like friends and allies; provisions were liberally supplied, the cavalry was remounted,<sup>o</sup> and Procopius soon returned from Syracuse with correct information of the state and

<sup>a</sup> Caucana, near Camarina, is at least 50 miles (350 or 400 stadia) from Syracuse, (Cluver, *Sicilia Antiqua*, p. 191).

<sup>o</sup> Procopius, *Gothic*. l. i, c. 3. Tibi tollit hinnitum apta quadrigis equa, in the Sicilian pastures of Grosphus, (*Horat. Carm.* ii, 16). Acragas . . . magnanimū quondam generator equorum, (*Virg. Æneid.* iii, 704). Thero's horses, whose victories are immortalized by Pindar, were bred in this country.

designs of the Vandals. His intelligence deter-  
 mined Belisarius to hasten his operations, and  
 his wise impatience was seconded by the winds.  
 The fleet lost sight of Sicily, passed before the  
 isle of Malta, discovered the capes of Africa, ran  
 along the coast with a strong gale from the  
 north-east, and finally cast anchor at the pro-  
 montory of Caput Vada, about five days journey  
 to the south of Carthage.<sup>p</sup>

CHAP.

XII

Belisarius  
 lands on  
 the coast  
 of Africa—  
 September.

If Gelimer had been informed of the approach  
 of the enemy, he must have delayed the conquest  
 of Sardinia, for the immediate defence of his per-  
 son and kingdom. A detachment of five thousand  
 soldiers, and one hundred and twenty galleys,  
 would have joined the remaining forces of the  
 Vandals; and the descendant of Genseric might  
 have surprised and oppressed a fleet of deep-laden  
 transports, incapable of action, and of light brig-  
 antines, that seemed only qualified for flight. Be-  
 lisarius had secretly trembled when he overheard  
 his soldiers, in the passage, emboldening each  
 other to confess their apprehensions: if they were  
 once on shore, they hoped to maintain the  
 honour of their arms; but if they should be at-  
 tacked at sea, they did not blush to acknowledge  
 that they wanted courage to contend at the same  
 time with the winds, the waves, and the bar-  
 barians.<sup>q</sup> The knowledge of their sentiments

<sup>p</sup> The Caput vada of Procopius, (where Justinian afterwards founded a city—de Edific. l. vi, c. 6), is the promontory of Ammon in Strabo, the Brachodes of Ptolemy, the Capaudia of the moderns, a long narrow slip that runs into the sea, (Shaw's Travels, p. 111).

<sup>q</sup> A centurion of Mark Antony expressed, though in a more manly strain, the same dislike to the sea and to naval combats, (Plutarch in Antonio, p. 1730, edit. Hen. Steph.).

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

decided Belisarius to seize the first opportunity of landing them on the coast of Africa; and he prudently rejected, in a council of war, the proposal of sailing with the fleet and army into the port of Carthage. Three months after their departure from Constantinople, the men and horses, the arms and military stores, were safely disembarked, and five soldiers were left as a guard on board each of the ships, which were disposed in the form of a semicircle. The remainder of the troops occupied a camp on the sea-shore, which they fortified, according to ancient discipline, with a ditch and rampart; and the discovery of a source of fresh water, while it allayed the thirst, excited the superstitious confidence of the Romans. The next morning, some of the neighbouring gardens were pillaged; and Belisarius, after chastising the offenders, embraced the slight occasion, but the decisive moment, of inculcating the maxims of justice, moderation, and genuine policy.—“When I first accepted the commission “of subduing Africa, I depended much less,” said the general, “on the numbers, or even the “bravery, of my troops, than upon the friendly “disposition of the natives, and their immortal “hatred to the Vandals. You alone can deprive “me of this hope: if you continue to extort by “rapine what might be purchased for a little “money, such acts of violence will reconcile “these implacable enemies, and unite them in a “just and holy league against the invaders of “their country.” These exhortations were enforced by a rigid discipline, of which the soldiers

themselves soon felt and praised the salutary effects. The inhabitants, instead of deserting their houses, or hiding their corn, supplied the Romans with a fair and liberal market: the civil officers of the province continued to exercise their functions in the name of Justinian; and the clergy, from motives of conscience and interest, assiduously laboured to promote the cause of a catholic emperor. The small town of Sullecte,\* one day's journey from the camp, had the honour of being foremost to open her gates, and to resume her ancient allegiance: the larger cities of Leptis and Adrumetum imitated the example of loyalty as soon as Belisarius appeared; and he advanced without opposition as far as Grasse, a palace of the Vandal kings, at the distance of fifty miles from Carthage. The weary Romans indulged themselves in the refreshment of shady groves, cool fountains, and delicious fruits; and the preference which Procopius allows to these gardens over any that he had seen, either in the East or West, may be ascribed either to the taste or the fatigue of the historian. In three generations prosperity and a warm climate had dissolved the hardy virtue of the Vandals, who insensibly became the most luxurious of mankind. In their villas and gardens, which might deserve the Per-

\* Sullecte is perhaps the Turris Hannibalis, an old building, now as large as the tower of London. The march of Belisarius to Leptis, Adrumetum, &c. is illustrated by the campaign of Cæsar, (Hirtius, de Bello Africano, with the Analyse of Guichardt), and Shaw's Travels, (p. 105-113), in the same country.

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

sian name of *paradise*,<sup>3</sup> they enjoyed a cool and elegant repose; and, after the daily use of the bath, the barbarians were seated at a table profusely spread with the delicacies of the land and sea. Their silken robes, loosely flowing, after the fashion of the Medes, were embroidered with gold: love and hunting were the labours of their life; and their vacant hours were amused by pantomimes, chariot-races, and the music and dances of the theatre.

Defeats the  
Vandals in  
a first bat-  
tle.

In a march of ten or twelve days, the vigilance of Belisarius was constantly awake and active against his unseen enemies, by whom, in every place, and at every hour, he might be suddenly attacked. An officer of confidence and merit, John the Armenian, led the vanguard of three hundred horse; six hundred Massagetae covered at a certain distance the left flank; and the whole fleet steering along the coast, seldom lost sight of the army, which moved each day about twelve miles, and lodged in the evening in strong camps or in friendly towns. The near approach of the Romans to Carthage filled the mind of Gelimer with anxiety and terror. He prudently wished to protract the war till his brother, with his veteran troops, should return from the conquest of Sardinia; and he now lamented the rash policy of his ancestors, who, by

<sup>3</sup> Παράδεισος καλλίςτος ἀπικινστων ἐν ημεῖς ἵσμεν. The paradises, a name and fashion adopted from Persia, may be represented by the royal garden of Isfahan, (Voyage d'Olearius, p. 774). See, in the Greek romances, their most perfect model, (Longus, Pastoral. l. iv, p. 99-101. Achilles Tatius, l. i, p. 22, 23).

destroying the fortifications of Africa, had left him only the dangerous resource of risking a battle in the neighbourhood of his capital. The Vandal conquerors, from their original number of fifty thousand, were multiplied, without including their women and children, to one hundred and sixty thousand fighting men: and such forces, animated with valour and union, might have crushed, at their first landing, the feeble and exhausted bands of the Roman general. But the friends of the captive king were more inclined to accept the invitations, than to resist the progress, of Belisarius; and many a proud barbarian disguised his aversion to war under the more specious name of his hatred to the usurper. Yet the authority and promises of Gelimer collected a formidable army, and his plans were concerted with some degree of military skill. An order was despatched to his brother Ammatas, to collect all the forces of Carthage, and to encounter the van of the Roman army at the distance of ten miles from the city; his nephew Gibamund, with two thousand horse, was destined to attack their left, when the monarch himself, who silently followed, should charge their rear, in a situation which excluded them from the aid or even the view of their fleet. But the rashness of Ammatas was fatal to himself and his country. He anticipated the hour of attack, outstripped his tardy followers, and was pierced with a mortal wound, after he had slain with his own hand twelve of his boldest antagonists. His Vandals fled to Carthage; the highway, almost

CHAP.

XLI.

ten miles, was strewed with dead bodies; and it seemed incredible that such multitudes could be slaughtered by the swords of three hundred Romans. The nephew of Gelimer was defeated after a slight combat by the six hundred Massagetæ: they did not equal the third part of his numbers: but each Scythian was fired by the example of his chief, who gloriously exercised the privilege of his family, by riding foremost and alone to shoot the first arrow against the enemy. In the meanwhile, Gelimer himself, ignorant of the event, and misguided by the windings of the hills, inadvertently passed the Roman army, and reached the scene of action where Ammatas had fallen. He wept the fate of his brother and of Carthage, charged with irresistible fury the advancing squadrons, and might have pursued, and perhaps decided, the victory, if he had not wasted those inestimable moments in the discharge of a vain, though pious, duty to the dead. While his spirit was broken by this mournful office, he heard the trumpet of Belisarius, who leaving Antonina and his infantry in the camp, pressed forwards with his guards and the remainder of the cavalry to rally his flying troops, and to restore the fortune of the day. Much room could not be found in this disorderly battle for the talents of a general; but the king fled before the hero; and the Vandals, accustomed only to a Moorish enemy, were incapable of withstanding the arms and discipline of the Romans. Gelimer retired with hasty steps towards the desert of Numidia; but he had soon the consolation of learning that his

private orders for the execution of Hilderic and his captive friends had been faithfully obeyed. CHAP. XLI.  
 The tyrant's revenge was useful only to his enemies. The death of a lawful prince excited the compassion of his people; his life might have perplexed the victorious Romans; and the lieutenant of Justinian, by a crime of which he was innocent, was relieved from the painful alternative of forfeiting his honour or relinquishing his conquests.

As soon as the tumult had subsided, the several parts of the army informed each other of the accidents of the day; and Belisarius pitched his camp on the field of victory, to which the tenth mile-stone from Carthage had applied the Latin appellation of *decimus*. From a wise suspicion of the stratagems and resources of the Vandals, he marched the next day in order of battle, halted in the evening before the gates of Carthage, and allowed a night of repose, that he might not, in darkness and disorder, expose the city to the license of the soldiers, or the soldiers themselves to the secret ambush of the city. But as the fears of Belisarius were the result of calm and intrepid reason, he was soon satisfied that he might confide, without danger, in the peaceful and friendly aspect of the capital. Carthage blazed with innumerable torches, the signals of the public joy; the chain was removed that guarded the entrance of the port; the gates were thrown open, and the people, with acclamations of gratitude, hailed and invited their Roman deliverers. The defeat of the Vandals, and the freedom of Africa, were

Reduction  
of Car-  
thage,  
A. D. 533,  
Sept. 15.

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

announced to the city on the eve of St. Cyprian, when the churches were already adorned and illuminated for the festival of the martyr, whom three centuries of superstition had almost raised to a local deity. The Arians, conscious that their reign had expired, resigned the temple to the catholics, who rescued their saint from profane hands, performed the holy rites, and loudly proclaimed the creed of Athanasius and Justinian. One awful hour reversed the fortunes of the contending parties. The suppliant Vandals, who had so lately indulged the vices of conquerors, sought an humble refuge in the sanctuary of the church; while the merchants of the East were delivered from the deepest dungeon of the palace by their affrighted keeper, who implored the protection of his captives, and shewed them, through an aperture in the wall, the sails of the Roman fleet. After their separation from the army, the naval commanders had proceeded with slow caution along the coast, till they reached the Hermæan promontory, and obtained the first intelligence of the victory of Belisarius. Faithful to his instructions, they would have cast anchor about twenty miles from Carthage, if the more skilful seamen had not represented the perils of the shore, and the signs of an impending tempest. Still ignorant of the revolution, they declined, however, the rash attempt of forcing the chain of the port; and the adjacent harbour and suburb of Mandracium were insulted only by the rapine of a private officer who disobeyed and deserted his leaders. But the imperial fleet, advancing with

a fair wind, steered through the narrow entrance of the Goletta, and occupied in the deep and capacious lake of Tunis, a secure station about five miles from the capital.<sup>t</sup> No sooner was Belisarius informed of their arrival, than he despatched orders that the greatest part of the mariners should be immediately landed to join the triumph, and to swell the apparent numbers of the Romans. Before he allowed them to enter the gates of Carthage, he exhorted them, in a discourse worthy of himself and the occasion, not to disgrace the glory of their arms; and to remember that the Vandals had been the tyrants, but that *they were the deliverers of the Africans, who must now be respected as the voluntary and affectionate subjects of their common sovereign.* The Romans marched through the streets in close ranks, prepared for battle if an enemy had appeared; the strict order maintained by the general, imprinted on their minds the duty of obedience; and in an age in which custom and impunity almost sanctified the abuse of conquest, the genius of one man repressed the passions of a victorious army. The voice of menace and complaint was silent; the trade of Carthage was not interrupted; while Africa changed her master and her govern-

<sup>t</sup> The neighbourhood of Carthage, the sea, the land, and the rivers, are changed almost as much as the works of man. The isthmus, or neck, of the city is now confounded with the continent; the harbour is a dry plain; and the lake, or stagnum, no more than a morass, with six or seven feet water in the mid-channel. See d'Anville, (*Géographie Ancienne*, tom. iii, p. 82); Shaw, (*Travels*, p. 77-84); Marmol. (*Description de l'Afrique*, tom. ii, p. 465), and Thuanus, (*Cvili*, 12, tom. iii, p. 334).

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

ment, the shops continued open and busy; and the soldiers, after sufficient guards had been posted, modestly departed to the houses which were allotted for their reception. Belisarius fixed his residence in the palace; seated himself on the throne of Genseric; accepted and distributed the barbaric spoil; granted their lives to the suppliant Vandals; and laboured to repair the damage which the suburb of *Mandracium* had sustained in the preceding night. At supper he entertained his principal officers with the form and magnificence of a royal banquet.\* The victor was respectfully served by the captive officers of the household; and in the moments of festivity, when the impartial spectators applauded the fortune and merit of Belisarius, his envious flatterers secretly shed their venom on every word and gesture which might alarm the suspicions of a jealous monarch. One day was given to these pompous scenes, which may not be despised as useless, if they attracted the popular veneration; but the active mind of Belisarius, which in the pride of victory could suppose a defeat, had already resolved, that the Roman empire in Africa should not depend on the chance of arms, or the favour of the people. The fortifications of Carthage had alone been exempted from the general proscription; but in the reign of ninety-five years they were suffered to decay by the thoughtless

\* From Delphi, the name of *Delphicum* was given, both in Greek and Latin, to a tripod: and, by an easy analogy, the same appellation was extended at Rome, Constantinople, and Carthage, to the royal banqueting room. (Procopius, *Vandal. l. i, c. 21.* Ducange, *Gloss. Græc. p. 277.* *Δελφικόν*, ad *Alexiad. p. 412.*)

and indolent Vandals. A wiser conqueror restored with incredible despatch the walls and ditches of the city. His liberality encouraged the workmen; the soldiers, the mariners, and the citizens, vied with each other in the salutary labour; and Gelimer, who had feared to trust his person in an open town, beheld with astonishment and despair the rising strength of an impregnable fortress.

That unfortunate monarch, after the loss of his capital, applied himself to collect the remains of an army scattered, rather than destroyed, by the preceding battle; and the hopes of pillage attracted some Moorish bands to the standard of Gelimer. He encamped in the fields of Bulla, four days journey from Carthage; insulted the capital, which he deprived of the use of an aqueduct; proposed an high reward for the head of every Roman; affected to spare the persons and property of his African subjects, and secretly negotiated with the Arian sectaries and the confederate Huns. Under these circumstances, the conquest of Sardinia served only to aggravate his distress; he reflected with the deepest anguish, that he had wasted, in that useless enterprise, five thousand of his bravest troops; and he read, with grief and shame, the victorious letters of his brother Zano, who expressed a sanguine confidence that the king, after the example of their ancestors, had already chastised the rashness of the Roman invader. "Alas! my brother," replied Gelimer, "Heaven has declared against our unhappy nation. While you have subdued Sar-

Final defeat of Gelimer and the Vandals, A. D. 533, Novem-ber.

CHAP.

XLI.

“ dinia, we have lost Africa. No sooner did  
“ Belisarius appear with a handful of soldiers,  
“ than courage and prosperity deserted the cause  
“ of the Vandals. Your nephew Gibamund, your  
“ brother Ammatas, have been betrayed to death  
“ by the cowardice of their followers. Our  
“ horses, our ships, Carthage itself, and all Afri-  
“ ca, are in the power of the enemy. Yet  
“ the Vandals still prefer an ignominious repose,  
“ at the expence of their wives and children,  
“ their wealth and liberty. Nothing now re-  
“ mains, except the field of Bulla, and the hope  
“ of your valour. Abandon Sardinia; fly to our  
“ relief; restore our empire, or perish by our  
“ side.” On the receipt of this epistle, Zano  
imparted his grief to the principal Vandals; but  
the intelligence was prudently concealed from  
the natives of the island. The troops embarked  
in one hundred and twenty galleys at the port  
of Cagliari, cast anchor the third day on the  
confines of Mauritania, and hastily pursued their  
march to join the royal standard in the camp of  
Bulla. Mournful was the interview: the two  
brothers embraced; they wept in silence; no  
questions were asked of the Sardinian victory;  
no inquiries were made of the African misfor-  
tunes: they saw before their eyes the whole ex-  
tent of their calamities; and the absence of their  
wives and children afforded a melancholy proof,  
that either death or captivity had been their lot.  
The languid spirit of the Vandals was at length  
awakened and united by the entreaties of their  
king, the example of Zano, and the instant

danger which threatened their monarchy and religion. The military strength of the nation advanced to battle; and such was the rapid increase, that, before their army reached Tricameron, about twenty miles from Carthage, they might boast, perhaps with some exaggeration, that they surpassed, in a tenfold proportion, the diminutive powers of the Romans. But these powers were under the command of Belisarius: and, as he was conscious of their superior merit, he permitted the barbarians to surprise him at an unseasonable hour. The Romans were instantly under arms: a rivulet covered their front; the cavalry formed the first line, which Belisarius supported in the centre, at the head of five hundred guards; the infantry, at some distance, was posted in the second line; and the vigilance of the general watched the separate station and ambiguous faith of the Massagetæ, who secretly reserved their aid for the conquerors. The historian has inserted, and the reader may easily supply, the speeches\* of the commanders, who, by arguments the most apposite to their situation, inculcated the importance of victory, and the contempt of life. Zano, with the troops which had followed him to the conquest of Sardinia, was placed in the centre; and the throne of Genseric might have stood, if the multitude of Vandals had imitated their intrepid resolution. Casting away their lances and missile weapons, they drew

\* These orations always express the sense of the times, and sometimes of the actors. I have condensed that sense, and thrown away declamation.

CHAP. their swords, and expected the charge: the Ro-  
XLI.  
man cavalry thrice passed the rivulet; they were  
thrice repulsed; and the conflict was firmly main-  
tained, till Zano fell, and the standard of Beli-  
sarius was displayed. Gelimer retreated to his  
camp; the Huns joined the pursuit; and the  
victors despoiled the bodies of the slain. Yet  
no more than fifty Romans, and eight hundred  
Vandals, were found on the field of battle; so  
inconsiderable was the carnage of a day, which  
extinguished a nation, and transferred the empire  
of Africa. In the evening, Belisarius led his in-  
fantry to the attack of the camp; and the pusil-  
lanimous flight of Gelimer exposed the vanity of  
his recent declarations, that, to the vanquished,  
death was a relief, like a burden, and infamy the  
only object of terror. His departure was secret;  
but as soon as the Vandals discovered that their  
king had deserted them, they hastily dispersed,  
anxious only for their personal safety, and careless  
of every object that is dear or valuable to man-  
kind. The Romans entered the camp without  
resistance; and the wildest scenes of disorder were  
veiled in the darkness and confusion of the night.  
Every barbarian who met their swords was in-  
humanly massacred; their widows and daughters,  
as rich heirs, or beautiful concubines, were em-  
braced by the licentious soldiers; and avarice it-  
self was almost satiated with the treasures of gold  
and silver, the accumulated fruits of conquest or  
economy in a long period of prosperity and  
peace. In this frantic search, the troops, even of  
Belisarius, forgot their caution and respect. In-

toxicated with lust and rapine, they explored in small parties, or alone, the adjacent fields, the woods, the rocks, and the caverns, that might possibly conceal any desirable prize: laden with booty, they deserted their ranks, and wandered, without a guide, on the high road to Carthage; and if the flying enemies had dared to return, very few of the conquerors would have escaped. Deeply sensible of the disgrace and danger, Belisarius passed an apprehensive night in the field of victory: at the dawn of day, he planted his standard on a hill, recalled his guards and veterans, and gradually restored the modesty and obedience of the camp. ~~It was equally the concern~~ of the Roman general to subdue the hostile, and to save the prostrate barbarian; and the suppliant Vandals, who could be found only in churches, were protected by his authority, disarmed, and separately confined, ~~that they might~~ neither disturb the public peace, nor become the victims of popular revenge. After despatching a light detachment to tread the footsteps of Gelimér, he advanced with his whole army, about ten days march, as far as Hippo Regius, which no longer possessed the relics of St. Augustin.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> The relics of St. Augustin were carried by the African bishops to their Sardinian exile, (A. D. 500), and it was believed in the viiith century, that Liutprand, king of the Lombards, transported them (A. D. 721) from Sardinia to Pavia. In the year 1695, the Augustin friars of that city found a brick arch, marble coffin, silver case, silk wrapper, bones, blood, &c. and perhaps an inscription of Agostino, in Gothic letters. But this useful discovery has been disputed by reason and jealousy, (Baronius, Annal. A. D. 725, N°. 2-9. Tillemont, Mem,

CHAP.  
XLI.

Conquest  
of Africa  
by Belisa-  
rius,  
A. D. 534.

The season, and the certain intelligence that the Vandal had fled to the inaccessible country of the Moors, determined Belisarius to relinquish the vain pursuit, and to fix his winter-quarters at Carthage. From thence he despatched his principal lieutenant, to inform the emperor, that in the space of three months he had achieved the conquest of Africa.

Belisarius spoke the language of truth. The surviving Vandals yielded, without resistance, their arms and their freedom: the neighbourhood of Carthage submitted to his presence; and the more distant provinces were successively subdued by the report of his victory. Tripoli was confirmed in her voluntary allegiance; Sardinia and Corsica surrendered to an officer, who carried, instead of a sword, the head of the valiant Zano; and the isles of Majorca, Minorca, and Yvica, consented to remain an humble appendage of the African kingdom. Cæsarea, a royal city, which in looser geography may be confounded with the modern Algiers, was situate thirty days march to the westward of Carthage: by land, the road was infested by the Moors; but the sea was open, and the Romans were now masters of the sea. An active and discreet tribune sailed as far as the Straits, where he occupied Septem or Ceuta,\*

Mem. Eccles. tom. xiii, p. 944. Montfaucon, *Diarium Ital.* p. 26-30. Muratori. *Antiq. Ital. Medii Ævi*, tom. v, dissert. lviii, p. 9, who had composed a separate treatise before the decree of the bishop of Pavia, and Pope Benedict XIII).

\* Τα τῆς πολιτείας προίμια, is the expression of Procopius, (*de Edific.* l. vi, c. 7). Ceuta, which has been defaced by the Portuguese, flourished in nobles

which rises opposite to Gibraltar on the African coast; that remote place was afterwards adorned and fortified by Justinian; and he seems to have indulged the vain ambition of extending his empire to the columns of Hercules. He received the messengers of victory at the time when he was preparing to publish the pandects of the Roman law; and the devout or jealous emperor celebrated the divine goodness, and confessed, in silence, the merit of his successful general.<sup>a</sup> Impatient to abolish the temporal and spiritual tyranny of the Vandals, he proceeded, without delay, to the full establishment of the catholic church. Her jurisdiction, wealth, and immunities, perhaps the most essential part of episcopal religion, were restored and amplified with a liberal hand; the Arian worship was suppressed; the Donatist meetings were proscribed;<sup>b</sup> and the synod of Carthage, by the voice of two hundred and seventeen bishops,<sup>c</sup> applauded the just measure of pious retaliation. On such an occasion, it may not be presumed, that many

nobles and palaces, in agriculture and manufactures, under the more prosperous reign of the Arabs, (*l'Afrique de Marmol*, tom. ii, p. 236).

<sup>a</sup> See the second and third preambles to the Digest, or Pandects, promulgated A. D. 533, December 16. To the titles of *Vandalicus* and *Africanus*, Justinian, or rather Belisarius, had acquired a just claim: *Gothicus* was premature, and *Francicus* false, and offensive to a great nation.

<sup>b</sup> See the original acts in Baronius, (A. D. 535, N°. 21-54). The emperor applauds his own clemency to the heretics, *cum sufficiat eis vivere*.

<sup>c</sup> Dupin (*Geograph. Sacra Africana*, p. lix, ad Optat. Milev.) observes and bewails this episcopal decay. In the more prosperous age of the church, he had noticed 690 bishoprics; but however minute were the diocesses, it is not probable that they all existed at the same time.

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

orthodox prelates were absent ; but the comparative smallness of their number, which in ancient councils had been twice or even thrice multiplied, most clearly indicates the decay both of the church and state. While Justinian approved himself the defender of the faith, he entertained an ambitious hope, that his victorious lieutenant would speedily enlarge the narrow limits of his dominion to the space which they occupied before the invasion of the Moors and Vandals ; and Belisarius was instructed to establish five *dukes* or commanders in the convenient stations of Tripoli, Leptis, Cirta, Cæsarea, and Sardinia, and to compute the military force of *palatines* or *borderers* that might be sufficient for the defence of Africa. The kingdom of the Vandals was not unworthy of the presence of a pretorian prefect ; and four consulars, three presidents, were appointed to administer the seven provinces under his civil jurisdiction. The number of their subordinate officers, clerks, messengers, or assistants, was minutely expressed ; three hundred and ninety-six for the prefect himself, fifty for each of his vicegerents ; and the rigid definition of their fees and salaries was more effectual to confirm the right, than to prevent the abuse. These magistrates might be oppressive, but they were not idle : and the subtle questions of justice and revenue were infinitely propagated under the new government, which professed to revive the freedom and equity of the Roman republic. The conqueror was solicitous to exact a prompt and plentiful supply from his

African subjects; and he allowed them to claim, even in the third degree, and from the collateral line, the houses and lands of which their families had been unjustly despoiled by the Vandals. After the departure of Belisarius, who acted by an high and special commission, no ordinary provision was made for a master-general of the forces; but the office of pretorian prefect was intrusted to a soldier; the civil and military powers were united, according to the practice of Justinian, in the chief governor; and the representative of the emperor in Africa, as well as in Italy, was soon distinguished by the appellation of Exarch.<sup>d</sup>

Yet the conquest of Africa was imperfect, till her former sovereign was delivered, either alive or dead, into the hands of the Romans. Doubtful of the event, Gelimer had given secret orders that a part of his treasure should be transported to Spain, where he hoped to find a secure refuge at the court of the king of the Visigoths. But these intentions were disappointed by accident, treachery, and the indefatigable pursuit of his enemies, who intercepted his flight from the seashore, and chased the unfortunate monarch, with some faithful followers, to the inaccessible mountain of Papua,<sup>e</sup> in the inland country of Numidia.

Distress  
and capti-  
vity of  
Gelimer.  
A. D. 534,  
—the  
Spring.

<sup>d</sup> The African laws of Justinian are illustrated by his German biographer, Cod. l. i, tit. 27. Novell. 36, 37, 131. Vit. Justinian, p. 349-377.)

<sup>e</sup> Mount Papua is placed by d'Anville (tom. iii. p. 92, and Tabul. Imp. Rom. Occident.) near Hippo Regius and the sea; yet this situation ill agrees with the long pursuit beyond Hippo, and the words of Procopius, (l, ii, c. 4), *εἰς τοὺς Νυμίδας ὄρητας*.

CHAP.

XII.

He was immediately besieged by Pharas, an officer whose truth and sobriety were the more applauded, as such qualities could seldom be found among the Heruli, the most corrupt of the barbarian tribes. To his vigilance Belisarius had intrusted this important charge; and, after a bold attempt to scale the mountain, in which he lost an hundred and ten soldiers, Pharas expected, during a winter siege, the operation of distress and famine on the mind of the Vandal king. From the softest habits of pleasure, from the unbounded command of industry and wealth, he was reduced to share the poverty of the Moors,\* supportable only to themselves by their ignorance of a happier condition. In their rude hovels, of mud and hurdles, which confined the smoke and excluded the light, they promiscuously slept on the ground, perhaps on a sheep-skin, with their wives, their children, and their cattle. Sordid and scanty were their garments; the use of bread and wine was unknown; and their oaten or barley cakes, imperfectly baked in the ashes, were devoured almost in a crude state by the hungry savages. The health of Gelimer must have sunk under these strange and unwonted hardships, from whatsoever cause they had been endured; but his actual misery was embittered by the recollection of past greatness, the daily insolence of his protectors, and the just apprehension, that the

\* Shaw (Trave's, p. 220) most accurately represents the manners of the Bedoweens and Kabyles, the last of whom, by their language, are the remnant of the Moors: yet how changed—how civilized are these modern savages!—provisions are plenty among them, and bread is common.

light and venal Moors might be tempted to betray the rights of hospitality. The knowledge of his situation dictated the humane and friendly epistle of Pharas. "Like yourself," said the chief of the Heruli, "I am an illiterate barbarian, but I speak the language of plain sense, and an honest heart. Why will you persist in hopeless obstinacy? Why will you ruin yourself, your family, and nation? The love of freedom and abhorrence of slavery? Alas! my dearest Geli-mer, are you not already the worst of slaves, the slave of the vile nation of the Moors? Would it not be preferable to sustain at Constantinople a life of poverty and servitude rather than to reign the undoubted monarch of the mountain of Papua? Do you think it a disgrace to be the subject of Justinian? Belisarius is his subject; and we ourselves, whose birth is not inferior to your own, are not ashamed of our obedience to the Roman emperor. That generous prince will grant you a rich inheritance of lands, a place in the senate, and the dignity of patrician: such are his gracious intentions, and you may depend with full assurance on the word of Belisarius. So long as heaven has condemned us to suffer, patience is a virtue; but if we reject the proffered deliverance, it degenerates into blind and stupid despair." "I am not insensible," replied the king of the Vandals, "how kind and rational is your advice. But I cannot persuade myself to become the slave of an unjust enemy, who has deserved my implacable hatred. Him

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

" I had never injured either by word or deed ;  
 " yet he has sent against me, I know not from  
 " whence, a certain Belisarius, who has cast me  
 " headlong from the throne into this abyss of mi-  
 " sery. Justinian is a man; he is a prince; does he  
 " not dread for himself a similar reverse of for-  
 " tune? I can write no more: my grief oppresses  
 " me. Send me, I beseech you, my dear Pharas,  
 " send me, a lyre,\* a sponge, and a loaf of bread."

From the Vandal messenger, Pharas was in-  
 formed of the motives of this singular request.  
 It was long since the king of Africa had tasted  
 bread; a defluxion had fallen on his eyes, the  
 effect of fatigue or incessant weeping; and he  
 wished to solace the melancholy hours, by singing  
 to the lyre the sad story of his own misfortunes.  
 The humanity of Pharas was moved; he sent the  
 three extraordinary gifts; but even his humanity  
 prompted him to redouble the vigilance of his  
 guard, that he might sooner compel his prisoner  
 to embrace a resolution advantageous to the Ro-  
 mans, but salutary to himself. The obstinacy of  
 Gelimer at length yielded to reason and necessity:  
 the solemn assurances of safety and honourable  
 treatment were ratified in the emperor's name, by  
 the ambassador of Belisarius; and the king of the  
 Vandals descended from the mountain. The first  
 public interview was in one of the suburbs of  
 Carthage, and when the royal captive accosted his

\* By Procopius it is styled a *lyre*; perhaps *harp* would have been more national. The instruments of music are thus distinguished by Venantius Fortunatus.—

Romanusque *lyrâ* tibi plaudat, Barbarus *harpâ*.

conqueror, he burst into a fit of laughter. The crowd might naturally believe, that extreme grief had deprived Gelimer of his senses; but in this mournful state, unseasonable mirth insinuated to more intelligent observers, that the vain and transitory scenes of human greatness are unworthy of a serious thought.<sup>a</sup>

Their contempt was soon justified by a new example of a vulgar truth; that flattery adheres to power, and envy to superior merit. The chiefs of the Roman army presumed to think themselves the rivals of an hero. Their private despatches maliciously affirmed, that the conqueror of Africa, strong in his reputation and the public love, conspired to seat himself on the throne of the Vandals. Justinian listened with too patient an ear; and his silence was the result of jealousy rather than of confidence. An honourable alternative, of remaining in the province, or of returning to the capital, was indeed submitted to the discretion of Belisarius; but he wisely concluded, from intercepted letters, and the knowledge of his sovereign's temper, that he must either resign his head, erect his standard, or confound his enemies by his presence and submission. Innocence and courage decided his choice: his guards, captives, and treasures, were diligently embarked; and so prosperous was the navigation, that his arrival at

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

Return and  
triumph of  
Belisarius,  
A. D. 534,  
Autumn.

<sup>a</sup> Herodotus elegantly describes the strange effects of grief in another royal captive, Psammetichus of Egypt, who wept at the lesser, and was silent at the greatest of his calamities, (l. iii, c. 14). In the interview of Paulus Æmilius and Perses, Belisarius might study his part: but it is probable that he never read either Livy or Plutarch; and it is certain that his generosity did not need a tutor.

CHAP.

XLI.

Constantinople preceded any certain account of his departure from the port of Carthage. Such unsuspecting loyalty removed the apprehensions of Justinian: envy was silenced and inflamed by the public gratitude; and the third Africanus obtained the honours of a triumph, a ceremony which the city of Constantinople had never seen, and which ancient Rome, since the reign of Tiberius, had reserved for the *auspicious* arms of the *Cæsars*.<sup>1</sup> From the palace of Belisarius, the procession was conducted through the principal streets to the hippodrome; and this memorable day seemed to avenge the injuries of Genseric, and to expiate the shame of the Romans. The wealth of nations was displayed, the trophies of martial or effeminate luxury; rich armour, golden thrones, and the chariots of state which had been used by the Vandal queen; the massy furniture of the royal banquet, the splendour of precious stones, the elegant forms of statues and vases, the more substantial treasure of gold, and the holy vessels of the Jewish temple, which, after their long peregrination, were respectfully deposited in the Christian church of Jerusalem. A long train of the noblest Vandals reluctantly exposed their lofty stature and manly countenance. Gelimer slowly advanced: he was clad in a purple robe, and still maintained the majesty of a king. Not a tear escaped from his eyes, not a sigh was heard; but his pride or

<sup>1</sup> After the title of *imperator* had lost the old military sense, and the Roman *auspices* were abolished by Christianity, (see La Bieterie, *Mém. de l'Académie*, tom. xxi, p. 302-332), a triumph might be given with less inconsistency to a private general.

piety derived some secret consolation from the words of Solomon,<sup>\*</sup> which he repeatedly pronounced, VANITY! VANITY! ALL IS VANITY! Instead of ascending a triumphal car drawn by four horses or elephants, the modest conqueror marched on foot at the head of his brave companions; his prudence might decline an honour too conspicuous for a subject: and his magnanimity might justly disdain what had been so often sullied by the vilest of tyrants. The glorious procession entered the gate of the hippodrome; was saluted by the acclamations of the senate and people; and halted before the throne where Justinian and Theodora were seated to receive the homage of the captive monarch and the victorious hero. They both performed the customary adoration; and falling prostrate on the ground, respectfully touched the footstool of a prince who had not unsheathed his sword, and of a prostitute who had danced on the theatre: some gentle violence was used to bend the stubborn spirit of the grandson of Genseric; and however trained to servitude, the genius of Belisarius must have secretly rebelled. He was immediately declared consul for the ensuing year, and the day of his inauguration resembled the pomp of a second triumph: his curule chair was borne aloft on the

His sole  
consulship,  
A. D. 535,  
January 1.

<sup>\*</sup> If the Ecclesiastes be truly a work of Solomon, and not, like Prior's poem, a pious and moral composition of more recent times, in his name, and on the subject of his repentance. The latter is the opinion of the learned and free-spirited Grotius, (Opp. Theolog. tom. i. p. 258); and indeed the Ecclesiastes and Proverbs display a larger compass of thought and experience than seem to belong either to a Jew or a king.

CHAP.

XLI.

shoulders of captive Vandals; and the spoils of war, gold cups, and rich girdles, were profusely scattered among the populace.

End of Ge-  
limer and  
the Van-  
dals,

But the purest reward of Belisarius was in the faithful execution of a treaty for which his honour had been pledged to the king of the Vandals. The religious scruples of Gelimer, who adhered to the Arian heresy, were incompatible with the dignity of senator or patrician: but he received from the emperor an ample estate in the province of Galatia, where the abdicated monarch retired with his family and friends, to a life of peace, of affluence, and perhaps of content.<sup>1</sup> The daughters of Hilderic were entertained with the respectful tenderness due to their age and misfortune; and Justinian and Theodora accepted the honour of educating and enriching the female descendants of the great Theodosius. The bravest of the Vandal youth were distributed into five squadrons of cavalry, which adopted the name of their benefactor, and supported in the Persian wars the glory of their ancestors. But these rare exceptions, the reward of birth or valour, are insufficient to explain the fate of a nation, whose numbers, before a short and bloodless war, amounted to more than six hundred thousand persons. After the exile of their king and nobles, the servile crowd might purchase their safety, by abjuring their character, religion, and

<sup>1</sup> In the Belisaire of Marmontel, the king and the conqueror of Africa meet, sup, and converse, without recollecting each other. It is surely a fault of that romance, that not only the hero, but all to whom he had been so conspicuously known, appear to have lost their eyes or their memory.

language; and their degenerate posterity would be insensibly mingled with the common herd of African subjects. Yet even in the present age, and in the heart of the Moorish tribes, a curious traveller has discovered the white complexion and long flaxen hair of a northern race;<sup>m</sup> and it was formerly believed, that the boldest of the Vandals fled beyond the power, or even the knowledge, of the Romans, to enjoy their solitary freedom on the shores of the Atlantic ocean.<sup>n</sup> Africa had been their empire, it became their prison; nor could they entertain an hope, or even a wish, of returning to the banks of the Elbe, where their brethren, of a spiritless adventurous, still wandered in their native forests. It was impossible for cowards to surmount the barriers of unknown seas and hostile barbarians: it was impossible for brave men to expose their nakedness and defeat before the eyes of their countrymen, to describe the kingdoms which they had lost, and to claim a share of the humble inheritance, which, in a happier hour, they had almost unanimously renounced.<sup>a</sup> In the country between the Elbe and

<sup>m</sup> Shaw, p. 53. Yet since Procopius (l. ii, c. 13) speaks of a people of mount Atlas, as already distinguished by white bodies and yellow hair, the phenomenon (which is likewise visible in the Andes of Peru, Buffon, tom. iii, p. 504) may naturally be ascribed to the elevation of the ground and the temperature of the air.

<sup>n</sup> The geographer of Ravenna (l. iii, c. xi, p. 129, 130, 131; Paris, 1688) describes the Mauritania *Gaditana*, (opposite to Cadiz), ubi gens Vandalorum, a Belisario devicta in Africâ, fugit, et nunquam comparuit.

<sup>a</sup> A single voice had protested, and Genseric dismissed, without a formal answer, the Vandals of Germany: but those of Africa derided his prudence, and affected to despise the poverty of their forests, (Procopius, Vandal. l. i, c. 22).

CHAP. the Oder, several populous villages of Lusatia  
 XLI. are inhabited by the Vandals: they still pre-  
 serve their language, their customs, and the pu-  
 rity of their blood; support, with some impa-  
 tience, the Saxon, or Prussian yoke; and serve  
 with secret and voluntary allegiance, the de-  
 scendant of their ancient kings, who in his garb  
 and present fortune is confounded with the mean-  
 est of his vassals.<sup>p</sup> The name and situation of  
 this unhappy people might indicate their descent  
 from one common stock with the conquerors of  
 Africa. But the use of a Slavonian dialect  
 more clearly represents them as the last remnant  
 of the new colonies, who succeeded to the ge-  
 nuine Vandals, already scattered or destroyed in  
 the age of Procopius.<sup>q</sup>

Manners  
 and defeat  
 of the  
 Moors,  
 A. D. 535.

If Belisarius had been tempted to hesitate in his  
 allegiance, he might have urged, even against the  
 emperor himself, the indispensable duty of saving  
 Africa from an enemy more barbarous than the  
 Vandals. The origin of the Moors is involved  
 in darkness; they were ignorant of the use of  
 letters.<sup>r</sup> Their limits cannot be precisely de-

<sup>p</sup> From the mouth of the great elector, (in 1687), Tollius describes the secret royalty and rebellious spirit of the Vandals of Brandenburg, who could muster five or six thousand soldiers who had procured some cannon, &c. (*Itinerar. Hungar.* p. 42, apud Dubos, *Hist. de la Monarchie Française*, tom. i, p. 182, 183). The veracity, not of the elector, but of Tollius himself, may justly be suspected.

<sup>q</sup> Procopius (l. i, c. 22) was in total darkness—*οὐδὲ μὲν οὐκ οὐδὲ νόμα ἔστι αὐτοῖς οὐρα*. Under the reign of Dagobert, (A. D. 630), the Slavonian tribes of the Sorbi and Venedi already bordered on Thuringia, (Mascou, *Hist. of the Germans*, xv, 3, 4, 5).

<sup>r</sup> Sallust represents the Moors as a remnant of the army of Hercules, (de Bell. Jugurth. c. 21), and Procopius (*Vandal. l. ii, c. 10*)

fined: a boundless continent was open to the Libyan shepherds; the change of seasons and pastures regulated their motions; and their rude huts and slender furniture were transported with the same ease as their arms, their families, and their cattle, which consisted of sheep, oxen, and camels.<sup>s</sup> During the vigour of the Roman power, they observed a respectful distance from Carthage and the sea-shore; under the feeble reign of the Vandals, they invaded the cities of Numidia, occupied the sea-coast from Tangier to Caesaria, and pitched their camps, with impunity, in the fertile province of Byzacium. The formidable strength and artful conduct of Belisarius secured the neutrality of the Moorish princes, whose vanity aspired to receive, in the emperor's name, the ensigns of their regal dignity.<sup>t</sup> They were astonished by the rapid event, and trembled in the presence of their conqueror. But his approaching departure soon relieved the apprehensions of a savage and superstitious people; the number of their wives allowed them to disregard the safety of their infant hostages; and when the Roman general hoisted sail in

CHAP.  
 XII.  
 .....

as the posterity of the Cananæans who fled from the robber Joshua, (λνοης). He quotes two columns, with a Phœnician inscription. I believe in the columns—I doubt the inscription—and I reject the pedigree.

<sup>s</sup> Virgil, (Georgic. iii, 339), and Pomponius Mela, (i, 8), describe the wandering life of the African shepherds, similar to that of the Arabs and Tartars; and Shaw (p. 222) is the best commentator on the poet and the geographer.

<sup>t</sup> The customary gifts were a sceptre, a crown or cap, a white cloak, a figured tunic and shoes, all adorned with gold and silver; nor were these precious metals less acceptable in the shape of coin, (Procop. Vandal. l. i. c. 25).

CHAP.  
XLI.

the port of Carthage, he heard the cries, and almost beheld the flames, of the desolated province. Yet he persisted in his resolution; and leaving only a part of his guards to reinforce the feeble garrisons, he intrusted the command of Africa to the eunuch Solomon,<sup>a</sup> who proved himself not unworthy to be the successor of Belisarius. In the first invasion, some detachments, with two officers of merit, were surprised and intercepted; but Solomon speedily assembled his troops, marched from Carthage into the heart of the country, and in two great battles destroyed sixty thousand of the barbarians. The Moors depended on their multitude, their swiftness, and their inaccessible mountains; and the aspect and smell of their camels are said to have produced some confusion in the Roman cavalry. But as soon as they were commanded to dismount, they derided this contemptible obstacle: as soon as the columns ascended the hills, the naked and disorderly crowd was dazzled by glittering arms and regular evolutions; and the menace of their female prophets was repeatedly fulfilled, that the Moors should be

<sup>a</sup> See the African government and warfare of Solomon, in Procopius, (Vandal. l. ii, c. 10, 11, 12, 13, 19, 20). He was recalled, and again restored; and his last victory dates in the xliith year of Justinian, (A. D. 539). An accident in his childhood had rendered him an eunuch, (l. i, c. 11): the other Roman generals were amply furnished with beards, *παργονος επιπλαμεινοι*, (l. ii, c. 9).

<sup>\*</sup> This natural antipathy of the horse for the camel, is affirmed by the ancients, (Xenophon. Cyropæd. l. vi, p. 438; l. vii, p. 483, 492, edit. Hutchinson. Polyæn. Stratagem. vii, 6. Plin. Hist. Nat. viii, 26. Ælian de Natur. Animal. l. iii, c. 7); but it is disproved, by daily experience, and derided by the best judges, the Orientals, (Voyage d'Olearius, p. 553).

discomfited by a *beardless* antagonist. The victorious eunuch advanced thirteen days journey from Carthage, to besiege mount Aurasius,<sup>\*</sup> the citadel, and at the same time the garden, of Numidia. That range of hills, a branch of the great Atlas, contains within a circumference of one hundred and twenty miles, a rare variety of soil and climate; the intermediate valleys and elevated plains abound with rich pastures, perpetual streams, and fruits of a delicious taste and uncommon magnitude. This fair solitude is decorated with the ruins of Lambesa, a Roman city, once the seat of a legion, and the residence of forty thousand inhabitants. The Ionic temple of Esculapius is encompassed with Moorish huts; and the cattle now graze in the midst of an amphitheatre, under the shade of Corinthian columns. A sharp perpendicular rock rises above the level of the mountain, where the African princes deposited their wives and treasure; and a proverb is familiar to the Arabs, that the man may eat fire, who dares to attack the craggy cliffs and inhospitable natives of mount Aurasius. This hardy enterprise was twice attempted by the eunuch Solomon: from the first, he retreated with some disgrace; and in the second, his patience and provisions were almost exhausted; and he must again have retired, if he had not yielded to the impetuous courage of his troops, who audaciously scaled, to the astonishment of the Moors, the

<sup>\*</sup> Procopius is the first who describes mount Aurasius, (Vandal. l. ii. c. 13. De edific. l. vi, c. 7). He may be compared with Leo Africanus, (dell Africa, parte v, in Ramusio, tom. i, fol. 77, recto), Marmol, (tom. ii, p. 430), and Shaw, (p. 56-59).

CHAP. mountain, the hostile camp, and the summit of  
 XLI. the Geminian rock. A citadel was erected to  
 secure this important conquest, and to remind the  
 barbarians of their defeat : and as Solomon pur-  
 sued his march to the west, the long-lost province  
 of Mauritanian Sitifi was again annexed to the  
 Roman empire. The Moorish war continued  
 several years after the departure of Belisarius; but  
 the laurels which he resigned to a faithful lieute-  
 nant, may be justly ascribed to his own triumph.

Neutrality  
 of the Vi-  
 sigoths.

The experience of past faults, which may  
 sometimes correct the mature age of an indivi-  
 dual, is seldom profitable to the successive ge-  
 nerations of mankind. The nations of antiqui-  
 ty, careless of each other's safety, were sepa-  
 rately vanquished and enslaved by the Romans.  
 This awful lesson might have instructed the bar-  
 barians of the West to oppose, with timely coun-  
 sels and confederate arms, the unbounded am-  
 bition of Justinian. Yet the same error was re-  
 peated, the same consequences were felt, and  
 the Goths, both of Italy and Spain, insensible of  
 their approaching danger, beheld with indiffer-  
 ence, and even with joy, the rapid downfall of  
 the Vandals. After the failure of the royal line,  
 Theudes, a valiant and powerful chief, ascend-  
 ed the throne of Spain, which he had formerly  
 administered in the name of Theodoric, and his  
 infant grandson. Under his command, the Visi-  
 goths besieged the fortress of Ceuta on the African  
 coast : but, while they spent the sabbath-day in  
 peace and devotion, the pious security of their  
 camp was invaded by a sally from the town ; and

the king himself, with some difficulty and danger, escaped from the hands of a sacrilegious enemy.<sup>a</sup> It was not long before his pride and resentment were gratified by a suppliant embassy from the unfortunate Gelimer, who implored, in his distress, the aid of the Spanish monarch. But instead of sacrificing these unworthy passions to the dictates of generosity and prudence, Theudes amused the ambassadors, till he was secretly informed of the loss of Carthage, and then dismissed them with obscure and contemptuous advice, to seek in their native country a true knowledge of the state of the Vandals.<sup>a</sup> The long continuance of the Italian war delayed the punishment of the Visigoths; and the eyes of Theudes were closed before they tasted the fruits of his mistaken policy. After his death, the sceptre of Spain was disputed by a civil war. The weaker candidate solicited the protection of Justinian; and ambitiously subscribed a treaty of alliance, which deeply wounded the independence and happiness of his country. Several cities, both on the ocean and the Mediterranean, were ceded to the Roman troops, who afterwards refused to evacuate those pledges, as it should seem, either of safety or payment; and as they were fortified by perpetual supplies from Africa, they maintained their impregnable stations, for the mischievous purpose of inflaming the civil and religious factions of the bar-

CHAP.  
XII.

Conquests  
of the  
Romans  
in Spain,  
A. D. 550-  
620.

<sup>a</sup> Isidor. Chron. p. 722, edit. Grot. Mariana, Hist. Hispan. l. v, c. 8, p. 173. Yet according to Isidore, the siege of Ceuta, and the death of Theudes, happened, A. Æ. H. 586, A. D. 548; and the place was defended, not by the Vandals, but by the Romans.

<sup>a</sup> Procopius, Vandal. l. i, c. 24.

CHAP. barians. Seventy years elapsed before this painful  
 XLI. thorn could be extirpated from the bosom of  
 the monarchy ; and as long as the emperors retained any share of these remote and useless possessions, their vanity might number Spain in the list of their provinces, and the successors of Alaric in the rank of their vassals.<sup>b</sup>

Belisarius  
 threatens  
 the Ostro-  
 goths of  
 Italy,  
 A. D. 534.

The error of the Goths who reigned in Italy was less excusable than that of their Spanish brethren, and their punishment was still more immediate and terrible. From a motive of private revenge, they enabled their most dangerous enemy to destroy their most valuable ally. A sister of the great Theodoric had been given in marriage to Thrasimond the African king:<sup>c</sup> on this occasion, the fortress of Lilybæum<sup>d</sup> in Sicily was resigned to the Vandals; and the princess Amalafrida was attended by a martial train of one thousand nobles, and five thousand Gothic soldiers, who signalized their valour in the Moorish wars. Their merit was over-rated by themselves, and perhaps neglected by the Vandals: they viewed the country with envy, and the conquerors with disdain ; but their real or fictitious conspiracy was prevented

<sup>b</sup> See the original Chronicle of Isidore, and the vth and vith books of the History of Spain by Mariana. The Romans were finally expelled by Suintila king of the Visigoths, (A. D. 621-626), after their reunion to the catholic church.

<sup>c</sup> See the marriage and fate of Amalafrida in Procopius, (Vandal. I. i, c. 8, 9), and in Cassiodorus, (Var. ix, 1), the expostulation of her royal brother. Compare likewise the Chronicle of Victor Tununensis.

<sup>d</sup> Lilybæum was built by the Carthaginians, Olymp. xcv, 4; and in the first Punic war, a strong situation, and excellent harbour, rendered that place an important object to both nations.

CHAP.

XLI.

by a massacre; the Goths were oppressed, and the captivity of Amalafrida was soon followed by her secret and suspicious death. The eloquent pen of Cassiodorius was employed to reproach the Vandal court with the cruel violation of every social and public duty; but the vengeance which he threatened in the name of his sovereign, might be derided with impunity, as long as Africa was protected by the sea, and the Goths were destitute of a navy. In the blind impotence of grief and indignation, they joyfully saluted the approach of the Romans, entertained the fleet of Belisarius in the ports of Sicily, and were speedily delighted or alarmed by the surprising intelligence, that their revenge was executed beyond the measure of their hopes, or perhaps of their wishes. To their friendship the emperor was indebted for the kingdom of Africa, and the Goths might reasonably think, that they were entitled to resume the possession of a barren rock, so recently separated as a nuptial gift from the island of Sicily. They were soon undeceived by the haughty mandate of Belisarius, which excited their tardy and unavailing repentance.—“The city and promontory of Lilybæum,” said the Roman general, “belonged to the Vandals, and I claim them by the right of conquest. Your submission may deserve the favour of the emperor; your obstinacy will provoke his displeasure, and must kindle a war, that can terminate only in your utter ruin. If you compel us to take up arms, we shall contend, not to regain the possession of a single city,

CHAP. "but to deprive you of all the provinces which  
 XLI. "you unjustly withhold from their lawful sove-  
 reign." A nation of two hundred thousand  
 soldiers might have smiled at the vain menace  
 of Justinian and his lieutenant: but a spirit of  
 discord and disaffection prevailed in Italy, and  
 the Goths supported, with reluctance, the in-  
 dignity of a female reign.\*

Government and  
 death of  
 Amalasontha,  
 queen of  
 Italy,  
 A. D. 522-  
 534.

The birth of Amalasontha, the regent and  
 queen of Italy,<sup>f</sup> united the two most illustrious  
 families of the barbarians. Her mother, the sister  
 of Clovis, was descended from the long-haired  
 kings of the *Merovingian* race;<sup>g</sup> and the regal  
 succession of the *Amali* was illustrated in the ele-  
 venth generation, by her father, the great Theo-  
 doric, whose merit might have ennobled a plebeian  
 origin. The sex of his daughter excluded her  
 from the Gothic throne; but his vigilant tender-  
 ness for his family and his people discovered the  
 last heir of the royal line, whose ancestors had taken  
 refuge in Spain; and the fortunate Eutharic was  
 suddenly exalted to the rank of a consul and a  
 prince. He enjoyed only a short time the charms  
 of Amalasontha, and the hopes of the succession;  
 and his widow, after the death of her husband

\* Compare the different passages of Procopius, (*Vandal.* l. ii, c. 5. *Gothic.* l. i, c. 3).

<sup>f</sup> For the reign and character of Amalasontha, see Procopius, (*Gothic.* l. i, c. 2, 3, 4, and *Anecdot.* c. 16, with the Notes of Alemannus); Cassiodorus, (*Var.* viii, ix, x, and xi, 1), and Jornandes, (*de Rebus Geticis*, c. 59, and *De Successione Regnorum*, in Muratori, tom. i, p. 241).

<sup>g</sup> The marriage of Theodoric with Audefleda, the sister of Clovis, may be placed in the year 495, soon after the conquest of Italy, (*de Buat. Hist. des Peuples*, tom. ix, p. 213). The nuptials of Eutharic and Amalasontha were celebrated in 515, (Cassiodor. in *Chron.* p. 453).

and father, was left the guardian of her son Athalaric, and the kingdom of Italy. At the age of about twenty-eight years, the endowments of her mind and person had attained their perfect maturity. Her beauty, which, in the apprehension of Theodora herself, might have disputed the conquest of an emperor, was animated by manly sense, activity, and resolution. Education and experience had cultivated her talents; her philosophic studies were exempt from vanity; and, though she expressed herself with equal elegance and ease in the Greek, the Latin, and the Gothic tongue, the daughter of Theodoric maintained in her counsels a discreet and impenetrable silence. By a faithful imitation of the virtues, she revived the prosperity of his reign: while she strove, with pious care, to expiate the faults, and to obliterate the darker memory of his declining age. The children of Boethius and Symmachus were restored to their paternal inheritance; her extreme lenity never consented to inflict any corporal or pecuniary penalties on her Roman subjects; and she generously despised the clamours of the Goths, who, at the end of forty years, still considered the people of Italy as their slaves or their enemies. Her salutary measures were directed by the wisdom, and celebrated by the eloquence, of Cassiodorius; she solicited and deserved the friendship of the emperor; and the kingdoms of Europe respected, both in peace and war, the majesty of the Gothic throne. But the future happiness of the queen and of Italy depended on the education of her son, who was destined, by his birth, to support the different and

CHAP.

XLI.

almost incompatible characters of the chief of a barbarian camp, and the first magistrate of a civilized nation. From the age of ten years,<sup>a</sup> Athalaric was diligently instructed in the arts and sciences, either useful or ornamental for a Roman prince; and three venerable Goths were chosen to instil the principles of honour and virtue into the mind of their young king. But the pupil who is insensible of the benefits, must **abhor the restraints of education; and the solicitude of the queen, which affection rendered anxious and severe, offended the untractable nature of her son and his subjects.** On a solemn festival, when the Goths were assembled in the palace of Ravenna, the royal youth escaped from **his mother's apartment, and, with tears of pride and anger, complained of a blow which his stubborn disobedience had provoked her to inflict.** The barbarians resented the indignity which had been offered to their king; accused the regent of conspiring against his life and crown; and imperiously demanded, that the grandson of Theodoric should be rescued from the dastardly discipline of women and pedants, and educated, like a valiant Goth, in the society of his equals, and the glorious ignorance of his ancestors. To this rude clamour, importunately urged as the voice of the nation, Amalasontha was compelled to yield her reason, and the dearest wishes of her heart. The king of Italy

<sup>a</sup> At the death of Theodoric, his grandson Athalaric is described by Procopius as a boy about eight years old—*οὐκ ἔτι ἡλικίας ἔτη*. Cassiodorus, with authority and reason, adds two years to his age—*infantulum adhuc vix decennem*.

was abandoned to wine, to women, and to rustic sports; and the indiscreet contempt of the ungrateful youth, betrayed the mischievous designs of his favourites and her enemies. Encompassed with domestic foes, she entered into a secret negotiation with the emperor Justinian; obtained the assurance of a friendly reception, and had actually deposited at Dyrachium in Epirus, a treasure of forty thousand pounds of gold. Happy would it have been for her fame and safety, if she had calmly retired from barbarous faction, to the peace and splendour of Constantinople. But the mind of Amalasontha was inflamed by ambition and revenge; and while her ships lay at anchor in the port, she waited for the success of a crime which her passions excused or applauded as an act of justice. Three of the most dangerous malecontents had been separately removed, under the pretence of trust and command, to the frontiers of Italy: they were assassinated by her private emissaries; and the blood of these noble Goths rendered the queen-mother absolute in the court of Ravenna, and justly odious to a free people. But if she had lamented the disorders of her son, she soon wept his irreparable loss; and the death of Athalaric, who, at the age of sixteen, was consumed by premature intemperance, left her destitute of any firm support or legal authority. Instead of submitting to the laws of her country, which held as a fundamental maxim, that the succession could never pass from the lance to the distaff, the daughter of Theodoric conceived the impracticable design of sharing, with one of her cousins, the regal title, and of re-

CHAP.  
XII.

serving in her own hands the substance of supreme power. He received the proposal with profound respect and affected gratitude; and the eloquent Cassiodorius announced to the senate and the emperor, that Amalasontha and Theodatus had ascended the throne of Italy. His birth (for his mother was the sister of Theodoric) might be considered as an imperfect title; and the choice of Amalasontha was more strongly directed by her contempt of his avarice and pusillanimity, which had deprived him of the love of the Italians, and the esteem of the barbarians. But Theodatus was exasperated by the contempt which he deserved; her justice had repressed and reproached the oppression which he exercised against his Tuscan neighbours; and the principal Goths, united by common guilt and resentment, conspired to instigate his slow and timid disposition. The letters of congratulation were scarcely despatched before the queen of Italy was imprisoned in a small island of the lake of Bolsena,<sup>1</sup> where, after a short confinement, she was strangled in the bath, by the order, or with the connivance, of the new king, who instructed his turbulent subjects to shed the blood of their sovereigns.

Her exile  
and death,  
A. D. 527,  
April 30.

Belisarius  
invades  
and sub-  
dues Sicily,

Justinian beheld with joy the dissensions of the Goths; and the mediation of an ally concealed and

<sup>1</sup> The lake, from the neighbouring towns of Etruria, was styled either Vulturnensis (now of Bolsena) or Tarquiniensis. It is surrounded with white rocks, and stored with fish and wild fowl. The younger Pliny (Epist. ii, 96) celebrates two woody islands that floated on its waters: if a fable, how credulous the ancients!—if a fact, how careless the moderns! Yet since Pliny, the island may have been fixed by new and gradual successions.

promoted the ambitious views of the conqueror. His ambassadors, in their public audience, demanded the fortress of Lilybæum, ten barbarian fugitives, and a just compensation for the pillage of a small town on the Illyrian borders; but they secretly negotiated with Theodatus, to betray the province of Tuscany, and tempted Amalasontha to extricate herself from danger and perplexity, by a free surrender of the kingdom of Italy. A false and servile epistle was subscribed by the reluctant hand of the captive queen: but the confession of the Roman senators, who were sent to Constantinople, revealed the truth of her deplorable situation; and Justinian, by the voice of a new ambassador, most powerfully interceded for her life and liberty. Yet the secret instructions of the same minister were adapted to serve the cruel jealousy of Theodora, who dreaded the presence and superior charms of a rival: he prompted, with artful and ambiguous hints, the execution of a crime so useful to the Romans;<sup>\*</sup> received the intelligence of her death with grief and indignation, and denounced, in his master's name, immortal war against the perfidious assassin. In Italy, as well as in Africa, the guilt of an usurper appeared to justify the arms of Justinian; but the forces which he prepared, were insufficient for the subversion of a mighty kingdom, if their feeble

CHAP.

XLI.

A. D. 525,

Dec. 31.

<sup>\*</sup> Yet Procopius discredits his own evidence, (*Anecd. c. 16*), by confessing that in his public history he had not spoken the truth. See the *Epistles from Queen Gundelina to the empress Theodora*, (*Var. x. 20, 21, 23*, and observe a suspicious word, *de illâ personâ*, &c.), with the elaborate *Commentary of Buat*, (tom. x, p. 177-185).

CHAP.  
XII.

numbers had not been multiplied by the name, the spirit, and the conduct of an hero. A chosen troop of guards, who served on horseback, and were armed with lances and bucklers, attended the person of Belisarius: his cavalry was composed of two hundred Huns, three hundred Moors, and four thousand *confederates*, and the infantry consisted only of three thousand Isaurians. **Steering the same course as in his former expedition, the Roman consul cast anchor before Catana in Sicily, to survey the strength of the island, and to decide whether he should attempt the conquest, or peaceably pursue his voyage for the African coast. He found a fruitful land and a friendly people. Notwithstanding the decay of agriculture, Sicily still supplied the granaries of Rome; the farmers were graciously exempted from the oppression of military quarters; and the Goths, who trusted the defence of the island to the inhabitants, had some reason to complain, that their confidence was ungratefully betrayed: instead of soliciting and expecting the aid of the king of Italy, they yielded to the first summons a cheerful obedience: and this province, the first fruits of the Punic wars, was again, after a long separation, united to the Roman empire.<sup>1</sup> The Gothic garrison of Palermo, which alone attempted to resist, was reduced, after a short siege, by a singular stratagem. Belisarius introduced his**

<sup>1</sup> For the conquest of Sicily, compare the narrative of Procopius with the complaints of Totila, (Gothic. l. i, c. 5; l. iii, c. 16). The Gothic queen had lately relieved that thankless island, (Var. ix, 10, 11.)

ships into the deepest recess of the harbour; their boats were laboriously hoisted with ropes and pulleys to the top-mast head, and he filled them with archers, who, from that superior station, commanded the ramparts of the city. After this easy, though successful campaign, the conqueror entered Syracuse in triumph, at the head of his victorious bands, distributing gold medals to the people, on the day which so gloriously terminated the year of the consulship. He passed the winter season in the palace of ancient kings, amidst the ruins of a Grecian colony, which once extended to a circumference of two and twenty miles:<sup>m</sup> but in the spring, about the festival of Easter, the prosecution of his designs was interrupted by a dangerous revolt of the African forces. Carthage was saved by the presence of Belisarius, who suddenly landed with a thousand guards. Two thousand soldiers of doubtful faith returned to the standard of their old commander: and he marched, without hesitation, above fifty miles, to seek an enemy, whom he affected to pity and despise. Eight thousand rebels trembled at his approach; they were routed at the first onset, by the dexterity of their master: and this ignoble victory would have restored the peace of Africa, if the conqueror had not been hastily recalled to Sicily, to appease a sedition which was kindled

<sup>m</sup> The ancient magnitude and splendour of the five quarters of Syracuse, are delineated by Cicero, (in *Verrem*, actio ii, l. iv, c. 52, 53); Strabo, (l. vi, p. 415), and d'Orville Sicula, (tom. ii, p. 174-202). The new city, restored by Augustus, shrunk towards the island.

CHAP.  
XLI.

during his absence in his own camp.<sup>n</sup> Disorder and disobedience were the common malady of the times: the genius to command, and the virtue to obey, resided only in the mind of Belisarius.

Reign and  
weakness  
of Theo-  
datus, the  
Gothic  
king of  
Italy,  
A. D. 534,  
October—  
A. D. 536,  
August.

Although Theodatus descended from a race of heroes, he was ignorant of the art, and averse to the dangers, of war. Although he had studied the writings of Plato and Tully, philosophy was incapable of purifying his mind from the basest passions, avarice and fear. He had purchased a sceptre by ingratitude and murder: at the first menace of an enemy, he degraded his own majesty, and that of a nation, which already disdained their unworthy sovereign. Astonished by the recent example of Gelimer, he saw himself dragged in chains through the streets of Constantinople: the terrors which Belisarius inspired, were heightened by the eloquence of Peter, the Byzantine ambassador; and that bold and subtle advocate persuaded him to sign a treaty, too ignominious to become the foundation of a lasting peace. It was stipulated, that in the acclamations of the Roman people, the name of the emperor should be always proclaimed before that of the Gothic king; and that as often as the statue of Theodatus was erected in brass or marble, the divine image of Justinian should be placed on its right hand. Instead of conferring, the king of Italy was reduced to solicit,

<sup>n</sup> Procopius (*Vandal. l. ii, c. 14, 15*) so clearly relates the return of Belisarius into Sicily, (p. 146, edit. Hoeschelii), that I am astonished at the strange misapprehension and reproaches of a learned critic, (*Oeuvres de la Mothe le Vayer, tom. viii, p. 162, 163*).

the honours of the senate; and the consent of the emperor was made indispensable before he could execute, against a priest or senator, the sentence either of death or confiscation. The feeble monarch resigned the possession of Sicily; offered, as the annual mark of his dependence, a crown of gold, of the weight of three hundred pounds; and promised to supply, at the requisition of his sovereign, three thousand Gothic auxiliaries for the service of the empire. Satisfied with these extraordinary concessions, the successful agent of Justinian hastened his journey to Constantinople; but no sooner had he reached the Alban villa,\* than he was recalled by the anxiety of Theodatus; and the dialogue which passed between the king and the ambassador, deserves to be represented in its original simplicity.—“Are you of opinion that the emperor will ratify this treaty? *Perhaps*. If he refuses, what consequence will ensue? *War*. “Will such a war be just or reasonable? *Most assuredly: every one should act according to his character*. What is your meaning? *You are a philosopher—Justinian is emperor of the Romans: it would ill become the disciple of Plato to shed the blood of thousands in his private quarrel: the successor of Augustus should vindicate his rights, and recover by arms the ancient provinces of his empire.*” This reasoning might not con-

\* The ancient Alba was ruined in the first age of Rome. On the same spot; or at least in the neighbourhood, successively arose, 1. The villa of Pompey, &c. 2. A camp of the preterian cohorts. 3. The modern episcopal city of Albanum or Albano, (Procop. Goth. l. ii. c. 4. Cluver. Ital. Antiq. tom. ii, p. 914).

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

vince, but it was sufficient to alarm and subdue the weakness of Theodatus; and he soon descended to his last offer, that for the poor equivalent of a pension of forty-eight thousand pounds sterling, he would resign the kingdom of the Goths and Italians, and spend the remainder of his days in the innocent pleasures of philosophy and agriculture. Both treaties were intrusted to the hands of the ambassador, on the frail security of an oath not to produce the second till the first had been positively rejected. The event may be easily foreseen: Justinian required and accepted the abdication of the Gothic king. His indefatigable agent returned from Constantinople to Ravenna, with ample instructions; and a fair epistle, which praised the wisdom and generosity of the royal philosopher, granted his pension, with the assurance of such honours, as a subject and a catholic might enjoy; and wisely referred the final execution of the treaty, to the presence and authority of Belisarius. But in the interval of suspense, two Roman generals, who had entered the province of Dalmatia, were defeated and slain by the Gothic troops. From blind and abject despair, Theodatus capriciously rose to groundless and fatal presumption,<sup>p</sup> and dared to receive, with menace and contempt, the ambassador of Justinian; who claimed his promise, solicited the allegiance of his subjects, and bold-

<sup>p</sup> A Sibylline oracle was ready to pronounce—*Africâ captâ mundus cum nato peribit*; a sentence of portentous ambiguity, (Gothic. l. i, c. 7), which has been published in unknown characters by Opsopæus, an editor of the oracles. The Pere Maltret has promised a commentary; but all his promises have been vain and fruitless.

ly asserted the inviolable privilege of his own character. The march of Belisarius dispelled this visionary pride; and as the first campaign<sup>9</sup> was employed in the reduction of Sicily, the invasion of Italy is applied by Procopius to the second year of the GOTHIC WAR.<sup>r</sup>

CHAP.  
XII.

After Belisarius had left sufficient garrisons in Palermo and Syracuse, he embarked his troops at Messina, and landed them, without resistance, on the opposite shores of Rhegium. A Gothic prince, who had married the daughter of Theodatus, was stationed with an army to guard the entrance of Italy; but he imitated, without scruple, the example of a sovereign, faithless to his public and private duties. The perfidious Ebermor deserted with his followers to the Roman camp, and was dismissed to enjoy the servile honours of the Byzantine court.<sup>s</sup> From Rhegium to Naples, the fleet and army of Belisarius, almost always in view of each other, advanced near three hundred miles along the sea-coast. The people of Bruttium, Lucania, and Campania, who abhorred the name

Belisarius  
invades  
Italy, and  
reduces  
Naples.  
A. D. 537.

<sup>9</sup> In his chronology, imitated in some degree from Thucydides, Procopius begins each spring the years of Justinian and of the Gothic war; and his first era coincides with the first of April 535, and not 536, according to the Annals of Baronius, (Pagi Crit. tom. ii, p. 555, who is followed by Muratori and the editors of Sigonius). Yet in some passages we are at a loss to reconcile the dates of Procopius with himself, and with the Chronicle of Marcellinus.

<sup>r</sup> The series of the first Gothic war is represented by Procopius, (l. i, c. 5-29; l. ii, c. 1-30; l. iii, c. 1), till the captivity of Vitiges. With the aid of Sigonius, (Opp. tom. i, de Imp. Occident. l. xvii, xviii), and Muratori, (Annali d'Italia, tom. v), I have gleaned some few additional facts.

<sup>s</sup> Jornandes, de Rebus Geticis, c. 60, p. 702, edit. Grot., and tom. i, p. 221. Muratori, de Success. Rega. p. 241.

CHAP.

XLI.

and religion of the Goths, embraced the specious excuse, that their ruined walls were incapable of defence; the soldiers paid a just equivalent for a plentiful market; and curiosity alone interrupted the peaceful occupations of the husbandman or artificer. Naples, which has swelled to a great and populous capital, long cherished the language and manners of a Grecian colony;<sup>\*</sup> and the choice of Virgil had ennobled this elegant retreat, which attracted the lovers of repose and study, from the noise, the smoke, and the laborious opulence of Rome." As soon as the place was invested by sea and land, Belisarius gave audience to the deputies of the people, who exhorted him to disregard a conquest unworthy of his arms, to seek the Gothic king in a field of battle, and, after his victory, to claim, as the sovereign of Rome, the allegiance of the dependant cities.—“ When I treat with my “ enemies,” replied the Roman chief, with an haughty smile, “ I am more accustomed to give “ than to receive counsel: but I hold in one hand “ inevitable ruin, and in the other, peace and “ freedom, such as Sicily now enjoys.” The impatience of delay urged him to grant the most

<sup>\*</sup> Nero (says Tacitus, *Annal.* xv, 35) Neapolim quasi Græcam urbem delegit. One hundred and fifty years afterwards, in the time of Septimius Severus, the *Hellenism* of the Neapolitans is praised by Philostratus: γένος Ἑλληνικὸν καὶ ἀστυκὸν, ὅθεν καὶ τὰς σπουδὰς τῶν λόγων Ἑλληνικοὶ ὡσι, (*Icon.* l. i, p. 763, edit. Olear.).

<sup>†</sup> The otium of Naples is praised by the Roman poets, by Virgil, Horace, Silius Italicus, and Statius, (*Clüver. Ital. Ant.* l. iv, p. 1149, 1150). In an elegant epistle, (*Sylv.* l. iii, 5, p. 94–98, edit. Markland), Statius undertakes the difficult task of drawing his wife from the pleasures of Rome to that calm retreat.

liberal terms; his honour secured their performance; but Naples was divided into two factions; and the Greek democracy was inflamed by their orators, who, with much spirit and some truth, represented to the multitude, that the Goths would punish their defection, and that Belisarius himself must esteem their loyalty and valour. Their deliberations, however, were not perfectly free: the city was commanded by eight hundred barbarians, whose wives and children were detained at Ravenna as the pledge of their fidelity; and even the Jews, who were rich and numerous, resisted, with desperate enthusiasm, the intolerant laws of Justinian. In a much later period, the circumference of Naples<sup>\*</sup> measured only two thousand three hundred and sixty-three paces:<sup>†</sup> the fortifications were defended by precipices or the sea: when the aqueducts were intercepted, a supply of water might be drawn from wells and fountains; and the stock of provisions was sufficient to consume the patience of the besiegers. At the end of twenty days, that of Belisarius was almost exhausted, and he had reconciled himself to the disgrace of abandoning the siege, that he might march, before the winter season, against Rome and the Gothic king. But

\* This measure was taken by Roger I, after the conquest of Naples, (A. D. 1139), which he made the capital of his new kingdom, (Giannone, *Istoria Civile*, tom. ii, p. 169). That city, the third in Christian Europe, is now at least twelve miles in circumference, (Jul. Caesar. Capaccii *Hist. Neapol.* l. i, p. 47), and contains more inhabitants (350,000) in a given space, than any other spot in the known world.

† Not geometrical, but common, paces or steps, of 22 French inches, (d'Anville, *Mesures Itinéraires*, p. 7, 8): the 2363 do not make an English mile.

CHAP.  
XLI.

his anxiety was relieved by the bold curiosity of an Isaurian, who explored the dry channel of an aqueduct, and secretly reported, that a passage might be perforated to introduce a file of armed soldiers into the heart of the city. When the work had been silently executed, the humane general risked the discovery of his secret, by a last and fruitless admonition of the impending danger. In the darkness of the night, four hundred Romans entered the aqueduct, raised themselves by a rope, which they fastened to an olive tree, into the house or garden of a solitary matron, sounded their trumpets, surprised the sentinels, and gave admittance to their companions, who, on all sides, scaled the walls, and burst open the gates of the city. Every crime which is punished by social justice, was practised as the rights of war; the Huns were distinguished by cruelty and sacrilege, and Belisarius alone appeared in the streets and churches of Naples, to moderate the calamities which he predicted. "The gold and silver," he repeatedly exclaimed, "are the just rewards of your valour. But spare the inhabitants, they are Christians, they are suppliants, they are now your fellow-subjects. Restore the children to their parents, the wives to their husbands; and shew them by your generosity, of what friends they have obstinately deprived themselves." The city was saved by the virtue and authority of its conqueror,\*

\* Belisarius was reproved by Pope Sylverius for the massacre. He repopled Naples, and imported colonies of African captives into Sicily, Calabria,

and when the Neapolitans returned to their houses, they found some consolation in the secret enjoyment of their hidden treasures. The barbarian garrison inlisted in the service of the emperor; Apulia and Calabria, delivered from the odious presence of the Goths, acknowledged his dominion; and the tusks of the Calydonian boar, which were still shewn at Beneventum, are curiously described by the historian of Belisarius.<sup>a</sup>

The faithful soldiers and citizens of Naples had expected their deliverance from a prince, who remained the inactive and almost indifferent spectator of their ruin. Theodatus secured his person within the walls of Rome, while his cavalry advanced forty miles on the Appian way, and encamped in the Pomptine marshes; which, by a canal of nineteen miles in length, had been recently drained and converted into excellent pastures.<sup>b</sup> But the principal forces of the Goths were dispersed in Dalmatia, Venetia, and Gaul; and the feeble mind of their king was confounded by the unsuccessful event of a divination, which

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~  
Vitiges,  
king of  
Italy,  
A. D. 536,  
August—  
A. D. 540.

Calabria, and Apulia, (Hist. Miscell. l. xvi, in Muratori, tom. i, p. 106, 107).

<sup>a</sup> Beneventum was built by Diomede, the nephew of Meleager, (Cluver. tom. ii, p. 1195, 1196). The Calydonian hunt is a picture of savage life, (Ovid, Metamorph. l. viii). Thirty or forty heroes were leagued against a hog: the brutes (not the hog) quarrelled with a lady for the head.

<sup>b</sup> The *Decennovium* is strangely confounded by Cluverius (tom. ii, p. 1007) with the river Ufens. It was in truth a canal of nineteen miles, from Forum Appii to Terracina, on which Horace embarked in the night. The *Decennovium* which is mentioned by Lucan, Dion Cassius, and Cassiodorus, has been sufficiently ruined, restored, and obliterated, (d'Anville, Analyse de l'Italie, p. 185, &c.)

CHAP. seemed to presage the downfall of his empire.\*

XLI. The most abject slaves have arraigned the guilt,  
 or weakness, of an unfortunate master. The character of Theodatus was rigorously scrutinized by a free and idle camp of barbarians, conscious of their privilege and power : he was declared unworthy of his race, his nation, and his throne ; and their general, Vitiges, whose valour had been singalized in the Illyrian war, was raised, with unanimous applause, on the bucklers of his companions. On the first rumour, the abdicated monarch fled from the justice of his country ; but he was pursued by private revenge. A Goth whom he had injured in his love, overtook Theodatus on the Flaminian way, and, regardless of his unmanly cries, slaughtered him, as he lay prostrate on the ground, like a victim (says the historian) at the foot of the altar. The choice of the people is the best and purest title to reign over them : yet such is the prejudice of every age, that Vitiges impatiently wished to return to Ravenna, where he might seize, with the reluctant hand of the daughter of Amalasontha, some faint shadow of hereditary right. A national council was immediately held, and the new monarch reconciled the impatient spirit of the barbarians, to a measure of disgrace, which the misconduct of his predecessors rendered wise and indispensable.

\* A Jew gratified his contempt and hatred for *all* the Christians, by inclosing three bands, each of ten hogs, and discriminated by the names of Goths, Greeks, and Romans. Of the first, almost all were found dead—almost all the second were alive—of the third, half died, and the rest lost their bristles. No unsuitable emblem of the event

The Goths consented to retreat in the presence of a victorious enemy; to delay till the next spring the operations of offensive war; to summon their scattered forces; to relinquish their distant possessions, and to trust even Rome itself to the faith of its inhabitants. Leuderis, an aged warrior, was left in the capital with four thousand soldiers; a feeble garrison, which might have seconded the zeal, though it was incapable of opposing the wishes, of the Romans. But a momentary enthusiasm of religion and patriotism was kindled in their minds. They furiously exclaimed, that the apostolic throne should no longer be profaned by the triumph or toleration of Arianism; that the tombs of the Cæsars should no longer be trampled by the savages of the North; and, without reflecting that Italy must sink into a province of Constantinople, they fondly hailed the restoration of a Roman emperor as a new era of freedom and prosperity. The deputies of the pope and clergy, of the senate and people, invited the lieutenant of Justinian to accept their voluntary allegiance, and to enter the city, whose gates would be thrown open for his reception. As soon as Belisarius had fortified his new conquests, Naples and Cumæ, he advanced about twenty miles to the banks of the Volturnus, contemplated the decayed grandeur of Capua, and halted at the separation of the Latin and Appian ways. The work of the censor, after the incessant use of nine centuries, still preserved its primeval beauty, and not a flaw could be discovered in the large polished stones, of which that

CHAP.  
XII.

Belisarius  
enters  
Rome,  
A. D. 536,  
Dec. 10.

Siege of  
Rome by  
the Goths,  
A. D. 537,  
March.

solid, though narrow road, was so firmly compacted.<sup>d</sup> Belisarius, however, preferred the Latin way, which, at a distance from the sea and the marshes, skirted, in a space of one hundred and twenty miles, along the foot of the mountains. His enemies had disappeared: when he made his entrance through the Asinarian gate, the garrison departed without molestation along the Flaminian way; and the city, after sixty years servitude, was delivered from the yoke of the barbarians. Leuderis alone, from a motive of pride or discontent, refused to accompany the fugitives; and the Gothic chief, himself a trophy of the victory, was sent with the keys of Rome to the throne of the emperor Justinian.<sup>e</sup>

The first days, which coincided with the old Saturnalia, were devoted to mutual congratulation and the public joy; and the catholics prepared to celebrate, without a rival, the approaching festival of the nativity of Christ. In the familiar conversation of a hero, the Romans acquired some notion of the virtues which history ascribed to their ancestors; they were edified by the apparent respect of Belisarius for the successor of St. Peter,

<sup>d</sup> Bergier (Hist. des Grands Chemins des Romains, tom. i, p. 221-228, 440-444) examines the structure and materials, while d'Anville (Analyse d'Italie, p. 200-213) defines the geographical line.

• Of the first recovery of Rome, the year (536) is certain, from the series of events, rather than from the corrupt, or interpolated, text of Procopius: the month (December) is ascertained by Evagrius, (l. iv, c. 19); and the day (the tenth) may be admitted on the slight evidence of Nicephorus Callistus, (l. xvii, c. 13). For this accurate chronology, we are indebted to the diligence and judgment of Pagi, (tom. ii, p. 559, 560).

and his rigid discipline secured, in the midst of war, the blessings of tranquillity and justice. They applauded the rapid success of his arms, which over-ran the adjacent country, as far as Narni, Perusia, and Spoleto : but they trembled, the senate, the clergy, and the unwarlike people, as soon as they understood that he had resolved, and would speedily be reduced, to sustain a siege against the powers of the Gothic monarchy. The designs of Vitiges were executed, during the winter-season, with diligence and effect. From their rustic habitations, from their distant garrisons, the Goths assembled at Ravenna for the defence of their country ; and such were their numbers, that after an army had been detached for the relief of Dalmatia, one hundred and fifty thousand fighting men marched under the royal standard. According to the degrees of rank or merit, the Gothic king distributed arms and horses, rich gifts, and liberal promises ; he moved along the Flaminian way, declined the useless sieges of Perusia and Spoleto, respected the impregnable rock of Narni, and arrived within two miles of Rome, at the foot of the Milvian bridge. The narrow passage was fortified with a tower, and Belisarius had computed the value of the twenty days, which must be lost in the construction of another bridge. But the consternation of the soldiers of the tower, who either fled or deserted, disappointed his hopes, and betrayed his person into the most imminent danger. At the head of one thousand horse, the Roman general sallied from the Flaminian gate to mark the ground

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

of an advantageous position, and to survey the camp of the barbarians; but while he still believed them on the other side of the Tiber, he was suddenly encompassed and assaulted by their innumerable squadrons. The fate of Italy depended on his life; and the deserters pointed to the conspicuous horse, a bay,\* with a white face, which he rode on that memorable day. "Aim at the bay horse," was the universal cry. Every bow was bent, every javelin was directed, against that fatal object, and the command was repeated and obeyed by thousands who were ignorant of its real motive. The bolder barbarians advanced to the more honourable combat of swords and spears; and the praise of an enemy has graced the fall of Visandus, the standard-bearer,† who maintained his foremost station, till he was pierced with thirteen wounds, perhaps by the hand of Belisarius himself. The Roman general was strong, active, and dexterous: on every side he discharged his weighty and mortal strokes: his faithful guards imitated his valour, and defended his person; and the Goths, after the loss of a thousand men, fled before the arms of an hero. They were rashly pursued

\* An horse of a bay or red colour was styled *παλιν* by the Greeks, *balan* by the barbarians, and *spadix* by the Romans. *Honesti spadices*, says Virgil, (*Georgic*. l. iii, 72, with the observations of Martin and Heyne). *Σπαδίζ* or *βαλον*, signifies a branch of the palm-tree, whose name, *Φωνίζ*, is synonymous to *red*, (*Aulus Gellius*, ii, 26).

† I interpret *βανδαλαριος*, not as a proper name, but an office, standard-bearer, from *bandum*, (*vexillum*), a barbaric word adopted by the Greeks and Romans, (*Paul Diacon*. l. i, c. 20, p. 760. *Grot. Nomina Gothica*, p. 575. *Ducange, Gloss. Latin*. tom. i, p. 539, 510).

CHAP.  
XLI.

to their camp; and the Romans, oppressed by multitudes, made a gradual, and at length a precipitate, retreat to the gates of the city: the gates were shut against the fugitives; and the public terror was increased, by the report that Belisarius was slain. His countenance was indeed disfigured by sweat, dust, and blood; his voice was hoarse, his strength was almost exhausted; but his unconquerable spirit still remained; he imparted that spirit to his desponding companions; and their last desperate charge was felt by the flying barbarians, as if a new army, vigorous and entire, had been poured from the city. The Flaminian gate was thrown open to a *real* triumph; but it was not before Belisarius had visited every post, and provided for the public safety, that he could be persuaded by his wife and friends, to taste the needful refreshments of food and sleep. In the more improved state of the art of war, a general is seldom required, or even permitted, to display the personal prowess of a soldier; and the example of Belisarius may be added to the rare examples of Henry IV, of Pyrrhus, and of Alexander.

Valour of  
Belisarius.

After this first and unsuccessful trial of their enemies, the whole army of the Goths passed the Tiber, and formed the siege of the city, which continued above a year, till their final departure. Whatever fancy may conceive, the severe compass of the geographer defines the circumference of Rome within a line of twelve miles and three hundred and forty-five paces; and that circumference, except in the Vatican, has invariably

His defence of  
Rome.

CHAP.

XLI.

been the same from the triumph of Aurelian to the peaceful but obscure reign of the modern popes.<sup>h</sup> But in the day of her greatness, the space within her walls was crowded with habitations and inhabitants; and the populous suburbs, that stretched along the public roads, were darted like so many rays from one common centre. Adversity swept away these extraneous ornaments, and left naked and desolate a considerable part even of the seven hills. Yet Rome, in its present state, could send into the field above thirty thousand males, of a military age;<sup>i</sup> and, notwithstanding the want of discipline and exercise, the far greater part, inured to the hardships of poverty, might be capable of bearing arms for the defence of their country and religion. The prudence of Belisarius did not neglect this important resource. His soldiers were relieved by the zeal and diligence of the people, who watched while *they* slept, and laboured while *they* reposed: he accepted the voluntary service of the bravest and most indigent of the Roman youth; and the companies of townsmen sometimes represented, in a vacant post, the presence of the troops which had been drawn away to more essential duties. But

<sup>h</sup> M. d'Anville has given, in the Memoirs of the Academy for the year 1756, (tom. xxx, p. 198-236), a plan of Rome on a smaller scale, but far more accurate than that which he had delineated in 1738 for Rollin's history. Experience had improved his knowledge; and, instead of Rossi's topography, he used the new and excellent map of Nolli. Pliny's old measure of xiii must be reduced to viii miles. It is easier to alter a text, than to remove hills or buildings.

<sup>i</sup> In the year 1709, Labat (Voyages en Italie, tom. iii, p. 218) reckoned 138,568 Christian souls, besides 8 or 10,000 Jews—without souls? In the year 1763, the numbers exceeded 160,000.

his just confidence was placed in the veterans who had fought under his banner in the Persian and African wars; and although that gallant band was reduced to five thousand men, he undertook, with such contemptible numbers, to defend a circle of twelve miles, against an army of one hundred and fifty thousand barbarians. In the walls of Rome, which Belisarius constructed or restored, the materials of ancient architecture may be discerned;<sup>k</sup> and the whole fortification was completed, except in a chasm still extant between the Pincian and Flaminian gates, which the prejudices of the Goths and Romans left under the effectual guard of St. Peter the apostle.<sup>l</sup> The battlements or bastions were shaped in sharp angles; a ditch, broad and deep, protected the foot of the rampart; and the archers on the rampart were assisted by military engines; the *balista*, a powerful cross-bow, which darted short but massy arrows; the *onagri*, or wild asses, which, on the principle of a sling, threw stones and bullets of an enormous size.<sup>m</sup> A chain was drawn across the Tiber; the arches of the aqueducts were made impervious, and the mole or

<sup>k</sup> The accurate eye of Nardini (*Roma Antica*, l. i, c. viii, p. 31) could distinguish the tumultuarie opera di Belisario.

<sup>l</sup> The fissure and leaning in the upper part of the wall, which Procopius observed, (*Goth. l. i, c. 13*), is visible to the present hour, (*Donat. Roma Vetust.*, l. 1, c. 17, p. 53, 54).

<sup>m</sup> Lipsius (*Opp. tom. iii*; *Poliorect. l. iii*) was ignorant of this clear and conspicuous passage of Procopius, (*Goth. l. i, c. 21*). The engine was named *onagres*, the wild ass, a *calcitrando*, (*Hen. Steph. Thesaur. Linguae Græc. tom. ii, p. 1340, 1341*; *tom. iii, p. 871*). I have seen an ingenious model, contrived and executed by General Melville, which imitates or surpasses the art of antiquity.

CHAP.

XLI.

sepulchre of Hadrian<sup>a</sup> was converted, for the first time, to the uses of a citadel. That venerable structure, which contained the ashes of the Antonines, was a circular turret rising from a quadrangular basis: it was covered with the white marble of Paros, and decorated by the statues of gods and heroes; and the lover of the arts must read with a sigh, that the works of Praxiteles or Lysippus were torn from their lofty pedestals, and hurled into the ditch on the heads of the besiegers.<sup>a</sup> To each of his lieutenants, Belisarius assigned the defence of a gate, with the wise and peremptory instruction, that, whatever might be the alarm, they should steadily adhere to their respective posts, and trust their general for the safety of Rome. The formidable host of the Goths was insufficient to embrace the ample measure of the city; of the fourteen gates, seven only were invested from the Prænestine to the Flaminian way; and Vitiges divided his troops into six camps, each of which was fortified with a ditch and rampart. On the Tuscan side of the river, a seventh encampment was formed in the field or circus of the Vatican, for the important purpose of commanding the Milvian bridge

<sup>a</sup> The description of this mausoleum, or mole, in Procopius, (l. i. c. 25), is the first and best. The height above the walls *αχθὸς αἱ λείψανον*. On Nolli's great plan, the sides measure 260 English feet.

• Praxiteles excelled in Fauns, and that of Athens was his own master-piece. Rome now contains above thirty of the same character. When the ditch of St. Angelo was cleansed under Urban VIII, the workmen found the sleeping Faun of the Barberini palace: but a leg, a thigh, and the right arm, had been broken from that beautiful statue, (Winckelman, Hist. de l'Art, tom. ii. p. 52, 53; tom. iii. p. 265).

and the course of the Tiber; but they approached with devotion the adjacent church of St. Peter; and the threshold of the holy apostles was respected during the siege by a Christian enemy. In the ages of victory, as often as the senate decreed some distant conquest, the consul denounced hostilities, by unbarring, in solemn pomp, the gates of the temple of Janus.<sup>p</sup> Domestic war now rendered the admonition superfluous, and the ceremony was superseded by the establishment of a new religion. But the brazen temple of Janus was left standing in the forum; of a size sufficient only to contain the statue of the god, five cubits in height, of a human form, but with two faces, directed to the east and west. The double gates were likewise of brass; and a fruitless effort to turn them on their rusty hinges, revealed the scandalous secret, that some Romans were still attached to the superstition of their ancestors.

Eighteen days were employed by the besiegers, to provide all the instruments of attack which antiquity had invented. Fascines were prepared to fill the ditches, scaling-ladders to ascend the walls. The largest trees of the forest supplied the timbers of four battering-rams; their heads were armed with iron; they were suspended by ropes, and each of them was worked by the labour of fifty men. The lofty wooden turrets moved on wheels or

Repulses a  
general  
assault of  
the Goths.

<sup>p</sup> Procopius has given the best description of the temple of Janus, a national deity of Latium, (Heyne, *Excurs. v.*, ad l. vii., *Æneid*). It was once a gate in the primitive city of Romulus and Numa, (Nardini, p. 13, 256, 329). Virgil has described the ancient rite, like a poet and an antiquarian.

CHAP.  
XLI.

rollers, and formed a spacious platform of the level of the rampart. On the morning of the nineteenth day, a general attack was made from the Prænestine gate to the Vatican: seven Gothic columns, with their military engines, advanced to the assault; and the Romans who lined the ramparts, listened with doubt and anxiety to the cheerful assurances of their commander. As soon as the enemy approached the ditch, Belisarius himself drew the first arrow; and such was his strength and dexterity, that he transfix-  
ed the foremost of the barbarian leaders. A shout of applause and victory was re-echoed along the wall. He drew a second arrow, and the stroke was followed with the same success and the same acclamation. The Roman general then gave the word, that the archers should aim at the teams of oxen; they were instantly covered with mortal wounds; the towers which they drew, remained useless and immoveable, and a single moment disconcerted the laborious projects of the king of the Goths. After this disappointment, Vitiges still continued, or feigned to continue, the assault of the Salarian gate, that he might divert the attention of his adversary, while his principal forces more strenuously attacked the Prænestine gate and the sepulchre of Hadrian, at the distance of three miles from each other. Near the former, the double walls of the Vivarium<sup>a</sup> were low or broken; the fortifications of the latter were feebly

<sup>a</sup> *Vivarium* was an angle in the new wall, inclosed for wild beasts, (Procopius, *Goth.* l. i, c. 23). The spot is still visible in Nardini (l. iv, c. 2, p. 159, 160) and Nolli's great plan of Rome.

guarded: the vigour of the Goths was excited by the hope of victory and spoil; and if a single post had given way, the Romans, and Rome itself, were irrecoverably lost. This perilous day was the most glorious in the life of Belisarius. Amidst tumult and dismay, the whole plan of the attack and defence was distinctly present to his mind; he observed the changes of each instant, weighed every possible advantage, transported his person to the scenes of danger, and communicated his spirit in calm and decisive orders. The contest was fiercely maintained from the morning to the evening; the Goths were repulsed on all sides, and each Roman might boast, that he had vanquished thirty barbarians, if the strange disproportion of numbers were not counterbalanced by the merit of one man. Thirty thousand Goths, according to the confession of their own chiefs, perished in this bloody action: and the multitude of the wounded was equal to that of the slain. When they advanced to the assault, their close disorder suffered not a javelin to fall without effect; and as they retired, the populace of the city joined the pursuit, and slaughtered, with impunity, the backs of their flying enemies. Belisarius instantly sallied from the gates; and while the soldiers chaunted his name and victory, the hostile engines of war were reduced to ashes. Such was the loss and consternation of the Goths, that, from this day, the siege of Rome degenerated into a tedious and indolent blockade; and they were incessantly harassed by the Roman general, who, in frequent skirmishes, destroyed

His sallies.

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

above five thousand of their bravest troops. Their cavalry was unpractised in the use of the bow; their archers served on foot; and this divided force was incapable of contending with their adversaries, whose lances and arrows, at a distance, or at hand, were alike formidable. The consummate skill of Belisarius embraced the favourable opportunities: and as he chose the ground and the moment, as he pressed the charge, or sounded the retreat, the squadrons which he detached were seldom unsuccessful. These partial advantages diffused an impatient ardour among the soldiers and people, who began to feel the hardships of a siege, and to disregard the dangers of a general engagement. Each plebeian conceived himself to be an hero, and the infantry, who, since the decay of discipline, were rejected from the line of battle, aspired to the ancient honours of the Roman legion. Belisarius praised the spirit of his troops, condemned their presumption, yielded to their clamours, and prepared the remedies of a defeat, the possibility of which he alone had courage to suspect. In the quarter of the Vatican, the Romans prevailed; and if the irreparable moments had not been wasted in the pillage of the camp, they might have occupied the Milvian bridge, and charged in the rear of the Gothic host. On the other side of the Ti-

\* For the Roman trumpet and its various notes, consult Lipsius, de Militiâ Romanâ, (Opp. tom. iii, l. iv; Dialog. x, p. 125-129). A mode of distinguishing the charge by the horse-trumpet of solid brass, and the retreat by the foot-trumpet of leather and light wood, was recommended by Procopius, and adopted by Belisarius, (Goth. l. ii, c. 23).

ber, Belisarius advanced from the Pincian and Salarian gates. But his army, four thousand soldiers perhaps, was lost in a spacious plain; they were encompassed and oppressed by fresh multitudes, who continually relieved the broken ranks of the barbarians. The valiant leaders of the infantry were unskilled to conquer; they died: the retreat (an hasty retreat) was covered by the prudence of the general, and the victors started back with affright from the formidable aspect of an armed rampart. The reputation of Belisarius was unsullied by a defeat; and the vain confidence of the Goths was not less serviceable to his designs, than the repentance and modesty of the Roman troops.

From the moment that Belisarius had determined to sustain a siege, his assiduous care provided Rome against the danger of famine, more dreadful than the Gothic arms. An extraordinary supply of corn was imported from Sicily: the harvests of Campania and Tuscany were forcibly swept for the use of the city: and the rights of private property were infringed by the strong plea of the public safety. It might easily be foreseen that the enemy would intercept the aqueducts; and the cessation of the water-mills was the first inconvenience, which was speedily removed by mooring large vessels, and fixing mill-stones in the current of the river. The stream was soon embarrassed by the trunks of trees, and polluted with dead bodies; yet so effectual were the precautions of the Roman general, that the waters of the Ti-

Distress of  
the city.

CHAP.

XLI.

ber still continued to give motion to the mills and drink to the inhabitants; the more distant quarters were supplied from domestic wells; and a besieged city might support, without impatience, the privation of her public baths. A large portion of Rome, from the Prænestine gate to the church of St. Paul, was never invested by the Goths; their excursions were restrained by the activity of the Moorish troops; the navigation of the Tiber, and the Latin, Appian, and Ostian ways, were left free and unmolested for the introduction of corn and cattle, or the retreat of the inhabitants, who sought a refuge in Campania or Sicily. Anxious to relieve himself from an useless and devouring multitude, Belisarius issued his peremptory orders for the instant departure of the women, the children, and the slaves; required his soldiers to dismiss their male and female attendants, and regulated their allowance, that one moiety should be given in provisions, and the other in money. His foresight was justified by the increase of the public distress, as soon as the Goths had occupied two important posts in the neighbourhood of Rome. By the loss of the port, or, as it is now called, the city of Porto, he was deprived of the country on the right of the Tiber, and the best communication with the sea; and he reflected with grief and anger, that three hundred men, could he have spared such a feeble band, might have defended its impregnable works. Seven miles from the capital, between the Appian and the Latin ways, two principal aqueducts, crossing, and again crossing each other, in-

closed within their solid and lofty arches a fortified space,<sup>\*</sup> where Vitiges established a camp of seven thousand Goths to intercept the convoys of Sicily and Campania. The granaries of Rome were insensibly exhausted, the adjacent country had been wasted with fire and sword: such scanty supplies as might yet be obtained by hasty excursions, were the reward of valour, and the purchase of wealth: the forage of the horses, and the bread of the soldiers, never failed; but in the last months of the siege, the people were exposed to the miseries of scarcity, unwholesome food,<sup>†</sup> and contagious disorders. Belisarius saw and pitied their sufferings; but he had foreseen, and he watched the decay of their loyalty, and the progress of their discontent. Adversity had awakened the Romans from the dreams of grandeur and freedom, and taught them the humiliating lesson, that it was of small moment to their real happiness, whether the name of their master was derived from the Gothic or the Latin language. The lieutenant of Justinian listened to their just complaints, but he rejected with disdain the idea of flight or capitulation; repressed their

\* Procopius (Goth. l. ii, c. 3) has forgot to name these aqueducts: nor can such a double intersection, at such a distance from Rome, be clearly ascertained from the writings of Frontinus Fabretti and Eschinard, de Aquis and de Agro Romano, or from the local maps of Lameti and Cingolani. Seven or eight miles from the city, (50 stadia), on the road to Albano, between the Latin and Appian ways, I discern the remains of an aqueduct, (probably the Septimian), a series (620 paces) of arches twenty-five feet high, (ὀψὺλῶν ἰσχυρῶν).

† They made sausages, αλλὰτται, of mule's flesh: unwholesome, if the animals had died of the plague. Otherwise the famous Bologna sausages are said to be made of ass flesh, (Voyages de Labat, tom. ii, p. 216).

CHAP. clamorous impatience for battle; amused them  
 with the prospect of sure and speedy relief; and  
 secured himself and the city from the effects of  
 their despair or treachery. Twice in each month  
 he changed the station of the officers to whom the  
 custody of the gates was committed: the various  
 precautions, of patrols, watch-words, lights, and  
 music, were repeatedly employed to discover what-  
 ever passed on the ramparts: out-guards were  
 posted beyond the ditch, and the trusty vigilance  
 of dogs supplied the more doubtful fidelity of man-  
 kind. A letter was intercepted, which assured  
 the king of the Goths, that the Asinarian gate,  
 adjoining to the Lateran church, should be se-  
 cretly opened to his troops. On the proof or  
 suspicion of treason, several senators were ba-  
 nished, and the pope Sylverius was summoned  
 to attend the representative of his sovereign,  
 at his head-quarters in the Pincian palace.<sup>a</sup>  
 The ecclesiastics who followed their bishop,  
 were detained in the first or second apartment,<sup>b</sup>  
 and he alone was admitted to the presence of  
 Belisarius. The conqueror of Rome and Car-  
 thage was modestly seated at the feet of An-  
 tonina, who reclined on a stately couch: the

Exile of  
 Pope Syl-  
 verius,  
 A. D. 537,  
 Nov. 17.

<sup>a</sup> The name of the palace, the hill, and the adjoining gate, were all derived from the senator Pincius. Some recent vestiges of temples and churches are now smoothed in the garden of the Minims of the Trinità del Monte, (Nardini, l. iv, c. 7, p. 196; Eschinard, p. 209, 210; the old plan of Buffalino, and the great plan of Nolli). Belisarius had fixed his station between the Pincian and Salarian gates, (Procop. Goth. l. i, c. 15).

<sup>b</sup> From the mention of the *primum et secundum velum*, it should seem that Belisarius, even in a siege, represented the emperor, and maintained the proud ceremonial of the Byzantine palace.

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

general was silent, but the voice of reproach and menace issued from the mouth of his imperious wife. Accused by credible witnesses, and the evidence of his own subscription, the successor of St. Peter was despoiled of his pontifical ornaments, clad in the mean habit of a monk, and embarked, without delay, for a distant exile in the East. At the emperor's command, the clergy of Rome proceeded to the choice of a new bishop; and after a solemn invocation of the Holy Ghost, elected the deacon Vigilius, who had purchased the papal throne by a bribe of two hundred pounds of gold. The profit, and consequently the guilt, of this simony, was imputed to Belisarius: but the hero obeyed the orders of his wife: Antonina served the passions of the empress; and Theodora lavished her treasures, in the vain hope of obtaining a pontiff hostile or indifferent to the council of Chalcedon.\*

The epistle of Belisarius to the emperor announced his victory, his danger, and his resolution. Deliverance of the city.  
“ According to your commands, we have entered  
“ the dominions of the Goths, and reduced to  
“ your obedience, Sicily, Campania, and the  
“ city of Rome: but the loss of these conquests will  
“ be more disgraceful than their acquisition was  
“ glorious. Hitherto we have successfully fought  
“ against the multitude of the barbarians, but their

\* Of this act of sacrilege, Procopius (Goth. l. i, c. 25) is a dry and reluctant witness. The narratives of Liberatus, (Breviarium, c. 22), and Anastasius, (de Vit. Pont. p. 39), are characteristic, but passionate. Hear the execrations of Cardinal Baronius, (A. D. 536, N<sup>o</sup>. 123; A. D. 538, N<sup>o</sup>. 4-20): portentum, facinus omni execratione dignum.

CHAP. "multitudes may finally prevail. Victory is the

XLI.

"gift of Providence, but the reputation of kings  
 "and generals depends on the success or the fail-  
 "ure of their designs. Permit me to speak with  
 "freedom: if you wish that we should live,  
 "send us subsistence; if you desire that we  
 "should conquer, send us arms, horses, and men.  
 "The Romans have received us as friends and  
 "deliverers; but in our present distress, *they*  
 "will be either betrayed by their confidence, or  
 "we shall be oppressed by *their* treachery and  
 "hatred. For myself, my life is consecrated to  
 "your service: it is yours to reflect, whether  
 "my death in this situation will contribute to  
 "the glory and prosperity of your reign." Per-  
 "haps, that reign would have been equally pro-  
 "sperous, if the peaceful master of the East had  
 "abstained from the conquest of Africa and Italy;  
 "but as Justinian was ambitious of fame, he made  
 "some efforts, they were feeble and languid, to  
 "support and rescue his victorious general. A  
 "reinforcement of sixteen hundred Slavonians  
 "and Huns was led by Martin and Valerian; and  
 "as they had reposed during the winter season in  
 "the harbours of Greece, the strength of the men  
 "and horses was not impaired by the fatigues of  
 "a sea-voyage; and they distinguished their va-  
 "lour in the first sally against the besiegers. A-  
 "bout the time of the summer solstice, Euthalius  
 "landed at Terracina with large sums of money for  
 "the payment of the troops; he cautiously proceed-  
 "ed along the Appian way, and this convoy entered

Rome through the gate Capena,\* while Belisarius, on the other side, diverted the attention of the Goths by a vigorous and successful skirmish. These seasonable aids, the use and reputation of which were dexterously managed by the Roman general, revived the courage, or at least the hopes, of the soldiers and people. The historian Procopius was despatched with an important commission, to collect the troops and provisions which Campania could furnish, or Constantinople had sent; and the secretary of Belisarius was soon followed by Antonina herself,\* who boldly traversed the posts of the enemy, and returned with the oriental succours to the relief of her husband and the besieged city. A fleet of three thousand Isaurians cast anchor in the bay of Naples, and afterwards at Ostia. Above two thousand horse, of whom a part were Thracians, landed at Tarentum; and, after the junction of five hundred soldiers of Campania, and a train of waggons laden with wine and flour, they directed their march on the Appian way, from Capua to the neighbourhood of Rome. The forces that arrived by land and sea, were united at the mouth of the Tiber. Antonina convened a council of war: it was resolved to surmount, with sails and oars, the adverse stream of the river: and the Goths were apprehensive of disturbing, by

\* The old Capena was removed by Aurelian to, or near, the modern gate of St. Sebastian, (see Nolli's plan). That memorable spot has been consecrated by the Egerian grove, the memory of Numa, triumphal arches, the sepulchres of the Scipios, Metelli, &c.

\* The expression of Procopius has an invidious cast—*εὐχρη* is *εὐ* *αἰσθαλὴς* *ἐν* *ἐφ' ᾧ* *συμβεβηκυῖα* *καταξενῖν*, (Goth. I. ii, c. 4). Yet he is speaking of a woman.

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

any rash hostilities, the negotiation to which Belisarius had craftily listened. They credulously believed, that they saw no more than the vanguard of a fleet and army, which already covered the Ionian sea and the plains of Campania; and the illusion was supported by the haughty language of the Roman general, when he gave audience to the ambassadors of Vitiges. After a specious discourse to vindicate the justice of his cause, they declared that, for the sake of peace, they were disposed to renounce the possession of Sicily. "The emperor is not less generous," replied his lieutenant, with a disdainful smile; "in return for a gift which you no longer possess, he presents you with an ancient province of the empire; he resigns to the Goths the sovereignty of the British island." Belisarius rejected with equal firmness and contempt the offer of a tribute; but he allowed the Gothic ambassadors to seek their fate from the mouth of Justinian himself; and consented, with seeming reluctance, to a truce of three months, from the winter solstice to the equinox of spring. Prudence might not safely trust either the oaths or hostages of the barbarians, but the conscious superiority of the Roman chief was expressed in the distribution of his troops. As soon as fear or hunger compelled the Goths to evacuate Alba, Porto, and Centumcellæ, their place was instantly supplied; the garrisons of Narni, Spoleto, and Perusia, were reinforced, and the seven camps of the besiegers were gradually encompassed with the calamities of a siege. The prayers and pilgrim-

Belisarius  
recovers  
many ci-  
ties of  
Italy.

age of **Darius**, bishop of Milan, were not without effect; and he obtained one thousand Thracians and Isaurians, to assist the revolt of Liguria against her Arian tyrant. At the same time, John the Sanguinary,<sup>b</sup> the nephew of Vitalian, was detached with two thousand chosen horse, first to Alba on the Fucine lake, and afterwards to the frontiers of Picenum on the Hadriatic sea. "In that province," said Belisarius, "the Goths have deposited their families and treasures, without a guard or the suspicion of danger. Doubtless they will violate the truce: let them feel your presence, before they hear of your motions. Spare the Italians; suffer not any fortified places to remain hostile in your rear; and faithfully reserve the spoil for an equal and common partition. It would not be reasonable," he added with a laugh, "that whilst we are toiling to the destruction of the drones, our more fortunate brethren should rifle and enjoy the honey."

The whole nation of the Ostrogoths had been assembled for the attack, and was almost entirely consumed in the siege of Rome. If any credit be due to an intelligent spectator, one third at least of their enormous host was destroyed, in frequent and bloody combats under the walls of the city. The bad fame and pernicious qualities of the summer air, might already be imputed to the decay of agriculture and population; and the evils of famine and pestilence were aggravated by their own licentiousness, and the unfriendly disposition of

The Goths  
raise the  
siege of  
Rome,  
A. D. 538,  
March.

<sup>b</sup> Anastasius (p. 40) has preserved this epithet of *Sanguinarius*, which might do honour to a tiger.

CHAP. the country. While Vitiges struggled with his  
XLI. fortune ; while he hesitated between shame and  
ruin, his retreat was hastened by domestic alarms.  
The king of the Goths was informed by trembling messengers, that John the Sanguinary spread the devastations of war from the Appenine to the Hadriatic ; that the rich spoils and innumerable captives of Picenum were lodged in the fortifications of Rimini ; and that this formidable chief had defeated his uncle, insulted his capital, and seduced, by secret correspondence, the fidelity of his wife, the imperious daughter of Amalasontha. Yet, before he retired, Vitiges made a last effort either to storm or to surprise the city. A secret passage was discovered in one of the aqueducts ; two citizens of the Vatican were tempted by bribes to intoxicate the guards of the Aurelian gate ; an attack was meditated on the walls beyond the Tiber in a place which was not fortified with towers ; and the barbarians advanced, with torches and scaling-ladders, to the assault of the Pincian gate. But every attempt was defeated by the intrepid vigilance of Belisarius and his band of veterans, who, in the most perilous moments, did not regret the absence of their companions ; and the Goths, alike destitute of hope and subsistence, clamorously urged their departure, before the truce should expire, and the Roman cavalry should again be united. One year and nine days after the commencement of the siege, an army so lately strong and triumphant, burnt their tents, and tumultuously repassed the Milvian bridge. They repassed

CHAP.

XLI.

not with impunity : their thronging multitudes, oppressed in a narrow passage, were driven headlong into the Tiber, by their own fears and the pursuit of the enemy ; and the Roman general, sallying from the Pincian gate, inflicted a severe and disgraceful wound on their retreat. The slow length of a sickly and desponding host was heavily dragged along the Flaminian way ; from whence the barbarians were sometimes compelled to deviate, lest they should encounter the hostile garrisons that guarded the high road to Rimini and Ravenna. Yet so powerful was this flying army, that Vitiges spared ten thousand men for the defence of the cities which he was most solicitous to preserve, and detached his nephew Uraias, with an adequate force, for the chastisement of rebellious Milan. At the head of his principal army, he besieged Rimini, only thirty-three miles distant from the Gothic capital. A feeble rampart, and a shallow ditch, were maintained by the skill and valour of John the Sanguinary, who shared the danger and fatigue of the meanest soldier, and emulated, on a theatre less illustrious, the military virtues of his great commander. The towers and battering engines of the barbarians were rendered useless ; their attacks were repulsed ; and the tedious blockade, which reduced the garrison to the last extremity of hunger, afforded time for the union and march of the Roman forces. A fleet which had surprised Ancona, sailed along the coast of the Hadriatic, to the relief of the besieged city. The eunuch Narses landed in Picenum with two thousand Heruli and five thousand of the bravest

Lose Rimini.

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

Retire to  
Ravenna.Jealousy  
of the Ro-  
man ge-  
nerals,  
A. D. 538.

troops of the East. The rock of the Appenine was forced; ten thousand veterans moved round the foot of the mountains, under the command of Belisarius himself; and a new army, whose encampment blazed with innumerable lights, appeared to advance along the Flaminian way. Overwhelmed with astonishment and despair, the Goths abandoned the siege of Rimini, their tents, their standards, and their leaders; and Vitiges, who gave or followed the example of flight, never halted till he found a shelter within the walls and morasses of Ravenna.

To these walls, and to some fortresses destitute of any mutual support, the Gothic monarchy was now reduced. The provinces of Italy had embraced the party of the emperor; and his army, gradually recruited to the number of twenty thousand men, must have achieved an easy and rapid conquest, if their invincible powers had not been weakened by the discord of the Roman chiefs. Before the end of the siege, an act of blood, ambiguous and indiscreet, sullied the fair fame of Belisarius. Presidius, a loyal Italian, as he fled from Ravenna to Rome, was rudely stopped by Constantine, the military governor of Spoleto, and despoiled, even in a church, of two daggers richly inlaid with gold and precious stones. As soon as the public danger had subsided, Presidius complained of the loss and injury: his complaint was heard, but the order of restitution was disobeyed by the pride and avarice of the offender. Exasperated by the delay, Presidius boldly arrested the general's horse as he passed through the forum;

and, with the spirit of a citizen, demanded the common benefit of the Roman laws. The honour of Belisarius was engaged; he summoned a council; claimed the obedience of his subordinate officer; and was provoked, by an insolent reply, to call hastily for the presence of his guards. Constantine, viewing their entrance as the signal of death, drew his sword, and rushed on the general, who nimbly eluded the stroke, and was protected by his friends; while the desperate assassin was disarmed, dragged into a neighbouring chamber, and executed, or rather murdered, by the guards, at the arbitrary command of Belisarius. In this hasty act of violence, the guilt of Constantine was no longer remembered; the despair and death of that valiant officer were secretly imputed to the revenge of Antonina; and each of his colleagues, conscious of the same rapine, was apprehensive of the same fate. The fear of a common enemy suspended the effects of their envy and discontent: but in the confidence of approaching victory, they instigated a powerful rival to oppose the conqueror of Rome and Africa. From the domestic service of the palace, and the administration of the private revenue, Narses the eunuch was suddenly exalted to the head of an army; and the spirit of an hero,

Death of  
Constantine.

The eu-  
nuch  
Narses.

\* This transaction is related in the public history (Goth. l. ii, c. 8) with candour or caution; in the *Anecdotes* (c. 7) with malevolence or freedom; but Marcellinus, or rather his continuator, (in *Chron.*), casts a shade of premeditated assassination over the death of Constantine. He had performed good service at Rome and Spoleto, (Procop. Goth. l. i, c. 7, 14); but Alemannus confounds him with a Constantianus comes stabuli.

CHAP.

XLI.

who afterwards equalled the merit and glory of Belisarius, served only to perplex the operations of the Gothic war. To his prudent counsels, the relief of Rimini was ascribed by the leaders of the discontented faction, who exhorted Narses to assume an independent and separate command. The epistle of Justinian had indeed enjoined his obedience to the general; but the dangerous exception, "as far as may be advantageous to the public service," reserved some freedom of judgment to the discreet favourite, who had so lately departed from the *sacred* and familiar conversation of his sovereign. In the exercise of this doubtful right, the eunuch perpetually dissented from the opinions of Belisarius; and, after yielding with reluctance to the siege of Urbino, he deserted his colleague in the night, and marched away to the conquest of the Æmilian province. The fierce and formidable bands of the Heruli were attached to the person of Narses;<sup>d</sup> ten thousand Romans and confederates were persuaded to march under his banners; every malecontent embraced the fair opportunity of revenging his private or imaginary wrongs; and the remaining troops of Belisarius were divided and dispersed from the garrisons of Sicily to the shores of the Adriatic. His skill and perseverance overcame every obstacle: Urbino was taken, the sieges of Fæsulæ, Orvieto,

Firmness  
and au-  
thority of  
Belisarius.

<sup>d</sup> They refused to serve after his departure; sold their captives and cattle to the Goths; and swore never to fight against them. Procopius introduces a curious digression on the manners and adventures of this wandering nation, a part of whom finally emigrated to Thule or Scandinavia, (Goth. l. ii, c. 14, 15).

and Auximum, were undertaken and vigorously prosecuted; and the eunuch Narses was at length recalled to the domestic cares of the palace. All dissensions were healed, and all opposition was subdued, by the temperate authority of the Roman general, to whom his enemies could not refuse their esteem; and Belisarius inculcated the salutary lesson, that the forces of the state should compose one body, and be animated by one soul. But, in the interval of discord, the Goths were permitted to breathe; an important season was lost, Milan was destroyed, and the northern provinces of Italy were afflicted by an inundation of the Franks.

When Justinian first meditated the conquest of Italy, he sent ambassadors to the kings of the Franks, and abjured them, by the common ties of alliance and religion, to join in the holy enterprise against the Arians. The Goths, as their wants were more urgent, employed a more effectual mode of persuasion, and vainly strove, by the gift of lands and money, to purchase the friendship, or at least the neutrality, of a light and perfidious nation.\* But the arms of Belisarius, and the revolt of the Italians, had no sooner shaken the Gothic monarchy, than Theodebert of Austrasia, the most powerful and warlike of the Merovingian kings, was persuaded to succour their distress by an indirect and seasonable aid. Without expecting the consent of their sovereign, ten thousand Burgundians, his recent subjects, de-

Invasion  
of Italy by  
the  
Franks,  
A. D. 538,  
539.

\* This national reproach of perfidy (Procop. Goth. l. ii, c. 25) offends the ear of la Mothe le Vayer, (tom. viii, p. 163-165), who criticises, as if he had not read, the Greek historian.

CHAP.

XLI.

~~~~~

Destruc-  
tion of Mi-  
lan.

scended from the Alps, and joined the troops which Vitiges had sent to chastise the revolt of Milan. After an obstinate siege, the capital of Liguria was reduced by famine, but no capitulation could be obtained, except for the safe retreat of the Roman garrison. Datius, the orthodox bishop, who had seduced his countrymen to rebellion<sup>f</sup> and ruin, escaped to the luxury and honours of the Byzantine court;<sup>g</sup> but the clergy, perhaps the Arian clergy, were slaughtered at the foot of their own altars by the defenders of the catholic faith. Three hundred thousand males were reported to be slain;<sup>h</sup> the female sex, and the more precious spoil, was resigned to the Burgundians; and the houses, or at least the walls of Milan, were levelled with the ground. The Goths, in their last moments, were revenged by the destruction of a city, second only to Rome in size and opulence, in the splendour of its buildings, or the number of its inhabitants; and Belisarius sympathized alone in the fate of his deserted and devoted friends. Encouraged by this successful

<sup>f</sup> Baronius applauds his treason, and justifies the catholic bishops—*qui ne sub heretico principe degant omnem lapidem movent*—an useful caution. The more rational Muratori (*Annali d'Italia*, tom. v, p. 54) hints at the guilt of perjury, and blames at least the imprudence of Datius.

<sup>g</sup> St. Datius was more successful against devils than against barbarians. He travelled with a numerous retinue, and occupied at Corinth a large house, (Baronius, A. D. 538, N<sup>o</sup>. 89; A. D. 539, N<sup>o</sup>. 20).

<sup>h</sup> Μυριάδς; τριακοντα, (compare Procopius, Goth. l. ii, c. 7, 21). Yet such population is incredible; and the second or third city of Italy need not repine if we only decimate the numbers of the present text. Both Milan and Genoa revived in less than thirty years, (Paul Diacon. de Gestis Langobard. l. ii, c. 38).

inroad, Theodebert himself, in the ensuing spring, invaded the plains of Italy with an army of one hundred thousand barbarians.<sup>1</sup> The king, and some chosen followers, were mounted on horseback, and armed with lances; the infantry, without bows or spears, were satisfied with a shield, a sword, and a double-edged battle-axe, which, in their hands, became a deadly and unerring weapon. Italy trembled at the march of the Franks; and both the Gothic prince and the Roman general, alike ignorant of their designs, solicited, with hope and terror, the friendship of these dangerous allies. Till he had secured the passage of the Po on the bridge of Pavia, the grandson of Clovis dissembled his intentions, which he at length declared, by assaulting, almost at the same instant, the hostile camps of the Romans and Goths. Instead of uniting their arms, they fled with equal precipitation: and the fertile, though desolate, provinces of Liguria and Æmia, were abandoned to a licentious host of barbarians, whose rage was not mitigated by any thoughts of settlement or conquest. Among the cities which they ruined, Genoa, not yet constructed of marble, is particularly enumerated: and the deaths of thousands, according to the regular practice of war, appear to have excited less horror than some idolatrous sacrifices of women and children, which were performed

<sup>1</sup> Besides Procopius, perhaps too Roman, see the *Chronicles* of Marius and Marcellinus, Jornandes, (*In Success. Regn. in Muratori*, tom. i. p. 241), and Gregory of Tours, (l. iii, c. 32, in tom. ii, of the *Historians of France*). Gregory supposes a defeat of Belisarius, who, in Aimoin, (*de Gestis Franc.* l. ii, c. 23, in tom. iii, p. 59), is slain by the Franks.

CHAP.  
XLI.

with impunity in the camp of the most Christian king. If it were not a melancholy truth, that the first and most cruel sufferings must be the lot of the innocent and helpless, history might exult in the misery of the conquerors, who, in the midst of riches, were left destitute of bread or wine, reduced to drink the waters of the Po, and to feed on the flesh of distempered cattle. The dysentery swept away one-third of their army; and the clamours of his subjects, who were impatient to pass the Alps, disposed Theodebert to listen with respect to the mild exhortations of Belisarius. The memory of this inglorious and destructive warfare was perpetuated on the medals of Gaul; and Justinian, without unsheathing his sword, assumed the title of conqueror of the Franks. The Merovingian prince was offended by the vanity of the emperor; he affected to pity the fallen fortunes of the Goths; and his insidious offer of a federal union was fortified by the promise or menace of descending from the Alps at the head of five hundred thousand men. His plans of conquest were boundless and perhaps chimerical. The king of Austrasia threatened to chastise Justinian, and to march to the gates of Constantinople:<sup>k</sup> he was overthrown and slain<sup>l</sup> by a wild bull,<sup>m</sup> as he hunted in the Belgic or German forests.

<sup>k</sup> Agathias, l. i, p. 14, 15. Could he have seduced or subdued the Gepidæ or Lombards of Pannonia, the Greek historian is confident that he must have been destroyed in Thrace.

<sup>l</sup> The king pointed his spear—the bull overturned a tree on his head—he expired the same day. Such is the story of Agathias; but the original historians of France (tom. ii, p. 202, 403, 558, 667) impute his death to a fever.

<sup>m</sup> Without losing myself in a labyrinth of species and names—the aurochs,

CHAP.

XII.

Belisarius  
besieges  
Ravenna.

As soon as Belisarius was delivered from his foreign and domestic enemies, he seriously applied his forces to the final reduction of Italy. In the siege of Osimo, the general was nearly transpierced with an arrow, if the mortal stroke had not been intercepted by one of his guards, who lost, in that pious office, the use of his hand. The Goths of Osimo, four thousand warriors, with those of Fæsulæ and the Cottian Alps, were among the last who maintained their independence; and their gallant resistance, which almost tired the patience, deserved the esteem, of the conqueror. His prudence refused to subscribe the safe conduct which they asked, to join their brethren of Ravenna; but they saved, by an honourable capitulation, one moiety at least of their wealth, with the free alternative of retiring peaceably to their estates, or inlisting to serve the emperor in his Persian wars. The multitudes which yet adhered to the standard of Vitiges, far surpassed the number of the Roman troops; but neither prayers, nor defiance, nor the extreme danger of his most faithful subjects, could tempt the Gothic king beyond the fortifications of Ravenna. These fortifications were, indeed, impregnable to the assaults of art or violence; and when Belisarius invested the capital, he was soon convinced that famine only could tame the stubborn spirit of the barbarians. The sea, the land, and the channels of the Po, were guarded

*aurochs*, *urus*, *bisons*, *bubalus*, *bonasus*, *buffalo*, &c. (Buffon, *Hist Nat.* tom. xi, and *Supplement*, tom. iii, vi), it is certain, that in the sixth century a large wild species of horned cattle was hunted in the great forests of the Vosges in Lorraine, and the Ardennes, (Greg. Turon tom. ii, l. x, c. 10, p. 369).

CHAP.  
XLI.

by the vigilance of the Roman general; and his morality extended the rights of war to the practice of poisoning the waters,<sup>a</sup> and secretly firing the granaries<sup>b</sup> of a besieged city.<sup>c</sup> While he pressed the blockade of Ravenna, he was surprised by the arrival of two ambassadors from Constantinople, with a treaty of peace, which Justinian had imprudently signed, without deigning to consult the author of his victory. By this disgraceful and precarious agreement, Italy and the Gothic treasure were divided, and the provinces beyond the Po were left with the regal title to the successor of Theodoric. The ambassadors were eager to accomplish their salutary commission; the captive Vitiges accepted, with transport, the unexpected offer of a crown; honour was less prevalent among the Goths, than the want and appetite of food; and the Roman chiefs, who murmured at the continuance of the war, professed implicit submission

<sup>a</sup> In the siege of Auximum, he first laboured to demolish an old aqueduct, and then cast into the stream, 1. dead bodies: 2. mischievous herbs; and, 3. quick lime, which is named (says Procopius, l. ii, c. 29) *ετρανος* by the ancients; by the moderns *arleses*. Yet both words are used as synonymous in Galen, Dioscorides, and Lucian, (Hen. Steph. Thesaur. Ling. Græc. tom. iii, p. 748).

<sup>b</sup> The Goths suspected Mathasuinthas as an accomplice in the mischief, which perhaps was occasioned by accidental lightning.

<sup>c</sup> In strict philosophy, a limitation of the rights of war seems to imply nonsense and contradiction. Grotius himself is lost in an idle distinction between the *jus naturæ* and the *jus gentium*, between poison and infection. He balances in one scale the passages of Homer, (*Odys. A.* 259, &c.), and Florus, (l. ii, c. 20, N<sup>o</sup>. 7, ult.); and in the other, the examples of Solon (Pausanias, l. x, c. 37) and Belisarius. See his great work *De Jure Belli et Pacis*, l. iii, c. 4, s. 15, 16, 17, and in Barbeyrac's version, tom. ii, p. 257, &c. Yet I can understand the benefit and validity of an agreement, tacit or express, mutually to abstain from certain modes of hostility. See the Amphictyonic oath in Eschines, de Falsâ Legatione.

to the commands of the emperor. If Belisarius had possessed only the courage of a soldier, the laurel would have been snatched from his hand by timid and envious counsels; but in this decisive moment, he resolved, with the magnanimity of a statesman, to sustain alone the danger and merit of generous disobedience. Each of his officers gave a written opinion, that the siege of Ravenna was impracticable and hopeless: the general then rejected the treaty of partition, and declared his own resolution of leading Vitiges in chains to the feet of Justinian. The Goths retired with doubt and dismay: this peremptory refusal deprived them of the only signature which they could trust, and filled their minds with a just apprehension; that a sagacious enemy had discovered the full extent of their deplorable state. They compared the fame and fortune of Belisarius with the weakness of their ill-fated king; and the comparison suggested an extraordinary project, to which Vitiges, with apparent resignation, was compelled to acquiesce. Partition would ruin the strength, exile would disgrace the honour, of the nation; but they offered their arms, their treasures, and the fortifications of Ravenna, if Belisarius would disclaim the authority of a master, accept the choice of the Goths, and assume, as he had deserved, the kingdom of Italy. If the false lustre of a diadem could have tempted the loyalty of a faithful subject, his prudence must have foreseen the inconstancy of the barbarians, and his rational ambition would prefer the safe and honourable station of a Roman general.

CHAP. Even the patience and seeming satisfaction with  
 XLI. which he entertained a proposal of treason, might  
 be susceptible of a malignant interpretation. But  
 the lieutenant of Justinian was conscious of his  
 own rectitude: he entered into a dark and  
 crooked path, as it might lead to the voluntary  
 submission of the Goths; and his dexterous po-  
 licy persuaded them that he was disposed to  
 comply with their wishes, without engaging an  
 oath or a promise for the performance of a trea-  
 ty which he secretly abhorred. The day of the  
 surrender of Ravenna was stipulated by the  
 Gothic ambassadors: a fleet, laden with provi-  
 sions, sailed as a welcome guest into the deepest  
 recess of the harbour: the gates were opened to  
 the fancied king of Italy; and Belisarius, with-  
 out meeting an enemy, triumphantly marched  
 through the streets of an impregnable city.<sup>4</sup>  
 The Romans were astonished by their success;  
 the multitude of tall and robust barbarians were  
 confounded by the image of their own patience;  
 and the masculine females, spitting in the faces  
 of their sons and husbands, most bitterly re-  
 proached them for betraying their dominion and  
 freedom to these pigmies of the south, contempt-  
 ible in their numbers, diminutive in their stature.  
 Before the Goths could recover from the first sur-  
 prise, and claim the accomplishment of their

Subdues  
 the Go-  
 thic king-  
 dom of  
 Italy,  
 A. D. 539,  
 December.

<sup>4</sup> Ravenna was taken, not in the year 540, but in the latter end of 539; and Pagi (tom. ii, p. 569) is rectified by Muratori, (*Annali d'Italia*, tom. v, p. 62), who proves, from an original act on papyrus, (*Antiquit. Italice Medii Ævi*, tom. ii, dissert. xxxii, p. 999-1007; Maffei, *Istoria Diplomat.* p. 155-160), that before the 3d of January 540, peace and free correspondence were restored between Ravenna and Faenza.

doubtful hopes, the victor established his power in Ravenna, beyond the danger of repentance and revolt. Vitiges, who perhaps had attempted to escape, was honourably guarded in his palace ; the flower of the Gothic youth was selected for the service of the emperor ; the remainder of the people was dismissed to their peaceful habitations in the southern provinces ; and a colony of Italians was invited to replenish the depopulated city. The submission of the capital was imitated in the towns and villages of Italy, which had not been subdued, or even visited, by the Romans ; and the independent Goths who remained in arms at Pavia and Verona, were ambitious only to become the subjects of Belisarius. But his inflexible loyalty rejected, except as the substitute of Justinian, their oaths of allegiance ; and he was not offended by the reproach of their deputies, that he rather chose to be a slave than a king.

CHAP.  
XLI.

Captivity  
of Vitiges.

After the second victory of Belisarius, envy again whispered, Justinian listened, and the hero was recalled. "The remnant of the Gothic war was no longer worthy of his presence : a gracious sovereign was impatient to reward his services, and to consult his wisdom ; and he alone was capable of defending the East against the innumerable armies of Persia." Belisarius under-

Return  
and glory  
of Belisa-  
rius.

\* He was seized by John the Sanguinary, but an oath or sacrament was pledged for his safety in the Basilica Julii, (Hist. Miscell. l. xvii, in Muratori, tom. i, p. 107). Anastasius (in Vit. Pont. p. 40) gives a dark but probable account. Montfaucon is quoted by Mascon (Hist. of the Germans, xii, 21) for a votive shield representing the captivity of Vitiges, and now in the collection of Signor Landi at Rome.

CHAP.

XLI.

stood the suspicion, accepted the excuse, embarked at Ravenna his spoils and trophies; and proved, by his ready obedience, that such an abrupt removal from the government of Italy was not less unjust than it might have been indiscreet. The emperor received with honourable courtesy, both Vitiges and his more noble consort: and as the king of the Goths conformed to the Athanasian faith, he obtained with a rich inheritance of lands in Asia, the rank of senator and patrician.\* Every spectator admired, without peril, the strength and stature of the young barbarians: they adored the majesty of the throne, and promised to shed their blood in the service of their benefactor. Justinian deposited in the Byzantine palace the treasures of the Gothic monarchy. A flattering senate was sometimes admitted to gaze on the magnificent spectacle; but it was enviously secluded from the public view; and the conqueror of Italy renounced, without a murmur, perhaps without a sigh, the well-earned honours of a second triumph. His glory was indeed exalted above all external pomp; and the faint and hollow praises of the court were supplied, even in a servile age, by the respect and admiration of his country. Whenever he appeared in the streets and public places of Constantinople, Belisarius attracted and satisfied the eyes of the people. His lofty stature and

\* Vitiges lived two years at Constantinople, and imperatoris in affectu convictus (or conjunctus) rebus excessit humanis. His widow, *Mathasuenta*, the wife and mother of the patricians, the elder and younger Germanus, united the streams of Anician and Amali blood, (Jornandes, c. 60, p. 221, in Muratori, tom. i).

majestic countenance fulfilled their expectations of an hero; the meanest of his fellow-citizens were emboldened by his gentle and gracious demeanour; and the martial train which attended his footsteps, left his person more accessible than in a day of battle. Seven thousand horsemen, matchless for beauty and valour, were maintained in the service, and at the private expence of the general.<sup>t</sup> Their prowess was always conspicuous in single combats, or in the foremost ranks; and both parties confessed, that in the siege of Rome, the guards of Belisarius had alone vanquished the barbarian host. Their numbers were continually augmented by the bravest and most faithful of the enemy; and his fortunate captives, the Vandals, the Moors, and the Goths, emulated the attachment of his domestic followers. By the union of liberality and justice, he acquired the love of the soldiers, without alienating the affections of the people. The sick and wounded were relieved with medicines and money; and still more efficaciously, by the healing visits and smiles of their commander. The loss of a weapon or an horse was instantly repaired, and each deed of valour was rewarded by the rich and honourable gifts of a bracelet or a collar, which were rendered more precious by the judgment of Belisarius. He was endeared to the husbandmen, by the peace and plenty which they enjoyed under

<sup>t</sup> Procopius, Goth. l. iii, c. 1. Aimoin, a French monk of the xith century, who had obtained, and has disfigured, some authentic information of Belisarius, mentions, in his name, 12,000 *pueri* or slaves—quos propriis alimus stipendiis—besides 18,000 soldiers, (Historians of France, tom. iii. De Gestis Franc. l. ii, c. 6, p. 43).

CHAP. the shadow of his standard. Instead of being in-  
 XL. jured, the country was enriched by the march  
 ..... of the Roman armies; and such was the rigid  
 discipline of their camp, that not an apple was  
 gathered from the tree, not a path could be tra-  
 ced in the fields of corn. Belisarius was chaste  
 and sober. In the license of a military life, none  
 could boast that they had seen him intoxicat-  
 ed with wine: the most beautiful captives of  
 Gothic or Vandal race were offered to his em-  
 braces; but he turned aside from their charms,  
 and the husband of Antonina was never suspected  
 of violating the laws of conjugal fidelity. The  
 spectator and historian of his exploits has ob-  
 served, that amidst the perils of war, he was dar-  
 ing without rashness, prudent without fear, slow  
 or rapid according to the exigencies of the mo-  
 ment; that in the deepest distress he was ani-  
 mated by real or apparent hope, but that he was  
 modest and humble in the most prosperous for-  
 tune. By these virtues, he equalled or excelled  
 the ancient masters of the military art. Victory,  
 by sea and land, attended his arms. He subdu-  
 ed Africa, Italy, and the adjacent islands, led  
 away captives the successors of Genseric and  
 Theodoric; filled Constantinople with the spoils  
 of their palaces, and in the space of six years re-  
 covered half the provinces of the western empire.  
 In his fame and merit, in wealth and power, he  
 remained, without a rival, the first of the Roman  
 subjects: the voice of envy could only magnify his  
 dangerous importance; and the emperor might  
 applaud his own discerning spirit which had dis-  
 covered and raised the genius of Belisarius.

CHAP.

XLI.

Secret his-  
tory of his  
wife An-  
tonina.

It was the custom of the Roman triumphs, that a slave should be placed behind the chariot to remind the conqueror of the instability of fortune, and the infirmities of human nature. Procopius, in his *Anecdotes*, has assumed that servile and ungrateful office. The generous reader may cast away the libel, but the evidence of facts will adhere to his memory; and he will reluctantly confess, that the fame, and even the virtue, of Belisarius, were polluted by the lust and cruelty of his wife; and that the hero deserved an appellation which may not drop from the pen of the decent historian. The mother of Antonina<sup>a</sup> was a theatrical prostitute, and both her father and grandfather exercised at Thessalonica and Constantinople the vile, though lucrative, profession of charioteers. In the various situations of their fortune, she became the companion, the enemy, the servant, and the favourite of the empress Theodora; these loose and ambitious females had been connected by similar pleasures; they were separated by the jealousy of vice, and at length reconciled by the partnership of guilt. Before her marriage with Belisarius, Antonina had one husband and many lovers; Photius, the son of her former nuptials, was of an age to distinguish himself at the siege of Naples; and it was not till

<sup>a</sup> The diligence of Alemannus could add but little to the four first and most curious chapters of the *Anecdotes*. Of these strange *Anecdotes*, a part may be true, because probable—and a part true, because improbable. Procopius must have *known* the former, and the latter he could scarcely *invent*.

CHAP.  
XII.Her lover  
Theodo-  
sius.

the autumn of her age and beauty\* that she indulged a scandalous attachment to a Thracian youth. Theodosius had been educated in the Eunomian heresy; the African voyage was consecrated by the baptism and auspicious name of the first soldier who embarked; and the proselyte was adopted into the family of his spiritual parents,† Belisarius and Antonina. Before they touched the shores of Africa, this holy kindred degenerated into sensual love; and as Antonina soon overleaped the bounds of modesty and caution, the Roman general was alone ignorant of his own dishonour. During their residence at Carthage, he surprised the two lovers in a subterraneous chamber, solitary, warm, and almost naked. Anger flashed from his eyes. "With the help of this young man," said the unblushing Antonina, "I was secreting our most precious effects from the knowledge of Justinian." The youth resumed his garments, and the pious husband consented to disbelieve the evidence of his own senses. From this pleasing and perhaps voluntary delusion, Belisarius was awakened at Syracuse, by the officious information of Macedonia: and that female attendant, after requiring an oath for her security, produced two chamber-

\* Procopius insinuates, (Anecd. c. 4), that, when Belisarius returned to Italy, (A. D. 543), Antonina was sixty years of age. A forced, but more polite construction, which refers that date to the moment when he was writing, (A. D. 559), would be compatible with the manhood of Photius, (Gothic. l. i, c. 10), in 536.

† Compare the Vandalic War (l. i, c. 12) with the Anecdotes, (c. i), and Alemanus, (p. 2, 3). This mode of baptismal adoption was revived by Leo the philosopher.

lains, who, like herself, had often beheld the adulteries of Antonina. An hasty flight into Asia saved Theodosius from the justice of an injured husband, who had signified to one of his guards the order of his death; but the tears of Antonina, and her artful seductions, assured the credulous hero of her innocence; and he stooped, against his faith and judgment, to abandon those imprudent friends who had presumed to accuse or doubt the chastity of his wife. The revenge of a guilty woman is implacable and bloody: the unfortunate Macedonia, with the two witnesses, were secretly arrested by the minister of her cruelty: their tongues were cut out, their bodies were hacked into small pieces, and their remains were cast into the sea of Syracuse. A rash, though judicious saying of Constantine, "I would sooner have punished the adulteress than the boy," was deeply remembered by Antonina: and two years afterwards, when despair had armed that officer against his general, her sanguinary advice decided and hastened his execution. Even the indignation of Photius was not forgiven by his mother; the exile of her son prepared the recal of her lover; and Theodosius condescended to accept the pressing and humble invitation of the conqueror of Italy. In the absolute direction of his household, and in the important commissions of peace and war,\* the favourite youth most rapidly acquired a fortune of four hundred thousand

\* In November 537, Photius arrested the pope, (*Liberat. Brev. c. 22. Pagi. tom. ii. p. 562*). About the end of 539, Belisarius sent Theodosius—*αὐτὴν τῇ βικίᾳ τῇ αὐτῇ ἐπέστειλε*—on an important and lucrative commission to Ravenna, (*Goth. l. ii. c. 18*).

CHAP.  
XLI.

pounds sterling; and after their return to Constantinople, the passion of Antonina, at least, continued ardent and unabated. But fear, devotion, and lassitude, perhaps, inspired Theodosius with more serious thoughts. He dreaded the busy scandal of the capital, and the indiscreet fondness of the wife of Belisarius; escaped from her embraces, and retiring to Ephesus, shaved his head, and took refuge in the sanctuary of a monastic life. The despair of the new Ariadne could scarcely have been excused by the death of her husband. She wept, she tore her hair, she filled the palace with her cries; "she had lost the dearest of friends, a tender, a faithful, a laborious friend!" But her warm entreaties, fortified by the prayers of Belisarius, were insufficient to draw the holy monk from the solitude of Ephesus. It was not till the general moved forward for the Persian war, that Theodosius could be tempted to return to Constantinople; and the short interval before the departure of Antonina herself was boldly devoted to love and pleasure.

Resentment of  
Belisarius  
and her  
son Pho-  
tius.

A philosopher may pity and forgive the infirmities of female nature, from which he receives no real injury; but contemptible is the husband who feels, and yet endures, his own infamy in that of his wife. Antonina pursued her son with implacable hatred; and the gallant Photius\* was exposed to her secret persecutions in the camp beyond the Tigris. Enraged by his own wrongs,

\* Theophanes (Chronograph. p. 204) styles him *Photinus*, the son-in-law of Belisarius; and he is copied by the *Historia Miscella* and *Anastasius*.

and by the dishonour of his blood, he cast away in his turn the sentiments of nature, and revealed to Belisarius the turpitude of a woman who had violated all the duties of a mother and a wife. From the surprise and indignation of the Roman general, his former credulity appears to have been sincere : he embraced the knees of the son of Antonina, adjured him to remember his obligations rather than his birth, and confirmed at the altar their holy vows of revenge and mutual defence. The dominion of Antonina was impaired by absence; and when she met her husband, on his return from the Persian confines, Belisarius, in his first and transient emotions, confined her person, and threatened her life. Photius was more resolved to punish, and less prompt to pardon; he flew to Ephesus; extorted from a trusty eunuch of his mother the full confession of her guilt; arrested Theodosius and his treasures in the church of St. John the apostle, and concealed his captives, whose execution was only delayed, in a secure and sequestered fortress of Cilicia. Such a daring outrage against public justice could not pass with impunity; and the cause of Antonina was espoused by the empress, whose favour she had deserved by the recent services of the disgrace of a prefect, and the exile and murder of a pope. At the end of the campaign, Belisarius was recalled; he complied, as usual, with the imperial mandate. His mind was not prepared for rebellion; his obedience, however adverse to the dictates of honour, was consonant to the wishes of his heart; and when he embraced his wife, at the command, and

CHAP.  
XLI.  
~~~~~

perhaps in the presence of the empress, the tender husband was disposed to forgive or to be forgiven. The bounty of Theodora reserved for her companion a more precious favour. "I have found," she said, "my dearest patrician, a pearl of inestimable value; it has not yet been viewed by any mortal eye; but the sight and the possession of this jewel are destined for my friend." As soon as the curiosity and impatience of Antonina were kindled, the door of a bed-chamber was thrown open, and she beheld her lover, whom the diligence of the eunuchs had discovered in his secret prison. Her silent wonder burst into passionate exclamations of gratitude and joy, and she named Theodora her queen, her benefactress, and her saviour. The monk of Ephesus was nourished in the palace with luxury and ambition; but instead of assuming, as he was promised, the command of the Roman armies, Theodosius expired in the first fatigues of an amorous interview. The grief of Antonina could only be assuaged by the sufferings of her son. A youth of consular rank, and a sickly constitution, was punished, without a trial, like a malefactor and a slave: yet such was the constancy of his mind, that Photius sustained the tortures of the scourge and the rack, without violating the faith which he had sworn to Belisarius. After this fruitless cruelty, the son of Antonina, while his mother feasted with the empress, was buried in her subterraneous prisons, which admitted not the distinction of night and day. He twice escaped to the most venerable sanctuaries of Constantinople,

Persecution of her son.

the churches of St. Sophia and of the Virgin; but his tyrants were insensible of religion as of pity; and the helpless youth, amidst the clamours of the clergy and people, was twice dragged from the altar to the dungeon. His third attempt was more successful. At the end of three years, the prophet Zacharia, or some mortal friend, indicated the means of an escape; he eluded the spies and guards of the empress, reached the holy sepulchre of Jerusalem, embraced the profession of a monk; and the abbot Photius was employed, after the death of Justinian, to reconcile and regulate the churches of Egypt. The son of Antonine suffered all that an enemy can inflict; her patient husband imposed on himself the more exquisite misery of violating his promise and deserting his friend.

In the succeeding campaign, Belisarius was again sent against the Persians: he saved the East, but he offended Theodora, and perhaps the emperor himself. The malady of Justinian had countenanced the rumour of his death; and the Roman general, on the supposition of that probable event, spoke the free language of a citizen and a soldier. His colleague Buzes, who concurred in the same sentiments, lost his rank, his liberty, and his health, by the persecution of the empress: but the disgrace of Belisarius was alleviated by the dignity of his own character, and the influence of his wife, who might wish to humble, but could not desire to ruin, the partner of her fortunes. Even his removal was coloured by the assurance, that the sinking state of Italy would be retrieved

CHAP.  
XLII.

Disgrace  
and suffer-  
ings of  
Belisarius

CHAP. by the single presence of its conqueror. But no  
 XLI. sooner had he returned, alone and defenceless,  
 than an hostile commission was sent to the East,  
 to seize his treasures and criminate his actions :  
 the guards and veterans who followed his private  
 banner, were distributed among the chiefs of the  
 army, and even the eunuchs presumed to cast lots  
 for the partition of his martial domestics. When  
 he passed with a small and sordid retinue through  
 the streets of Constantinople, his forlorn appear-  
 ance excited the amazement and compassion of  
 the people. Justinian and Theodora received  
 him with cold ingratitude ; the servile crowd,  
 with insolence and contempt ; and in the evening  
 he retired with trembling steps to his deserted  
 palace. An indisposition, feigned or real, had  
 confined Antonina to her apartment, and she  
 walked disdainfully silent in the adjacent portico,  
 while Belisarius threw himself on his bed, and  
 expected, in an agony of grief and terror, the  
 death which he had so often braved under the  
 walls of Rome. Long after sun-set a messenger  
 was announced from the empress ; he opened with  
 anxious curiosity the letter which contained the  
 sentence of his fate. “ You cannot be ignorant  
 “ how much you have deserved my displeasure.  
 “ I am not insensible of the services of Antonina.  
 “ To her merits and intercession I have granted  
 “ your life, and permit you to retain a part of your  
 “ treasures, which might be justly forfeited to the  
 “ state. Let your gratitude, where it is due, be  
 “ displayed, not in words, but in your future be-  
 “ haviour.” I know not how to believe or to re-

CHAP.

XLI.

late the transports with which the hero is said to have received this ignominious pardon. He fell prostrate before his wife, he kissed the feet of his saviour, and he devoutly promised to live the grateful and submissive slave of Antonina. A fine of one hundred and twenty thousand pounds sterling was levied on the fortunes of Belisarius; and with the office of count, or master of the royal stables, he accepted the conduct of the Italian war. At his departure from Constantino-ple, his friends, and even the public, were persuaded, that as soon as he regained his freedom, he would renounce his dissimulation; and that his wife, Theodora, and perhaps the emperor himself, would be sacrificed to the just revenge of a virtuous rebel. Their hopes were deceived; and the unconquerable patience and loyalty of Belisarius appear either *below* or *above* the character of a MAN.

\* The continuator of the chronicle of Marcellinus gives, in a few decent words, the substance of the Anecdotes.—Belisarius de Oriente evocatus, in offensam, periculumque incurrens grave, et invidiæ sub-jacens rursus remittitur in Italiam, (p. 51).

## CHAP. XLII.

*State of the barbaric world—Establishment of the Lombards on the Danube—Tribes and invasions of the Sclavonians—Origin, empire, and embassies of the Turks—The flight of the Avars—Chosroes I, or Nushirvan, king of Persia—His prosperous reign and wars with the Romans—The Cholchian or Lasic war—The Ethiopians.*

CHAP.  
XLII.

Weakness  
of the em-  
pire of Jus-  
tinian,  
A. D. 527-  
565.

OUR estimate of personal merit is relative to the common faculties of mankind. The aspiring efforts of genius, or virtue, either in active or speculative life, are measured, not so much by their real elevation, as by the height to which they ascend above the level of their age or country: and the same stature, which in a people of giants would pass unnoticed, must appear conspicuous in a race of pigmies. Leonidas, and his three hundred companions, devoted their lives at Thermopylæ; but the education of the infant, the boy, and the man, had prepared, and almost insured, this memorable sacrifice; and each Spartan would approve, rather than admire, an act of duty, of which himself and eight thousand of his fellow-citizens were equally capable.\* The great Pom-

\* It will be a pleasure, not a task, to read Herodotus, (l. vii, c. 104, 134, p. 550, 615). The conversation of Xerxes and Demaratus at Thermopylæ, is one of the most interesting and moral scenes in history. It was the torture of the royal Spartan to behold, with anguish and remorse, the virtue of his country.

pey might inscribe on his trophies, that he had defeated in battle two millions of enemies, and reduced fifteen hundred cities from the lake Mæotis to the Red Sea;<sup>b</sup> but the fortune of Rome flew before his eagles; the nations were oppressed by their own fears, and the invincible legions which he commanded, had been formed by the habits of conquest and the discipline of ages. In this view, the character of Belisarius may be deservedly placed above the heroes of the ancient republics. His imperfections flowed from the contagion of the times; his virtues were his own, the free gift of nature or reflection; he raised himself without a master or a rival, and so inadequate were the arms committed to his hand, that his sole advantage was derived from the pride and presumption of his adversaries. Under his command, the subjects of Justinian often deserved to be called Romans: but the unwarlike appellation of Greek was imposed as a term of reproach by the haughty Goths; who affected to blush, that they must dispute the kingdom of Italy with a nation of tragedians, pantomimes, and pirates.<sup>c</sup> The climate of Asia has indeed been found less congenial than that of Europe, to military spirit: those populous countries were enervated by luxury, despotism, and supersti-

<sup>b</sup> See this proud inscription in Pliny, (Hist. Natur. vii, 27). Few men have more exquisitely tasted of glory and disgrace: nor could Juvenal (Satir. x) produce a more striking example of the vicissitudes of fortune, and the vanity of human wishes.

<sup>c</sup> Τραϊκός . . . ἐξ ὧν τα προτέρα ὄντα ἐς Ἰταλίαν ἄκοντα ἰδόν, ἐν μὲν τραγῳδοῖς, καὶ ναυτὰς λωπιδούτας. This last epithet of Procopius is too nobly translated by pirates; naval thieves is the proper word: strippers of garments, either for injury or insult, (Demosthenes contra Conon. in Reiske Orator. Græc. tom. ii. p. 1261).

CHAP.  
XLII.

tion; and the monks were more expensive and more numerous than the soldiers of the East. The regular force of the empire had once amounted to six hundred and forty-five thousand men: it was reduced, in the time of Justinian, to one hundred and fifty thousand; and this number, large as it may seem, was thinly scattered over the sea and land; in Spain and Italy, in Africa and Egypt, on the banks of the Danube, the coast of the Euxine, and the frontiers of Persia. The citizen was exhausted, yet the soldier was unpaid; his poverty was mischievously soothed by the privilege of rapine and indolence; and the tardy payments were detained and intercepted by the fraud of those agents who usurp, without courage or danger, the emoluments of war. Public and private distress recruited the armies of the state; but in the field, and still more in the presence of the enemy, their numbers were always defective. The want of national spirit was supplied by the precarious faith and disorderly service of barbarian mercenaries. Even military honour, which has often survived the loss of virtue and freedom, was almost totally extinct. The generals, who were multiplied beyond the example of former times, laboured only to prevent the success, or to sully the reputation, of their colleagues; and they had been taught by experience, that if merit sometimes provoked the jealousy, error, or even guilt, would obtain the indulgence, of a gracious emperor. In such an age

<sup>a</sup> See the third and fourth books of the Gothic war: the writer of the Anecdotes cannot aggravate these abuses.

the triumphs of Belisarius, and afterwards of Narses, shine with incomparable lustre; but they are encompassed with the darkest shades of disgrace and calamity. While the lieutenant of Justinian subdued the kingdoms of the Goths and Vandals, the emperor,\* timid, though ambitious, balanced the forces of the barbarians, fomented their divisions by flattery and falsehood, and invited by his patience and liberality the repetition of injuries.† The keys of Carthage, Rome, and Ravenna, were presented to their conqueror, while Antioch was destroyed by the Persians, and Justinian trembled for the safety of Constantinople.

Even the Gothic victories of Belisarius were prejudicial to the state, since they abolished the important barrier of the Upper Danube, which had been so faithfully guarded by Theodoric and his daughter. For the defence of Italy, the Goths evacuated Pannonia and Noricum, which they left in a peaceful and flourishing condition: the sovereignty was claimed by the emperor of the Romans: the actual possession was abandoned to the boldness of the first invader. On the opposite banks of the Danube, the plains of Upper Hungary and the Transylvanian hills were possessed, since the death of Attila, by the tribes of the Gepidæ, who re-

State of  
the barba-  
rians.

The Gepi-  
dæ.

\* Agathias, l. v, p. 157, 158. He confines this weakness of the emperor and the empire to the old age of Justinian; but, alas! he was never young.

† This mischievous policy, which Procopius (Anecd. c. 19) imputes to the emperor, is revealed in his epistle to a Scythian prince, who was capable of understanding it. *Αγαπᾷ σπουδῆ καὶ ἀρχιμετρίας*, says Agathias, (l. v, p. 170, 171).

CHAP.  
XLII.

spected the Gothic arms, and despised, not indeed the gold of the Romans, but the secret motive of their annual subsidies. The vacant fortifications of the river were instantly occupied by these barbarians: their standards were planted on the walls of Sirmium and Belgrade; and the ironical tone of their apology aggravated this insult on the majesty of the empire. "So extensive, O Caesar, are your dominions; so numerous are your cities; that you are continually seeking for nations to whom, either in peace or war, you may relinquish these useless possessions. The Gepidæ are your brave and faithful allies; and if they have anticipated your gifts, they have shewn a just confidence in your bounty." Their presumption was executed by the hands of revenge which Justinian embittered. Instead of asserting the rights of a sovereign for the protection of his subjects, the emperor invited a strange people to invade and possess the Roman provinces between the Danube and the Alps; and the ambition of the Gepidæ was checked by the rising power and fame of the Lombards.\*

This corrupt appellation has been diffused in the thirteenth century by the merchants and bankers, the Italian posterity of these savage warriors: but

The Lombards.

\* *Gens Germanâ feritate ferociore*, says Velleius Paterculus of the Lombards, (ii. 106). *Langobardos paucitas nobilitat. Plurimis ac valentissimis nationibus cincti non per obsequium sed præliis et periclitando tuti sunt*, (Tacit. de Moribus German. c. 40). See likewise Strabo, (l. vii. p. 116). The best geographers place them beyond the Elbe, in the bishopric of Magdeburgh and the middle march of Brandenburg; and their situation will agree with the patriotic remark of the Count de Hertzberg, that most of the barbarian conquerors issued from the same countries which still produce the armies of Prussia.

the original name of *Langobards* is expressive only of the peculiar length and fashion of their beards. I am not disposed either to question or to justify their Scandinavian origin;<sup>a</sup> nor to pursue the migrations of the Lombards through unknown regions and marvellous adventures. About the time of Augustus and Trajan, a ray of historic light breaks on the darkness of their antiquities, and they are discovered, for the first time, between the Elbe and the Oder. Fierce, beyond the example of the Germans, they delighted to propagate the tremendous belief, that their heads were formed like the heads of dogs, and that they drank the blood of their enemies whom they vanquished in battle. The smallness of their numbers was recruited by the adoption of their bravest slaves; and alone, amidst their powerful neighbours, they defended by arms their high-spirited independence. In the tempests of the north, which overwhelmed so many names and nations, this little bark of the Lombards still floated on the surface: they gradually descended towards the south and the Danube; and at the end of four hundred years they again appear with their ancient valour and renown. Their manners were not less ferocious. The assassination of a royal guest was executed in the presence, and by the command, of the king's daughter, who had been provoked by some words of insult, and disappointed by his

<sup>a</sup> The Scandinavian origin of the Goths and Lombards, as stated by Paul Warnefrid, surnamed the deacon, is attacked by Cluverius, (*Germania Antiq.* l. iii, c. 26, p. 102, &c.), a native of Prussia, and defended by Grotius, (*Prolegom. ad Hist. Goth.* p. 28, &c.), the Swedish ambassador.

CHAP.

XLII.

~~~~~

diminutive stature; and a tribute, the price of blood, was imposed on the Lombards, by his brother, the king of the Heruli. Adversity revived a sense of moderation and justice, and the insolence of conquest was chastised by the signal defeat and irreparable dispersion of the Heruli, who were seated in the southern provinces of Poland.\* The victories of the Lombards recommended them to the friendship of the emperors: and at the solicitation of Justinian, they passed the Danube, to reduce, according to their treaty, the cities of Noricum and the fortresses of Pannonia. But the spirit of rapine soon tempted them beyond these ample limits; they wandered along the coast of the Adriatic as far as Dyrrachium, and presumed, with familiar rudeness, to enter the towers and houses of their Roman subjects, and to seize the captives who had escaped from their audacious hands. These acts of hostility, the sallies, as it might be pretended, of some loose adventurers, were disowned by the nation, and excused by the emperor; but the arms of the Lombards were more seriously engaged by a contest of thirty years, which was terminated only by the extirpation of the Gepidae. The hostile nations often pleaded their cause before the throne of Constantinople; and the crafty Justinian, to whom the barbarians were almost equally odious, pronounced a partial and ambiguous sentence, and dexterously protracted the war by slow and ineffec-

\* Two facts in the narrative of Paul Diaconus (l. i. c. 20) are expressive of national manners.—1. *Dum ad tabulam luderet*—while he played at draughts. 2. *Camporum viridissima Ana*. The cultivation of flax supposes property, commerce, agriculture, and manufactures.

tual succours. Their strength was formidable, since the Lombards, who sent into the field several *myriads* of soldiers, still claimed, as the weaker side, the protection of the Romans. Their spirit was intrepid; yet such is the uncertainty of courage, that the two armies were suddenly struck with a panic; they fled from each other, and the rival kings remained with their guards in the midst of an empty plain. A short truce was obtained; but their mutual resentment again kindled; and the remembrance of their shame rendered the next encounter more desperate and bloody. Forty thousand of the barbarians perished in the decisive battle, which broke the power of the Gepidae, transferred the fears and wishes of Justinian, and first displayed the character of Alboin, the youthful prince of the Lombards, and the future conqueror of Italy.\*

The wild people who dwell or wandered in the plains of Russia, Lithuania, and Poland, might be reduced, in the age of Justinian, under the two great families of the BULGARIANS<sup>†</sup> and the SCLAVONIANS. According to the Greek writers,

The Sclavonians.

\* I have used, without undertaking to reconcile, the facts in Procopius, (Goth. l. ii. c. 14; l. iii. c. 33, 34; l. iv. c. 18, 25); Paul Diaconus, (de Gestis Langobard. l. i. c. 1-23, in Muratori, Script. Rerum Italicarum, tom. 2. p. 405-419); and Jornandes, (de Success. Regnorum, p. 242). The patient reader may draw some light from Moscov, (Hist. of the Germans, and Annotat. xxiii), and de Buist, (Hist. des Peuples, &c. tom. ii. 1. 24).

† I adopt the appellation of Bulgarians, from Ennodius, (in Panegy. Theodorici, Opp. Sirmond, tom. i. p. 1598, 1599); Jornandes, (de Rebus Geticis, c. 5, p. 194, et de Regn. Successione, p. 242); Theophanes, (p. 185), and the Chronicles of Cassiodorus and Marcellinus. The name of Huns is too vague; the tribes of the Cuthingurians and Uttingurians are too minute and too farth.

CHAP.  
XLII.

the former, who touched the Euxine and the lake Mæotis, derived from the Huns their name or descent; and it is needless to renew the simple and well-known picture of Tartar manners. They were bold and dexterous archers, who drank the milk, and feasted on the flesh of their fleet and indefatigable horses; whose flocks and herds followed, or rather guided, the motions of their roving camps; to whose inroads no country was remote or impervious, and who were practised in flight, though incapable of fear. The nation was divided into two powerful and hostile tribes, who pursued each other with fraternal hatred. They eagerly disputed the friendship or rather the gifts of the emperor; and the distinction which nature had fixed between the faithful dog and the rapacious wolf, was applied by an ambassador who received only verbal instructions from the mouth of his illiterate prince.<sup>m</sup> The Bulgarians, of whatsoever species, were equally attracted by Roman wealth: they assumed a vague dominion over the Sclavonian name, and their rapid marches could only be stopped by the Baltic sea, or the extreme cold and poverty of the north. But the same race of Sclavonians appears to have maintained, in every age, the possession of the same countries. Their numerous tribes, however distant or adverse, used one common language, (it was harsh and irregular), and were known by the resemblance of their form, which deviated from

<sup>m</sup> Procopius, (Goth. l. iv. c. 19). His verbal message (he owns himself an illiterate barbarian) is delivered as an epistle. The style is savage, figurative, and original.

the swarthy Tartar, and approached, without attaining the lofty stature, and fair complexion of the German. Four thousand six hundred villages<sup>a</sup> were scattered over the provinces of Russia and Poland, and their huts were hastily built of rough timber, in a country deficient both in stone and iron. Erected, or rather concealed, in the depth of forests, on the banks of rivers, or the edge of morasses, we may not perhaps, without flattery, compare them to the architecture of the beaver; which they resembled in a double issue, to the land and water, for the escape of the savage inhabitant, an animal less cleanly, less diligent, and less social, than that marvellous quadrupede. The fertility of the soil, rather than the labour of the natives, supplied the rustic plenty of the Sclavonians. Their sheep and horned cattle were large and numerous, and the fields which they sowed with millet, and panic,<sup>b</sup> afforded, in the place of bread, a coarse and less nutritive food. The incessant rapine of their neighbours compelled them to bury this treasure in the earth; but on the appearance of a stranger, it was freely imparted by a people, whose un-

<sup>a</sup> This sum is the result of a particular list, in a curious MS. fragment of the year 550, found in the library of Milan. The obscure geography of the times provokes and exercises the patience of the count de Buat, (tom. xi, p. 69-189). The French minister often loses himself in a wilderness which requires a Saxon and Polish guide.

<sup>b</sup> *Panicum milium*. See Columella, l. ii, c. 9, p. 430, edit. Gesner. Plin. Hist. Natur. xviii, 24, 25. The Sarmatians made a pap of millet, mingled with mare's milk or blood. In the wealth of modern husbandry, our millet feeds poultry, and not heroes. See the dictionaries of Bomare and Miller.

CHAP.

XLII.

favourable character is qualified by the epithets of chaste, patient, and hospitable. As their supreme god, they adored an invisible master of the thunder. The rivers and the nymphs obtained their subordinate honours, and the popular worship was expressed in vows and sacrifice. The Sclavonians disdained to obey a despot, a prince, or even a magistrate; but their experience was too narrow, their passions too headstrong, to compose a system of equal law or general defence. Some voluntary respect was yielded to age and valour; but each tribe or village existed as a separate republic, and all must be persuaded where none could be compelled. They fought on foot, almost naked, and, except an unwieldy shield, without any defensive armour: their weapons of offence were a bow, a quiver of small poisoned arrows, and a long rope, which they dexterously threw from a distance, and entangled their enemy in a running noose. In the field, the Sclavonian infantry was dangerous by their speed, agility, and hardiness: they swam, they dived, they remained under water, drawing their breath through a hollow cane; and a river or lake was often the scene of their unsuspected ambuscade. But these were the achievements of spies or stragglers; the military art was unknown to the Sclavonians; their name was obscure, and their conquests were inglorious.

\* For the name and nation, the situation and manners of the Sclavonians, see the original evidence of the sixth century, in Procopius, (Goth. l. ii, c. 26; l. iii, c. 14), and the emperor Mauricius or Maurice, (Stratagemat.

I have marked the faint and general outline of the Slavonians and Bulgarians, without attempting to define their intermediate boundaries, which were not accurately known, or respected, by the barbarians themselves. Their importance was measured by their vicinity to the empire; and the level country of Moldavia and Walachia was occupied by the Antes,\* a Slavonian tribe, which swelled the titles of Justinian with an epithet of conquest.† Against the Antes he erected the fortifications of the Lower Danube; and laboured to secure the alliance of a people seated in the direct channel of northern insurrection, an interval of two hundred miles between the mountains of Transylvania and the Euxine sea. But the Antes wanted power and inclination to stem the fury of the torrent: and the light-armed Slavonians, from an hundred tribes, pursued with almost equal speed the footsteps of the Bulgarian horse. The payment of one piece of gold for each soldier, procured a safe and easy retreat through the country of the Gepidæ, who commanded the

(Strategemata, l. ii, c. 4, apud Mascon, Annotat. xxi.) The Strategemata of Maurice have been printed only, as I understand, at the end of Scheffer's edition of Arrian's Tactics, at Upsal, 1664, (Fabric. Bibliot. Græc. l. iv, c. 8, Anti. (ii, p. 273), a scarce, and hitherto, to me, an inaccessible book.

\* Antes eorum fortissimi . . . Taxis qui rapidus et vorticosus in Hiistri fluente furens devolvitur, (Jordanæ, a. 5, p. 194, edit. Mûllator. Procopius, Goth. l. iii, c. 14, et de Edific. l. iv, c. 7). Yet the same Procopius mentions the Goths and Huns as neighbours, γειτονικοι, to the Danube, (de Edific. l. iv, c. 1).

† The national title of *Anticus*, in the laws and inscriptions of Justinian, was adopted by his successors, and is justified by the pious Ludewig, (in Vit. Justinian. p. 515). It had strangely puzzled the civilians of the middle age.

CHAP.  
XLII.

passage of the Upper Danube.<sup>s</sup> The hopes or fears of the barbarians; their intestine union or discord; the accident of a frozen or shallow stream; the prospect of harvest or vintage; the prosperity or distress of the Romans; were the causes which produced the uniform repetition of annual visits,<sup>t</sup> tedious in the narrative, and destructive in the event. The same year, and possibly the same month, in which Ravenna surrendered, was marked by an invasion of the Huns or Bulgarians, so dreadful, that it almost effaced the memory of their past inroads. They spread from the suburbs of Constantinople to the Ionian gulf, destroyed thirty-two cities or castles, razed Potidæa, which Athens had built and Philip had besieged, and repassed the Danube, dragging at their horses' heels one hundred and twenty thousand of the subjects of Justinian. In a subsequent inroad they pierced the wall of the Thracian Chersonesus, extirpated the habitations and the inhabitants, boldly traversed the Hellespont, and returned to their companions, laden with the spoils of Asia. Another party, which seemed a multitude in the eyes of the Romans, penetrated, without opposition, from the straits of Thermopylæ to the isthmus of Corinth; and the last ruin of Greece has appeared an object too minute for the attention of history. The works which the emperor raised for the protection,

<sup>s</sup> Procopius, Goth. l. iv, c. 25.

<sup>t</sup> An inroad of the Huns is connected, by Procopius, with a comet; perhaps that of 531, (Persic. l. ii. c. 4). Agathias (l. v, p. 154, 155) borrows from his predecessor some early facts.

but at the expence, of his subjects, served only to disclose the weakness of some neglected part; and the walls, which, by flattery, had been deemed impregnable, were either deserted by the garrison, or scaled by the barbarians. Three thousand Sclavonians, who insolently divided themselves into two bands, discovered the weakness and misery of a triumphant reign. They passed the Danube and the Hebrus, vanquished the Roman generals who dared to oppose their progress, and plundered, with impunity, the cities of Illyricum and Thrace, each of which had arms and numbers to overwhelm their contemptible assailants. Whatever praise the boldness of the Sclavonians may deserve, it is sullied by the wanton and deliberate cruelty which they are accused of exercising on their prisoners. Without distinction of rank, or age, or sex, the captives were impaled or flayed alive, or suspended between four posts, and beaten with clubs till they expired, or inclosed in some spacious building, and left to perish in the flames with the spoil and cattle which might impede the march of these savage victors." Perhaps a more impartial narrative would reduce the number, and qualify the nature, of these horrid acts; and they might sometimes be excused by the cruel laws of retaliation. In the siege of Topirus,\* whose

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

\* The cruelties of the Sclavonians are related or magnified by Procopius, (Goth. l. iii, c. 29, 38). For their mild and liberal behaviour to their prisoners, we may appeal to the authority, somewhat more recent, of the emperor Maurice, (Stratagem. l. ii, c. 5).

\* Topirus was situate near Philippi in Thrace, or Macedonia, opposite to the isle of Thasos, twelve days journey from Constantinople, (Cellarius, tom. i, p. 676, 640).

CHAP.

XLII

obstinate defence had enraged the Slavonians, they massacred fifteen thousand males; but they spared the women and children; the most valuable captives were always reserved for labour or ransom; the servitude was not rigorous, and the terms of their deliverance were speedy and moderate. But the subject, or the historian of Justinian, exhaled his just indignation in the language of complaint and reproach; and Procopius has confidently affirmed, that in a reign of thirty-two years, each annual inroad of the barbarians consumed two hundred thousand of the inhabitants of the Roman empire. The entire population of Turkish Europe, which nearly corresponds with the provinces of Justinian, would perhaps be incapable of supplying six millions of persons; the result of this incredible estimate.

Origin and  
monarchy  
of the  
Turks in  
Asia,  
A. D. 545,  
&c.

In the midst of these obscure calamities, Europe felt the shock of a revolution, which first revealed to the world the name and nation of the Turks. Like Romulus, the founder of that martial people was suckled by a she-wolf, who afterwards made him the father of a numerous progeny; and the representation of that animal in the banners of the Turks preserved the memory, or rather suggested the idea, of a fable, which was invented, without any mutual intercourse, by the shepherds of Latium and those of Scythia. At the equal distance of two thousand miles from the Caspian, the Icy, the Chinese, and the Bengal

<sup>1</sup> According to the malevolent testimony of the Anecdotes, (c. 18), these inroads had reduced the provinces, south of the Danube, to the state of a Scythian wilderness.

seas, a ridge of mountains is conspicuous, the centre, and perhaps the summit, of Asia; which, in the language of different nations, has been styled Imaus, and Caf,\* and Altai, and the Golden Mountains, and the Girdle of the Earth. The sides of the hills were productive of minerals; and the iron forges,<sup>a</sup> for the purpose of war, were exercised by the Turks, the most despised portion of the slaves of the great khan of the Geougen. But their servitude could only last till a leader, bold and eloquent, should arise, to persuade his countrymen that the same arms which they forged for their masters, might become, in their own hands, the instruments of freedom and victory. They sallied from the mountain;<sup>b</sup> a sceptre was the reward of his advice; and the annual ceremony, in which a

\* From Caf to Caf; which a more rational geography would interpret from Imaus, perhaps, to mount Atlas. According to the religious philosophy of the Mahometans, the basis of mount Caf is an emerald, whose reflection produces the azure of the sky. The mountain is endowed with a sensitive action in its roots or nerves; and their vibration, at the command of God, is the cause of earthquakes, (D'Herbelot, p. 220, 231).

<sup>a</sup> The Siberian iron is the best and most plentiful in the world; and in the southern parts, above sixty mines are now worked by the industry of the Russians, (Strahlenberg, Hist. of Siberia, p. 343, 347. Voyage en Siberie, par l'Abbé Chapped'Anteroche, p. 603-608, edit. in 12mo, Amsterdam, 1770). The Turks offered iron for sale; yet the Roman ambassadors, with strange obstinacy, persisted in believing that it was all a trick, and that their country produced none. (Menander in Excerpt. Leg. p. 152).

<sup>b</sup> Of Irghana-kon, (Abulghazi Khân, Hist. Généalogique des Tatars, P. II, c. 5, p. 71-77; c. 15, p. 135). The tradition of the Moguls, of the 450 years which they passed in the mountains, agrees with the Chinese periods of the history of the Huns and Turks, (De Guignes, tom. I, part II, p. 376), and the twenty generations, from their restoration to Zingis.

CHAP.  
XLII.

piece of iron was heated in the fire, and a smith's hammer was successively handled by the prince and his nobles, recorded for ages the humble profession and rational pride of the Turkish nation. Bertezena, their first leader, signalized their valour and his own in successful combats against the neighbouring tribes; but when he presumed to ask in marriage the daughter of the great khan, the insolent demand of a slave and a mechanic was contemptuously rejected. The disgrace was expiated by a more noble alliance with a princess of China; and the decisive battle which almost extirpated the nation of the Geougen, established in Tartary the new and more powerful empire of the Turks. They reigned over the north, but they confessed the vanity of conquest, by their faithful attachment to the mountain of their fathers. The royal encampment seldom lost sight of mount Altai, from whence the river Irtysh descends to water the rich pastures of the Calmucks, which nourish the largest sheep and oxen in the world. The soil is fruitful, and the climate mild and temperate: the happy region was ignorant of earthquake and pestilence; the emperor's throne was turned towards the east, and a golden wolf on the top of a spear seemed to guard the entrance of his tent. One of the successors of Bertezena was tempted by

\* The country of the Turks, now of the Calmucks, is well described in the Genealogical History, p. 521-562. The curious notes of the French translator are enlarged and digested in the second volume of the English version.

CHAP.

XLII.

~~~~~

the luxury and superstition of China; but his design of building cities and temples was defeated by the simple wisdom of a barbarian counsellor. "The Turks," he said, "are not equal in number to one hundredth part of the inhabitants of China. If we balance their power, and elude their armies, it is because we wander without any fixed habitations, in the exercise of war and hunting. Are we strong? we advance and conquer: are we feeble? we retire and are concealed. Should the Turks confine themselves within the walls of cities, the loss of a battle would be the destruction of their empire. The Bonzes preach only patience, humility, and the renunciation of the world. Such, O king! is not the religion of heroes." They entertained with less reluctance the doctrines of Zoroaster; but the greatest part of the nation acquiesced without inquiry, in the opinions, or rather in the practice, of their ancestors. The honours of sacrifice were reserved for the supreme deity; they acknowledged, in rude hymns, their obligations to the air, the fire, the water, and the earth; and their priests derived some profit from the art of divination. Their unwritten laws were rigorous and impartial: theft was punished by a tenfold restitution: adultery, treason, and murder, with death: and no chastisement could be inflicted too severe for the rare and inexpiable guilt of cowardice. As the subject nations marched under the standard of the Turks, their cavalry, both men and horses, were

CHAP.

XLII.

~~~~~

proudly computed by millions; one of their effective armies consisted of four hundred thousand soldiers, and in less than fifty years they were connected in peace and war with the Romans, the Persians, and the Chinese. In their northern limits, some vestige may be discovered of the form and situation of Kamtchatka, of a people of hunters and fishermen, whose sledges were drawn by dogs, and whose habitations were buried in the earth. The Turks were ignorant of astronomy; but the observation taken by some learned Chinese, with a gnomon of eight feet, fixes the royal camp in the latitude of forty-nine degrees, and marks their extreme progress within three, or at least ten degrees, of the polar circle.<sup>a</sup> Among their southern conquests, the most splendid was that of the Nephthalites or White Huns, a polite and warlike people, who possessed the commercial cities of Bochara and Samarcand, who had vanquished the Persian monarch, and carried their victorious arms along the banks, and perhaps to the mouth, of the Indus. On the side of the west, the Turkish cavalry advanced to the lake Mæotis. They passed that lake on the ice. The khan who dwelt at the foot of mount Altai, issued his commands for the siege of Bosphorus,<sup>c</sup> a city, the voluntary subject of Rome, and whose princes had formerly been the friends of

<sup>a</sup> Visdelou p. 141, 151. The fact, though it strictly belongs to a subordinate and successive tribe, may be introduced here.

<sup>c</sup> Procopius, Persic. l. i, c. 12; l. ii, c. 3. Peyssonnel (*Observations sur les Peuples Barbares*, p. 99, 100) defines the distance between Caffa and the old Bosphorus at xvi long Tartar leagues.

Athens.<sup>f</sup> To the east, the Turks invaded China, as often as the vigour of the government was relaxed: and I am taught to read in the history of the times, that they mowed down their patient enemies like hemp or grass; and that the mandarins applauded the wisdom of an emperor who repulsed these barbarians with golden lances. This extent of savage empire compelled the Turkish monarch to establish three subordinate princes of his own blood, who soon forgot their gratitude and allegiance. The conquerors were enervated by luxury, which is always fatal except to an industrious people; the policy of China solicited the vanquished nations to resume their independence; and the power of the Turks was limited to a period of two hundred years. The revival of their name and dominion in the southern countries of Asia, are the events of a later age; and the dynasties, which succeeded to their native realms, may sleep in oblivion; since *their* history bears no relation to the decline and fall of the Roman empire.<sup>g</sup>

In the rapid career of conquest, the Turks attacked and subdued the nation of the Ogors or Varchonites on the banks of the river Til, which

The Avars  
fly before  
the Turks,  
and ap-  
proach the  
empire.

<sup>f</sup> See, in a *Memoir* of M. de Bôze, (*Mem. de l'Académie des Inscriptions*, tom. vi, p. 548, 565), the ancient kings and medals of the Cimmerian Bosphorus; and the gratitude of Athens, in the *Oration* of Demosthenes against Leptines, (*In Reiske, Orator. Græc. tom. i, p. 466, 467*).

<sup>g</sup> For the origin and revolutions of the first Turkish empire, the Chinese details are borrowed from De Gâignes, (*Hist. des Huns*, tom. i, P. ii, p. 367-463), and Viadelou, (*Supplément à la Bibliothèque Orient. d'Herbelot*, p. 82-114). The Greek or Roman hints are gathered in Menander, (p. 108-164) and Theophylact Simocatta, (l. vii, c. 7, 8).

CHAP.

XLII.

derived the epithet of black from its dark water or gloomy forests.<sup>b</sup> The khan of the Ogors was slain with three hundred thousand of his subjects, and their bodies were scattered over the space of four days journey; their surviving countrymen acknowledged the strength and mercy of the Turks; and a small portion, about twenty thousand warriors, preferred exile to servitude. They followed the well-known road of the Volga, cherished the error of the nations who confounded them with the AVARS, and spread the terror of that false though famous appellation, which had not, however, saved its lawful proprietors from the yoke of the Turks.<sup>c</sup> After a long and victorious march, the new Avars arrived at the foot of mount Caucasus, in the country of the Alani<sup>d</sup> and Circassians, where they first heard of the splendour and weakness of the Roman empire. They humbly requested their confederate, the prince of the Alani, to lead them to this source of riches; and their ambassador, with the permission of the go-

<sup>b</sup> The river Til, or Tula, according to the geography of De Guignes. (tom. i, part ii, p. lviii and 352), is a small though grateful stream of the desert, that falls into the Orhon, Selinga, &c. See Bell, Journey from Petersburgh to Pekin, (vol. ii, p. 124); yet his own description of the Keat, down which he sailed into the Oby, represents the name and attributes of the *black river*, (p. 139).

<sup>c</sup> Theophylact, l. vii, c. 7, 8. And yet his *true* Avars are invisible even to the eyes of M. de Guignes; and what can be more illustrious than the *false*? The right of the fugitive Ogors to that national appellation is confessed by the Turks themselves, (Menander, p. 108).

<sup>d</sup> The Alani are still found in the Genealogical History of the Tartars, (p. 617), and in d'Anville's maps. They opposed the march of the generals of Zingis round the Caspian sea, and were overthrown in a great battle, (Hist. de Gengiscan, l. iv, c. 9, p. 447).

vernor of Lazica, was transported by the Euxine sea to Constantinople. The whole city was poured forth to behold with curiosity and terror the aspect of a strange people; their long hair which hung in tresses down their backs, was gracefully bound with ribbons, but the rest of their habit appeared to imitate the fashion of the Huns. When they were admitted to the audience of Justinian, Can-  
 dish, the first of the ambassadors, addressed the Roman emperor in these terms.—“ You see be-  
 fore you, O mighty prince, the representatives  
 of the strongest and most populous of nations,  
 the invincible, the irresistible Avars. We are  
 willing to devote ourselves to your service: we  
 are able to vanquish and destroy all the enemies  
 who now disturb your repose. But we expect,  
 as the price of our alliance, as the reward of  
 our valour, precious gifts, annual subsidies, and  
 fruitful possessions.” At the time of this em-  
 bassy, Justinian had reigned above thirty, he had  
 lived above seventy-five years: his mind, as well  
 as his body, was feeble and languid; and the  
 conqueror of Africa and Italy, careless of the per-  
 manent interest of his people, aspired only to end  
 his days in the bosom even of inglorious peace.  
 In a studied oration, he imparted to the senate  
 his resolution to dissemble the insult, and to pur-  
 chase the friendship of the Avars; and the whole  
 senate, like the mandarins of China, applauded  
 the incomparable wisdom and foresight of their  
 sovereign. The instruments of luxury were im-  
 mediately prepared to captivate the barbarians:  
 silken garments, soft and splendid beds, and chains

CHAP.  
XLII.

Their em-  
bassy to  
Constan-  
tinople,  
A. D. 558.

CHAP.  
XLII.

and collars incrustated with gold. The ambassadors, content with such liberal reception, departed from Constantinople, and Valentin, one of the emperor's guards, was sent with a similar character to their camp at the foot of mount Caucasus. As their destruction or their success must be alike advantageous to the empire, he persuaded them to invade the enemies of Rome; and they were easily tempted, by gifts and promises, to gratify their ruling inclinations. These fugitives, who fled before the Turkish arms, passed the Tanais and Borysthenes, and boldly advanced into the heart of Poland and Germany, violating the law of nations, and abusing the rights of victory. Before ten years had elapsed, their camps were seated on the Danube and the Elbe, many Bulgarian and Slavonian names were obliterated from the earth, and the remainder of their tribes are found, as tributaries and vassals, under the standard of the Avars. The chagan, the peculiar title of their king, still affected to cultivate the friendship of the emperor; and Justinian entertained some thoughts of fixing them in Pannonia, to balance the prevailing power of the Lombards. But the virtue or treachery of an Avar betrayed the secret enmity and ambitious designs of their countrymen; and they loudly complained of the timid, though jealous policy, of detaining their ambassadors, and denying the arms which they had been allowed to purchase in the capital of the empire.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The embassies and first conquests of the Avars may be read in Menander, (Excerpt, Legat. p. 99, 100, 101, 154, 155); Theophanes, (p. 196); the *Historia Miscella*, (l. xvi, p. 109), and Gregory of Tours, (l. iv, c. 23, 29, in the *Historians of France*, tom. ii, p. 214, 217).

Perhaps the apparent change in the dispositions of the emperors, may be ascribed to the embassy which was received from the conquerors of the Avars.<sup>m</sup> The immense distance, which eluded their arms, could not extinguish their resentment: the Turkish ambassadors pursued the footsteps of the vanquished to the Jaik, the Volga, mount Caucasus, the Euxine, and Constantinople, and at length appeared before the successor of Constantine, to request that he would not espouse the cause of rebels and fugitives. Even commerce had some share in this remarkable negotiation: and the Sogdoites, who were now the tributaries of the Turks, embraced the fair occasion of opening, by the north of the Caspian, a new road for the importation of Chinese silk into the Roman empire. The Persian, who preferred the navigation of Ceylon, had stopped the caravans of Bucharâ and Samarcand: their silk was contemptuously burnt: some Turkish ambassadors died in Persia, with a suspicion of poison; and the great khan permitted his faithful vassal Maniach, the prince of the Sogdoites, to propose, at the Byzantine court, a treaty of alliance against their common enemies. Their splendid apparel and rich presents, the fruit of oriental luxury, distinguished Maniach and his colleagues, from the rude savages of the north: their letters, in the Scythian character and language, announced a

CHAP.

XLII.

Embassies  
of the  
Turks and  
Romans,  
A. D. 569-  
582.

<sup>m</sup> Theophanes, (Chron. p. 204), and the Hist. Miscella, (l. xvi, p. 116), as understood by De Guignes, (tom. i, part ii, p. 354), appear to speak of a Turkish embassy to Justinian himself; but that of Maniach, in the fourth year of his successor Justin, is positively the first that reached Constantinople, (Menander, p. 108).

CHAP.  
XLII.

people who had attained the rudiments of science,"<sup>a</sup> they enumerated the conquests, they offered the friendship and military aid of the Turks; and their sincerity was attested by direful imprecations (if they were guilty of falsehood) against their own head, and the head of Disabul their master. The Greek prince entertained with hospitable regard the ambassadors of a remote and powerful monarch: the sight of silk worms and looms disappointed the hopes of the Sogdites; the emperor renounced, or seemed to renounce, the fugitive Avars, but he accepted the alliance of the Turks; and the ratification of the treaty was carried by a Roman minister to the foot of mount Altai. Under the successors of Justinian, the friendship of the two nations was cultivated by frequent and cordial intercourse; the most favoured vassals were permitted to imitate the example of the great khan, and one hundred and six Turks, who, on various occasions, had visited Constantinople, departed at the same time for their native country. The duration and length of the journey from the Byzantine court to mount Altai, are not specified: it might have been difficult to mark a road through the nameless deserts, the mountains, rivers, and morasses of Tartary; but a curious account has been preserved of the reception of the Roman ambassadors at the royal camp. After they had been

<sup>a</sup> The Russians have found characters, rude hieroglyphics, on the Irtysh and Yenisei, on medals, tombs, idols, rocks, obelisks, &c. (Strahlenberg, *Hist. of Siberia*, p. 324, 346, 406, 429). Dr. Hyde (*de Religione Veterum Persarum*, p. 521, &c.) has given two alphabets of Thibet and of the Eygours. I have long harboured a suspicion that *all* the Scythian, and *some*, perhaps *much*, of the Indian science, was derived from the Greeks of Bactriana.

purified with fire and incense, according to a rite still practised under the sons of Zingis, they were introduced to the presence of Disabul. In a valley of the Golden Mountain, they found the great khan in his tent, seated in a chair with wheels, to which an horse might be occasionally harnessed. As soon as they had delivered their presents, which were received by the proper officers, they exposed, in a florid oration, the wishes of the Roman emperor, that victory might attend the arms of the Turks, that their reign might be long and prosperous, and that a strict alliance, without envy or deceit, might for ever be maintained between the two most powerful nations of the earth. The answer of Disabul corresponded with these friendly professions, and the ambassadors were seated by his side, at a banquet which lasted the greatest part of the day : the tent was surrounded with silk hangings, and a tartar liquor was served on the table, which possessed at least the intoxicating qualities of wine. The entertainment of the succeeding day was more sumptuous ; the silk hangings of the second tent were embroidered in various figures ; and the royal seat, the cups, and the vases, were of gold. A third pavilion was supported by columns of gilt wood ; a bed of pure and massy gold was raised on four peacocks of the same metal ; and before the entrance of the tent, dishes, basons, and statues of solid silver, and admirable art, were ostentatiously piled in waggons, the monuments of valour rather than of industry. When Disabul led his armies against the frontiers of Persia, his Roman allies

CHAP.  
XLII.

followed many days the march of the Turkish camp, nor were they dismissed till they had enjoyed their precedency over the envoy of the great king, whose loud and intemperate clamours interrupted the silence of the royal banquet. The power and ambition of Chosroes cemented the union of the Turks and Romans, who touched his dominions on either side : but those distant nations, regardless of each other, consulted the dictates of interest, without recollecting the obligations of oaths and treaties. While the successor of Disabul celebrated his father's obsequies, he was saluted by the ambassadors of the emperor Tiberius, who proposed an invasion of Persia, and sustained with firmness, the angry, and perhaps the just, reproaches of that haughty barbarian. " You see my ten fingers," said the great Khan, and he applied them to his mouth. " You Romans speak with as many tongues, but they are tongues of deceit and perjury. To me you hold one language, to my subjects another : and the nations are successively deluded by your perfidious eloquence. You precipitate your allies into war and danger, you enjoy their labours, and you neglect your benefactors. Hasten your return, inform your master that a Turk is incapable of uttering or forgiving falsehood, and that he shall speedily meet the punishment which he deserves. While he solicits my friendship with flattering and hollow words, he is sunk to a confederate of my fugitive Varchonites. If I condescend to march against those contemptible slaves, they will tremble at the sound of our

“ whips; they will be trampled, like a nest of  
 “ ants, under the feet of my innumerable cavalry.  
 “ I am not ignorant of the road which they have  
 “ followed to invade your empire; nor can I be  
 “ deceived by the vain pretence, that mount Cau-  
 “ casus is the impregnable barrier of the Ro-  
 “ mans. I know the course of the Niester, the  
 “ Danube, and the Hebrus; the most warlike  
 “ nations have yielded to the arms of the Turks;  
 “ and from the rising to the setting sun, the earth  
 “ is my inheritance.” Notwithstanding this me-  
 nace, a sense of mutual advantage soon renewed  
 the alliance of the Turks and Romans: but the  
 pride of the great khan survived his resentment;  
 and when he announced an important conquest  
 to his friend the emperor Maurice, he styled  
 himself the master of the seven races, and the  
 lord of the seven climates of the world.\*

Disputes have often arisen between the sove-  
 reigns of Asia, for the title of king of the world;  
 while the contest has proved that it could not be  
 long to either of the competitors. The kingdom  
 of the Turks was bounded by the Oxus or Gihon;  
 and *Touran* was separated by that great river  
 from the rival monarchy of *Iran*, or Persia, which,  
 in a smaller compass, contained perhaps a larger  
 measure of power and population. The Per-  
 sians, who alternately invaded and repulsed the  
 Turks and the Romans, were still ruled by the

State of  
 Persia,  
 A. D. 500-  
 530.

\* All the details of these Turkish and Roman embassies, so curious  
 in the history of human manners, are drawn from the Extracts of  
 Menander, (p. 106-110, 151-154, 161-164), in which we often regret  
 the want of order and connection.

CHAP.  
XLII.

house of Sassan, which ascended the throne three hundred years before the accession of Justinian. His contemporary, Cabades, or Kobad, had been successful in war against the emperor Anastasius; but the reign of that prince was distracted by civil and religious troubles. A prisoner in the hands of his subjects; an exile among the enemies of Persia; he recovered his liberty by prostituting the honour of his wife, and regained his kingdom with the dangerous and mercenary aid of the barbarians, who had slain his father. His nobles were suspicious that Kobad never forgave the authors of his expulsion, or even those of his restoration. The people was deluded and inflamed by the fanaticism of Mazdak,<sup>p</sup> who asserted the community of women,<sup>q</sup> and the equality of mankind, whilst he appropriated the richest lands and most beautiful females to the use of his sectaries. The view of these disorders, which had been fomented by his laws and example,<sup>r</sup> embittered the declining age of the Persian monarch; and his fears were increased by the consciousness of his design to reverse the natural and customary order of succes-

<sup>p</sup> See d'Herbelot, (Bibliot. Orient. p. 568, 929); Hyde, (de Religione Vet. Persarum, c. 21, p. 290, 291); Pocock, (Specimen Hist. Arab. p. 70, 71); Eutychius, (Annal tom. ii, p. 176); Texeira, (in Stevens, Hist. of Persia, l. i, c. 34).

<sup>q</sup> The fame of the new law for the community of women was soon propagated in Syria (Asseman. Bibliot. Orient. tom. iii, p. 402) and Greece, (Procop. Persic. l. i, c. 5).

<sup>r</sup> He offered his own wife and sister to the prophet; but the prayers of Nushirvan saved his mother, and the indignant monarch never forgave the humiliation to which his filial piety had stooped: pedes tuos deosculatus, (said he to Mazdak), cujus factor adhuc nares occupat, (Pocock, Specimen Hist. Arab. p. 71).

sion, in favour of his third and most favoured son, so famous under the names of Chosroes and Nushirvan. To render the youth more illustrious in the eyes of the nations, Kobad was desirous that he should be adopted by the emperor Justin : the hope of peace inclined the Byzantine court to accept this singular proposal; and Chosroes might have acquired a specious claim to the inheritance of his Roman parent. But the future mischief was diverted by the advice of the questor Proclus : a difficulty was started, whether the adoption should be performed as a civil or military rite ;<sup>\*</sup> the treaty was abruptly dissolved ; and the sense of this indignity sunk deep into the mind of Chosroes, who had already advanced to the Tigris on his road to Constantinople. His father did not long survive the disappointment of his wishes ; the testament of their deceased sovereign was read in the assembly of the nobles ; and a powerful faction, prepared for the event, and regardless of the priority of age, exalted Chosroes to the throne of Persia. He filled that throne during a prosperous period of forty-eight years ;<sup>†</sup> and the Justice of Nushir-

\* Procopius, Persic. l. i, c. 11. Was not Proclus over-wise ? Was not the danger imaginary ?—The excuse, at least, was injurious to a nation not ignorant of letters : *ο γραμμασι οι βαρβαροι της παιδας ποιουντες αλλ' ουλων σπουδης*. Whether any mode of adoption was practised in Persia, I much doubt.

† From Procopius and Agathias, Pagi (tom. ii, p. 543, 526) has proved that Chosroes Nushirvan ascended the throne in the 7th year of Justinian, (A. D. 531, April 1—A. D. 532, April 1). But the true chronology, which harmonizes with the Greeks and Orientals, is ascertained by John Malala, (tom. ii, 211). Cabades, or Kobad, after a reign of forty-three years and two months, sickened the 8th, and died the

CHAP.  
XLII.

Reign of  
Nushir-  
van, or  
Chosroes,  
A. D. 531-  
579.

van is celebrated as the theme of immortal praise by the nations of the East.

But the justice of kings is understood by themselves, and even by their subjects, with an ample indulgence for the gratification of passion and interest. The virtue of Chosroes was that of a conqueror, who, in the measures of peace and war, is excited by ambition and restrained by prudence; who confounds the greatness with the happiness of a nation; and calmly devotes the lives of thousands to the fame, or even the amusement, of a single man. In his domestic administration, the just Nushirvan would merit, in our feelings, the appellation of a tyrant. His two elder brothers had been deprived of their fair expectations of the diadem: their future life, between the supreme rank and the condition of subjects, was anxious to themselves and formidable to their master: fear as well as revenge might tempt them to rebel; the slightest evidence of a conspiracy satisfied the author of their wrongs; and the repose of Chosroes was secured by the death of these unhappy princes, with their families and adherents. One guiltless youth was saved and dismissed by the compassion of a veteran general; and this act of humanity, which was revealed by his son, overbalanced the merit of reducing twelve nations to the obedience of Persia. The zeal and prudence of Mebodes had fixed the diadem on the head of Chosroes himself; but he delayed to attend the royal sum-

the 13th of September, A. D. 531, aged eighty-two years. According to the annals of Eutychius, Nushirvan reigned forty-seven years and six months; and his death must consequently be placed in March A. D. 579.

CHAR.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

mons, till he had performed the duties of a military review: he was instantly commanded to repair to the iron tripod, which stood before the gate of the palace,\* where it was death to relieve or approach the victim; and Mebodes languished several days before. his sentence was pronounced, by the inflexible pride and calm ingratitude of the son of Kobad. But the people, more especially in the East, is disposed to forgive, and even to applaud, the cruelty which strikes at the loftiest heads; at the slaves of ambition, whose voluntary choice has exposed them to live in the smiles, and to perish by the frown, of a capricious monarch, in the execution of the laws which he had no temptation to violate; in the punishment of crimes which attacked his own dignity, as well as the happiness of individuals; Nushirvan, or Chosroes, deserved the appellation of *just*. His government was firm, rigorous, and impartial. It was the first labour of his reign to abolish the dangerous theory of common or equal possessions: the lands and women which the sectaries of Mazdak had usurped, were restored to their lawful owners; and the temperate chastisement of the fanatics or impostors confirmed the domestic rights of society. Instead of listening with blind confidence to a favourite minister, he established four viziers over the four great provinces of his empire, Assyria, Media, Persia, and Bactriana. In the choice of judges, prefects,

\* Procopius, Persic. l. i, c. 23. Brisson de Regn. Pers. p. 494. The gate of the palace of Ispahan is, or was, the fatal scene of disgrace or death, (Chardin, Voyage en Perse, tom. iv, p. 312, 319).

CHAP. and counsellors, he strove to remove the mask  
 XLII. which is always worn in the presence of kings;  
 he wished to substitute the natural order of talents for the accidental distinctions of birth and fortune; he professed, in specious language, his intention to prefer those men who carried the poor in their bosoms, and to banish corruption from the seat of justice, as dogs were excluded from the temples of the Magi. The code of laws of the first Artaxerxes was revived and published as the rule of the magistrates; but the assurance of speedy punishment was the best security of their virtue. Their behaviour was inspected by a thousand eyes, their words were overheard by a thousand ears, the secret or public agents of the throne; and the provinces, from the Indian to the Arabian confines, were enlightened by the frequent visits of a sovereign, who affected to emulate his celestial brother in his rapid and salutary career. Education and agriculture he viewed as the two objects most deserving of his care. In every city of Persia, orphans and the children of the poor were maintained and instructed at the public expence; the daughters were given in marriage to the richest citizens of their own rank; and the sons, according to their different talents, were employed in mechanic trades, or promoted to more honourable service. The deserted villages were relieved by his bounty; to the peasants and farmers who were found incapable of cultivating their lands, he distributed cattle, seed, and the instruments of husbandry; and the rare and inestimable treasure of fresh water was parsimoniously

managed and skilfully dispersed over the arid territory of Persia.\* The prosperity of that kingdom was the effect and the evidence of his virtues: his vices are those of oriental despotism; but in the long competition between Chosroes and Justinian, the advantage both of merit and fortune is almost always on the side of the barbarian.†

To the praise of justice Nushirvan united the reputation of knowledge; and the seven Greek philosophers, who visited his court, were invited and deceived by the strange assurance, that a disciple of Plato was seated on the Persian throne. Did they expect that a prince, strenuously exercised in the toils of war and government, should agitate, with dexterity like their own, the abstruse and profound questions which amused the leisure of the schools of Athens? Could they hope that the precepts of philosophy should direct the life, and controul the passions, of a despot, whose infancy had been taught to consider *his* absolute and fluctuating

His love of  
learning.

\* In Persia, the prince of the waters is an officer of state. The number of wells and subterraneous channels is much diminished, and with it the fertility of the soil; 400 wells have been recently lost near Tauris, and 42,000 were once reckoned in the province of Khorasan, (Chardin, tom. iii, p. 99, 100. Tavernier, tom. i, p. 466).

† The character and government of Nushirvan is represented sometimes in the words of d'Herbelot, (Bibliot. Orient. p. 680, &c. from Khondemir); Eutychius, (Annal. tom. ii, p. 179, 180—very rich); Abulpharagius, (Dynast. vii, p. 94, 95—very poor); Tarikh Schikard, (p. 144—150); Teixeira, (in Stevens, l. i, c. 36); Asseman, (Bibliot. Orient. tom. iii, p. 404—410), and the Abbé Fourmont, (Hist. de l'Acad. des Inscriptions, tom. vii, p. 325—334), who has translated a spurious or genuine testament of Nushirvan.

CHAP.

XLII.

~~CHAPTER~~

will as the only rule of moral obligation?<sup>2</sup> The studies of Chosroes were ostentatious and superficial: but his example awakened the curiosity of an ingenious people, and the light of science was diffused over the dominions of Persia.<sup>3</sup> At Gondi Sapor, in the neighbourhood of the royal city of Susa, an academy of physic was founded, which insensibly became a liberal school of poetry, philosophy, and rhetoric.<sup>4</sup> The annals of the monarchy were composed; and while recent and authentic history might afford some useful lessons both to the prince and people, the darkness of the first ages was embellished by the giants, the dragons, and the fabulous heroes of oriental romance.<sup>5</sup> Every learned

<sup>2</sup> A thousand years before his birth, the judges of Persia had given a solemn opinion—*το βελτιστον: Περσιων εστιν: ποτιον το αν βουληται*, (Herodot. I. iii, c. 31, p. 210, edit. Wesseling). Nor had this constitutional maxim been neglected as an useless and barren theory.

<sup>3</sup> On the literary state of Persia, the Greek versions, philosophers, sophists, the learning or ignorance of Chosroes, Agathias (I. ii, c. 66-71) displays much information and strong prejudices.

<sup>4</sup> Asseman. Bibliot. Orient. tom. iv, p. dccxlv, vi, vii.

<sup>5</sup> The Shah Nameh, or book of Kings, is perhaps the original record of history which was translated into Greek by the interpreter Sergius, (Agathias, I. v, p. 141), preserved after the Mahometan conquest, and versified in the year 994, by the national poet Ferdoussi. See d'Anquetil, (Mem. de l'Academie, tom. xxxi, p. 379), and Sir William Jones, (Hist. of Nader Shah, p. 161).

<sup>6</sup> In the fifth century, the name of Restom or Rostam, as hero who equalled the strength of twelve elephants, was familiar to the Armenians, (Moses Chorenensis, Hist. Armen. I. ii, c. 7, p. 96, edit. Whiston.) In the beginning of the seventh, the Persian Romance of Rostam and Isfendiar was applauded at Mecca, (Sale's Koran, c. xxxi, p. 335). Yet this exposition of *Iadicrum novæ historie*, is not given by Maracci, (Refutat. Alkoran. p. 544-546).

or confident stranger was enriched by the bounty, and flattered by the conversation, of the monarch: he nobly rewarded a Greek physician,<sup>e</sup> by the deliverance of three thousand captives; and the sophists who contended for his favour, were exasperated by the wealth and insolence of Uranius, their more successful rival. Nushirvan believed, or at least respected, the religion of the Magi; and some traces of persecution may be discovered in his reign.<sup>f</sup> Yet he allowed himself freely to compare the tenets of the various sects; and the theological disputes in which he frequently presided, diminished the authority of the priest, and enlightened the minds of the people. At his command, the most celebrated writers of Greece and India were translated into the Persian language; a smooth and elegant idiom, recommended by Mahomet to the use of paradise: though it is branded with the epithets of savage and unmusical, by the ignorance and presumption of Agathias.<sup>g</sup> Yet the Greek historian might reasonably wonder, that it should be found possible to execute an entire

\* Procop. Goth. l. iv, c. 10. Kobad had a favourite Greek physician, Stephen of Edessa, (Persic. l. ii, c. 26). The practice was ancient; and Herodotus relates the adventures of Democedes of Crotona, (l. iii, c. 125-137).

<sup>f</sup> See Pagi, tom. ii, p. 626. In one of the treaties an honourable article was inserted for the toleration and burial of the catholics, (Menander, in Excerpt. Legat. p. 142). Nushizad, a son of Nushirvan, was a Christian, a rebel, and—a martyr? (D'Herbelot, p. 681).

<sup>g</sup> On the Persian language, and its three dialects, consult d'Anquetil, (p. 339-343), and Jones, (p. 153-185): *αγρη τινη γλωσση και αμυροτατα*, is the character which Agathias (l. ii, p. 66) ascribes to an idiom renowned in the East for poetical softness.

CHAP. version of Plato and Aristotle in a foreign dia-  
 XLII. lect, which had not been framed to express the  
 spirit of freedom and the subtleties of philoso-  
 phic disquisition. And, if the reason of the  
 Stagyrice might be equally dark, or equally in-  
 telligible in every tongue, the dramatic art and  
 verbal argumentation of the disciple of Socrates,<sup>b</sup>  
 appear to be indissolubly mingled with the grace  
 and perfection of his Attic style. In the search  
 of universal knowledge, Nushirvan was inform-  
 ed, that the moral and political fables of Pil-  
 pay, an ancient Brachman, were preserved with  
 jealous reverence among the treasures of the  
 kings of India. The physician Perozes was se-  
 cretly despatched to the banks of the Ganges,  
 with instructions to procure, at any price, the  
 communication of this valuable work. His dex-  
 terity obtained a transcript, his learned diligence  
 accomplished the translation; and the fables of  
 Pilpay<sup>i</sup> were read and admired in the assembly  
 of Nushirvan and his nobles. The Indian origi-  
 nal, and the Persian copy, have long since disap-  
 peared; but this venerable monument has been

<sup>b</sup> Agathias specifies the Gorgias, Phædon, Parmenides, and Ti-  
 mæus. Renaudot (Fabricius, *Bibliot. Græc. tom. xii*, p. 246-261) does  
 not mention this barbaric version of Aristotle.

<sup>i</sup> Of these fables, I have seen three copies in three different lan-  
 guages.—1. In *Greek*, translated by Simeon Seth (A. D. 1100) from  
 the Arabic, and published by Starck at Berlin in 1697, in 12mo.  
 2. In *Latin*, a version from the Greek, *Sapientia Indorum*, inserted  
 by Pere Poussin at the end of his edition of *Pachymer*, (p. 547-620,  
 edit. Roman). 3. In *French*, from the Turkish, dedicated, in 1540,  
 to Sultan Soliman. *Contes et Fables Indiennes de Bidpai et de Lok-*  
*man*, par M. M. Galland et Cardonne, Paris, 1778, 3 vols. in 12mo.  
 Mr. Wharton (*History of English poetry*, vol. i, p. 129-131) takes a  
 larger scope.

CHAP.

XLII.

saved by the curiosity of the Arabian caliphs, revived in the modern Persic, the Turkish, the Syriac, the Hebrew, and the Greek idioms, and transfused through successive versions into the modern languages of Europe. In their present form, the peculiar character, the manners and religion of the Hindoos, are completely obliterated; and the intrinsic merit of the fables of Pilpay is far inferior to the concise elegance of Phædrus and the native graces of La Fontaine. Fifteen moral and political sentences are illustrated in a series of apologues: but the composition is intricate, the narrative prolix, and the precept obvious and barren. Yet the Brachman may assume the merit of *inventing* a pleasing fiction, which adorns the nakedness of truth, and alleviates, perhaps, to a royal ear, the harshness of instruction. With a similar design, to admonish kings that they are strong only in the strength of their subjects, the same Indians invented the game of chess, which was likewise introduced into Persia under the reign of Nushirvan.<sup>k</sup>

The son of Kobad found his kingdom involved in a war with the successor of Constantine; and the anxiety of his domestic situation inclined him to grant the suspension of arms, which Justinian was impatient to purchase. Chosroes saw the Roman ambassadors at his feet. He accepted eleven thousand pounds of gold, as the price of an *endless* or indefinite peace;<sup>l</sup> some mutual exchanges

Peace and  
war with  
the Ro-  
mans,  
A. D. 533-  
539.

<sup>k</sup> See the *Historia Shahiludii* of Dr. Hyde, (*Syntagm. Dissertat.* tom. ii, p. 61-69).

<sup>l</sup> The *endless* peace (Procopius, *Persic.* l. i, c. 21) was concluded or ratified in the vith year, and iiii consulship of Justinian, (A. D.

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

were regulated; the Persian assumed the guard of the gates of Caucasus, and the demolition of Dara was suspended, on condition that it should never be made the residence of the general of the East. This interval of repose had been solicited, and was diligently improved, by the ambition of the emperor: his African conquests were the first fruits of the Persian treaty; and the avarice of Chosroes was soothed by a large portion of the spoils of Carthage, which his ambassadors required in a tone of pleasantry, and under the colour of friendship.<sup>m</sup> But the trophies of Belisarius disturbed the slumbers of the great king; and he heard with astonishment, envy, and fear, that Sicily, Italy, and Rome itself, had been reduced, in three rapid campaigns, to the obedience of Justinian. Unpractised in the art of violating treaties, he secretly excited his bold and subtle vassal Almondar. That prince of the Saracens, who resided at Hira,<sup>n</sup> had not been included in the general peace, and still waged an obscure war against his rival Arethas, the chief of the tribe of Gassan, and confederate of the empire. The subject of their dispute was an extensive sheep-walk in the desert to the south of Palmyra. An immemorial tribute for the license of pasture, appeared to

533, between January 1 and April 1; Pagi, tom. ii, p. 550). Marcellinus, in his Chronicle, uses the style of the Medes and Persians.

<sup>m</sup> Procopius, *Persic.* l. i, c. 26.

<sup>n</sup> Almondar, king of Hira, was deposed by Kobad, and restored by Nushirvan. His mother, from her beauty, was surnamed *Celestial Water*, an appellation which became hereditary, and was extended for a more noble cause (liberality in famine) to the Arab princes of Syria, (Pocock, *Specimen Hist. Arab.* p. 69, 70).

attest the rights of Almondar, while the Gassanite appealed to the Latin name of *strata*, a paved road, as an unquestionable evidence of the sovereignty and labours of the Romans.\* The two monarchs supported the cause of their respective vassals; and the Persian Arab, without expecting the event of a slow and doubtful arbitration, enriched his flying camp with the spoil and captives of Syria. Instead of repelling the arms, Justinian attempted to seduce the fidelity of Almondar, while he called from the extremities of the earth, the nations of *Æthiopia* and *Scythia* to invade the dominions of his rival. But the aid of such allies was distant and precarious, and the discovery of this hostile correspondence justified the complaints of the Goths and Armenians, who implored, almost at the same time, the protection of Chosroes. The descendants of Arsaces, who were still numerous in Armenia, had been provoked to assert the last relics of national freedom and hereditary rank; and the ambassadors of Vitiges had secretly traversed the empire to expose the instant, and almost inevitable, danger of the kingdom of Italy. Their representations were uniform, weighty, and effectual. “We stand before your throne, the advocates of your interest as well as of our own. The ambitious and faithless Justinian aspires to be the sole master of the world. Since the endless peace

\* Procopius, *Persic.* l. ii, c. 1. We are ignorant of the origin and object of this *strata*, a paved road of ten days journey from *Aurantiis* to *Babylonia*, (see a Latin note in *Delisle's Map Imp. Orient.*) Wesseling and d'Anville are silent.

CHAP. " which betrayed the common freedom of man-

XLII.

~~~~~

" kind, that prince, your ally in words, your ene-  
 " my in actions, has alike insulted his friends and  
 " foes, and has filled the earth with blood and  
 " confusion. Has he not violated the privileges  
 " of Armenia, the independence of Colchos, and  
 " the wild liberty of the Tzanian mountains?  
 " Has he not usurped, with equal avidity, the  
 " city of Bosphorus on the frozen Mæotus, and  
 " the vale of palm-trees on the shores of the Red  
 " Sea? The Moors, the Vandals, the Goths,  
 " have been successively oppressed, and each na-  
 " tion has calmly remained the spectator of their  
 " neighbour's ruin. Embrace, O king! the fa-  
 " vourable moment; the East is left without de-  
 " fence, while the armies of Justinian and his re-  
 " nowned general are detained in the distant re-  
 " gions of the West. If you hesitate and delay,  
 " Belisarius and his victorious troops will soon  
 " return from the Tiber to the Tigris, and Per-  
 " sia may enjoy the wretched consolation of be-  
 " ing the last devoured."<sup>p</sup> By such arguments,  
 Chosroes was easily persuaded to imitate the ex-  
 ample which he condemned: but the Persian,  
 ambitious of military fame, disdained the inac-  
 tive warfare of a rival, who issued his sanguin-  
 ary commands from the secure station of the  
 Byzantine palace.

He invades  
 Syria,  
 A. D. 540,

Whatever might be the provocations of Chos-

<sup>p</sup> I have blanded, in a short speech, the two orations of the Arsa-  
 cides of Armenia and the Gothic ambassadors. Procopius, in his pub-  
 lic history, feels, and makes us feel, that Justinian was the true au-  
 thor of the war, (Persic. l. ii, c. 2, 3).

rees, he abused the confidence of treaties; and the just reproaches of dissimulation and falsehood could only be concealed by the lustre of his victories.<sup>4</sup> The Persian army, which had been assembled in the plains of Babylon, prudently declined the strong cities of Mesopotamia, and followed the western bank of the Euphrates, till the small though populous town of Dura presumed to arrest the progress of the great king. The gates of Dura, by treachery and surprise, were burst open; and as soon as Chosroes had stained his simiter with the blood of the inhabitants, he dismissed the ambassador of Justinian to inform his master in what place he had left the enemy of the Romans. The conqueror still affected the praise of humanity and justice; and as he beheld a noble matron with her infant rudely dragged along the ground, he sighed, he wept, and implored the divine justice to punish the author of these calamities. Yet the herd of twelve thousand captives was ransomed for two hundred pounds of gold; the neighbouring bishop of Sergiopolis pledged his faith for the payment; and in the subsequent year the unfeeling avarice of Chosroes exacted the penalty of an obligation which it was generous to contract, and impossible to discharge. He advanced into the heart of Syria; but a feeble enemy, who

<sup>4</sup> The invasion of Syria, the ruin of Antioch, &c. are related in a full and regular series by Procopius, (*Persic.* l. ii, c. 5-14). Small collateral aid can be drawn from the orientals: yet not they, but D<sup>r</sup>. Herbelot himself, (p. 680), should blush, when he blames them for making Justinian and Nushirvan contemporaries. On the geography of the seat of war, D<sup>r</sup> Anville (*l'Euphrate et le Tigre*) is sufficient and satisfactory.

CHAP.  
XLII.

~~~~~

vanished at his approach, disappointed him of the honour of victory ; and as he could not hope to establish his dominion, the Persian king displayed in this inroad the mean and rapacious vices of a robber. Hierapolis, Berrhæa or Aleppo, Apamea and Chalcis, were successively besieged : they redeemed their safety by a ransom of gold or silver, proportioned to their respective strength and opulence ; and their new master enforced, without observing, the terms of capitulation. Educated in the religion of the Magi, he exercised without remorse the lucrative trade of sacrilege ; and, after stripping of its gold and gems, a piece of the true cross, he generously restored the naked relict to the devotion of the Christians of Apamea.

and ruins  
Antioch.

No more than fourteen years had elapsed since Antioch was ruined by an earthquake ; but the queen of the East, the new Theopolis, had been raised from the ground by the liberality of Justinian ; and the increasing greatness of the buildings and the people already erased the memory of this recent disaster. On one side, the city was defended by the mountain, on the other by the river Orontes ; but the most accessible part was commanded by a superior eminence : the proper remedies were rejected, from the despicable fear of discovering its weakness to the enemy ; and Germanus, the emperor's nephew, refused to trust his person and dignity within the walls of a besieged city. The people of Antioch had inherited the vain and satirical genius of their ancestors : they were elated by a sudden reinforcement of six thousand soldiers ;

they disdained the offers of an easy capitulation; and their intemperate clamours insulted from the ramparts the majesty of the great king. Under his eye the Persian myriads mounted with scaling-ladders to the assault; the Roman mercenaries fled through the opposite gate of Daphne; and the generous assistance of the youth of Antioch served only to aggravate the miseries of their country. As Chosroes, attended by the ambassadors of Justinian, was descending from the mountain, he affected, in a plaintive voice, to deplore the obstinacy and ruin of that unhappy people; but the slaughter still raged with unrelenting fury; and the city, at the command of a barbarian, was delivered to the flames. The cathedral of Antioch was indeed preserved by the avarice, not the piety, of the conqueror: a more honourable exemption was granted to the church of St. Julian, and the quarter of the town where the ambassadors resided; some distant streets were saved by the shifting of the wind, and the walls still subsisted to protect, and soon to betray, their new inhabitants. Fanaticism had defaced the ornaments of Daphne, but Chosroes breathed a purer air amidst her groves and fountains; and some idolaters in his train might sacrifice with impunity to the nymphs of that elegant retreat. Eighteen miles below Antioch, the river Orontes falls into the Mediterranean. The haughty Persian visited the term of his conquests: and after bathing alone in the sea, he offered a solemn sacrifice of thanksgiving to the sun, or rather to the creator of the sun, whom the Magi adored. If this

CHAP. act of superstition offended the prejudices of the  
 XLII. Syrians, they were pleased by the courteous and  
 even eager attention with which he assisted at the  
 games of the circus ; and as Chosroes had heard  
 that the *blue* faction was espoused by the empe-  
 ror, his peremptory command secured the vic-  
 tory of the *green* charioteer. From the discip-  
 line of his camp the people derived more solid  
 consolation ; and they interceded in vain for the  
 life of a soldier who had too faithfully copied  
 the rapine of the just Nushirvan. At length,  
 fatigued, though unsatiated, with the spoil of  
 Syria, he slowly moved to the Euphrates, form-  
 ed a temporary bridge in the neighbourhood of  
 Barbalissus, and defined the space of three days  
 for the entire passage of his numerous host. After  
 his return, he founded, at the distance of one day's  
 journey from the palace of Ctesiphon, a new city,  
 which perpetuated the joint names of Chosroes and  
 of Antioch. The Syrian captives recognised the  
 form and situation of their native abodes : baths  
 and a stately circus were constructed for their use ;  
 and a colony of musicians and charioteers revived  
 in Assyria the pleasures of a Greek capital. By  
 the munificence of the royal founder, a liberal  
 allowance was assigned to these fortunate exiles ;  
 and they enjoyed the singular privilege of bestow-  
 ing freedom on the slaves whom they acknow-  
 ledged as their kinsmen. Palestine, and the holy  
 wealth of Jerusalem, were the next objects that  
 attracted the ambition, or rather the avarice, of  
 Chosroes. Constantinople, and the palace of the  
 Cæsars, no longer appeared impregnable or

remote; and his aspiring fancy already covered CHAP.  
Asia Minor with the troops, and the Black Sea XLII.  
with the navies, of Persia. ~~~~~

These hopes might have been realized, if the conqueror of Italy had not been seasonably recalled to the defence of the East.<sup>r</sup> While Chosroes pursued his ambitious designs on the coast of the Euxine, Belisarius, at the head of an army without pay or discipline, encamped beyond the Euphrates, within six miles of Nisibis. He meditated, by a skilful operation, to draw the Persians from their impregnable citadel, and improving his advantage in the field, either to intercept their retreat, or perhaps to enter the gates with the flying barbarians. He advanced one day's journey on the territories of Persia, reduced the fortress of Sisaurane, and sent the governor, with eight hundred chosen horsemen, to serve the emperor in his Italian wars. He detached Arethas and his Arabs, supported by twelve hundred Romans, to pass the Tigris, and to ravage the harvests of Assyria, a fruitful province, long exempt from the calamities of war. But the plans of Belisarius were disconcerted by the untractable spirit of Arethas, who neither returned to the camp, nor sent any intelligence of his motions. The Roman general was fixed in anxious expectation to the same spot; the time of action elapsed, the ardent sun of Mesopotamia inflamed with fevers the blood of his Euro-

*Defence of  
the East by  
Belisarius,  
A. D. 541.*

<sup>r</sup> In the public history of Procopius, (*Persic.* l. ii, c. 16, 18, 19, 20, 21, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28); and, with some slight exceptions, we may reasonably shut our ears against the malevolent whisper of the *Anecdotes*, (c. 2, 3, with the Notes, as usual, of Alemannus).

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

pean soldiers : and the stationary troops and officers of Syria, affected to tremble for the safety of their defenceless cities. Yet this diversion had already succeeded in forcing Chosroes to return with loss and precipitation ; and if the skill of Belisarius had been seconded by discipline and valour, his success might have satisfied the sanguine wishes of the public, who required at his hands the conquest of Ctesiphon and the deliverance of the captives of Antioch. At the end of the campaign, he was recalled to Constantinople by an ungrateful court, but the dangers of the ensuing spring restored his confidence and command ; and the hero, almost alone, was despatched, with the speed of post-horses, to repel, by his name and presence, the invasion of Syria. He found the Roman generals, among whom was a nephew of Justinian, imprisoned by their fears in the fortifications of Hierapolis. But instead of listening to their timid counsels, Belisarius commanded them to follow him to Europus, where he had resolved to collect his forces, and to execute whatever God should inspire him to achieve against the enemy. His firm attitude on the banks of the Euphrates restrained Chosroes from advancing towards Palestine ; and he received with art and dignity, the ambassadors, or rather spies, of the Persian monarch. The plain between Hierapolis and the river was covered with the squadrons of cavalry, six thousand hunters tall and robust, who pursued their game without the apprehension of an enemy. On the opposite bank the ambassadors descried a thousand Armenian

horse, who appeared to guard the passage of the Euphrates. The tent of Belisarius was of the coarsest linen, the simple equipage of a warrior who disdained the luxury of the East. Around his tent, the nations who marched under his standard were arranged with skilful confusion. The Thracians and Illyrians were posted in the front, the Heruli and Goths in the centre; the prospect was closed by the Moors and Vandals, and their loose array seemed to multiply their numbers. Their dress was light and active; one soldier carried a whip, another a sword, a third a bow, a fourth perhaps a battle-axe, and the whole picture exhibited the intrepidity of the troops and the vigilance of the general. Chosroes was deluded by the address, and awed by the genius, of the lieutenant of Justinian. Conscious of the merit, and ignorant of the force of his antagonist, he dreaded a decisive battle in a distant country, from whence not a Persian might return to relate the melancholy tale. The great king hastened to repass the Euphrates; and Belisarius pressed his retreat, by affecting to oppose a measure so salutary to the empire, and which could scarcely have been prevented by an army of an hundred thousand men. Envy might suggest to ignorance and pride, that the public enemy had been suffered to escape: but the African and Gothic triumphs are less glorious than this safe and bloodless victory, in which neither fortune, nor the valour of the soldiers, can subtract any part of the general's renown. The second removal of Belisarius from the Persian to

CHAP. the Italian war, revealed the extent of his per-  
 XLII. sonal merit, which had corrected or supplied the  
 want of discipline and courage. Fifteen generals, without concert or skill, led through the mountains of Armenia an army of thirty thousand Romans, inattentive to their signals, their ranks, and their ensigns. Four thousand Persians, intrenched in the camp of Dubis, vanquished, almost without a combat, this disorderly multitude; their useless arms were scattered along the road, and their horses sunk under the fatigue of their rapid flight. But the Arabs of the Roman party prevailed over their brethren; the Armenians returned to their allegiance; the cities of Dara and Edessa resisted a sudden assault and a regular siege, and the calamities of war were suspended by those of pestilence. A tacit or formal agreement between the two sovereigns protected the tranquillity of the eastern frontier; and the arms of Chosroes were confined to the Colchian or Lazic war, which has been too minutely described by the historians of the times.\*

Descrip-  
 tion of  
 Chosroes,

The extreme length of the Euxine sea,<sup>t</sup> from Constantinople to the mouth of the Phasis, may

\* The Lazic war, the contest of Rome and Persia on the Phasis, is tediously spun through many a page of Procopius, (Persic l. ii, c. 15, 17, 28, 29, 30; Gothic. l. iv, c. 7-16), and Agathias, (l. ii, iii, and iv, p. 55-132, 141).

<sup>t</sup> The *Periplus*, or circumnavigation of the Euxine sea, was described in Latin by Sallust, and in Greek by Arrian.—1. The former work, which no longer exists, has been restored by the singular diligence of M. de Brosses, first president of the parliament of Dijon, (Hist. de la République Romaine, tom. ii, l. iii, p. 199-298), who ventures to as-  
 sume

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~  
Lazica, or  
Mingrelia.

be computed as a voyage of nine days, and a measure of seven hundred miles. From the Iberian Caucasus, the most lofty and craggy mountains of Asia, that river descends with such oblique vehemence, that, in a short space, it is traversed by one hundred and twenty bridges. Nor does the stream become placid and navigable, till it reaches the town of Sarapana, five days journey from the Cyrus, which flows from the same hills, but in a contrary direction, to the Caspian lake. The proximity of these rivers have suggested the practice, or at least the idea, of wafting the precious merchandise of India down the Oxus, over the Caspian, up the Cyrus, and with the current of the Phasis into the Euxine and Mediterranean seas. As it successively collects the streams of the plain of Colchos, the Phasis moves with diminished speed, though accumulated weight. At the mouth it is sixty fathom deep and half a league broad, but a small woody island is interposed in the midst of the channel: the water, so soon as it has deposited an earthy or metallic sediment, floats on the surface of the waves, and is no longer susceptible of corruption. In a course of one hundred miles, forty of which are navigable for large vessels, the Phasis divides

sume the character of the Roman historian. His description of the Euxine is ingeniously formed of *all* the fragments of the original, and of *all* the Greeks and Latins whom Sallust might copy, or by whom he might be copied; and the merit of the execution atones for the whimsical design. 2. The Periplus of Arrian is addressed to the emperor Adrian, (in Geograph. Minor. Hudson, tom. i), and contains whatever the governor of Pontus had seen, from Trebizond to Dioscurias; whatever he had heard from Dioscurias to the Danube; and whatever he knew from the Danube to Trebizond.

CHAP. the celebrated region of Colchos,<sup>a</sup> or Mingrelia,<sup>\*</sup>  
 XLII. which, on three sides, is fortified by the Iberian  
 ~~~~~~ and Armenian mountains, and whose maritime  
 coast extends about two hundred miles, from  
 the neighbourhood of Trebizond to Dioscurias,  
 and the confines of Circassia. Both the soil  
 and climate are relaxed by excessive moisture:  
 twenty-eight rivers, besides the Phasis and his  
 dependent streams, convey their waters to the  
 sea; and the hollowness of the ground appears  
 to indicate the subterraneous channels between  
 the Euxine and the Caspian. In the fields  
 where wheat or barley is sown, the earth is too  
 soft to sustain the action of the plough; but the  
 gom, a small grain not unlike the millet or cori-  
 ander seed, supplies the ordinary food of the  
 people; and the use of bread is confined to the  
 prince and his nobles. Yet the vintage is more  
 plentiful than the harvest; and the bulk of the  
 stems, as well as the quality of the wine, display the  
 unassisted powers of nature. The same powers  
 continually tend to overshadow the face of the

<sup>a</sup> Besides the many occasional hints from the poets, historians, &c. of antiquity, we may consult the geographical descriptions of Colchos, by Strabo (l. xi, p. 760-765), and Pliny, (Hist. Natur. vi, 5, 19, &c.).  
<sup>\*</sup> I shall quote, and have used three modern descriptions of Mingrelia and the adjacent countries. 1. Of the Père Archangeli Lamberti, (Relations de Thévenot, part i, p. 31-52, with a map), who has all the knowledge and prejudices of a missionary. 2. Of Chardin, (Voyages en Perse, tom. i, p. 54, 68-168): his observations are judicious; and his own adventures in the country are still more instructive than his observations. 3. Of Peyssonnel, (Observations sur les Peuples Barbares, p. 49, 50, 51, 58, 62, 64, 65, 71, &c. and a more recent treatise, Sur le Commerce de la Mer Noire, tom. ii, p. 1-53): he had long resided at Cassa, as consul of France; and his erudition is less valuable than his experience.

country with thick forests; the timber of the hills, and the flax of the plains, contribute to the abundance of naval stores; the wild and tame animals, the horse, the ox, and the hog, are remarkably prolific, and the name of the pheasant is expressive of his native habitation on the banks of the Phasis. The gold-mines to the south of Trebizond, which are still worked with sufficient profit, were a subject of national dispute between Justinian and Chosroes; and it is not unreasonable to believe, that a vein of precious metal may be equally diffused through the circle of the hills, although these secret treasures are neglected by the laziness, or concealed by the prudence, of the Mingrelians. The waters, impregnated with particles of gold, are carefully strained through sheep-skins or fleeces; but this expedient, the ground-work perhaps of a marvellous fable, affords a faint image of the wealth extracted from a virgin earth by the power and industry of ancient kings. Their silver palaces and golden chambers surpass our belief; but the fame of their riches is said to have excited the enterprising avarice of the Argonauts.\* Tradition has affirmed, with some colour of reason, that Egypt planted on the Phasis a learned and polite colony,† which manufactured lincn, built na-

\* Pliny, *Hist. Natur.* l. xxxiii, 15: The gold and silver mines of Colchos attracted the Argonauts, (Strab. l. i, p. 77). The sagacious Chardin could find no gold in mines, rivers, or elsewhere. Yet a Mingrelian lost his hand and foot for shewing some specimens at Constantinople of native gold.

† Herodot. l. ii, c. 104, 105, p. 150, 151; Diodor. Sicul. l. i, p. 38, edit. Wesseling; Dionys. Perieget. 669, and Eustath. ad loc. Scholiast. ad Apollonium Argonaut. l. iv, 292-291.

CHAP. XLII. ~~.....~~ vies, and invented geographical maps. The ingenuity of the moderns has peopled, with flourishing cities and nations, the isthmus between the Euxine and the Caspian ;<sup>a</sup> and a lively writer, observing the resemblance of climate, and, in his apprehension, of trade, has not hesitated to pronounce Colchos the Holland of antiquity.<sup>b</sup>

Manners of  
the natives.

But the riches of Colchos shine only through the darkness of conjecture or tradition ; and its genuine history presents an uniform scene of rudeness and poverty. If one hundred and thirty languages were spoken in the market of Dioscurias,<sup>c</sup> they were the imperfect idioms of so many savage tribes or families, sequestered from each other in the valleys of mount Caucasus ; and their separation, which diminished the importance, must have multiplied the number, of their rustic capitals. In the present state of Mingrelia, a village is an assemblage of huts within a wooden fence ; the fortresses are seated in the depths of forests ; the princely town of Cyta, or Cotatis, consists of two hundred houses, and a stone-edifice appertains only to the magnificence of kings. Twelve ships from Constantinople, and about sixty barks, laden with the

<sup>a</sup> Montesquieu, *Esprit des Loix*, l. xxi, c. 6. L'Isthme . . . couvert de villes et nations qui ne font plus.

<sup>b</sup> Bougainville, *Memoires de l'Academie des Inscriptions*, tom. xxvi, p. 33, on the African voyage of Hanno and the commerce of antiquity.

<sup>c</sup> A Greek historian, Timosthenes, had affirmed, in eam cec nationes dissimilibus linguis descendere ; and the modest Pliny is content to add, et a postea a nostris cxxx interpretibus negotia ibi gesta, (vi, 5) ; but the words nunc deserta cover a multitude of past fictions.

fruits of industry, annually cast anchor on the coast; and the list of Colchian exports is much increased, since the natives had only slaves and hides to offer in exchange for the corn and salt which they purchased from the subjects of Justinian. Not a vestige can be found of the art, the knowledge, or the navigation, of the ancient Colchians: few Greeks desired or dared to pursue the footsteps of the Argonauts; and even the marks of an Egyptian colony are lost on a nearer approach. The rite of circumcision is practised only by the Mahometans of the Euxine; and the curled hair and swarthy complexion of Africa no longer disfigure the most perfect of the human race. It is in the adjacent climates of Georgia, Mingrelia, and Circassia, that nature has placed, at least to our eyes, the model of beauty, in the shape of the limbs, the colour of the skin, the symmetry of the features, and the expression of the countenance.\* According to the destination of the two sexes, the men seemed formed for action, the women for love; and the perpetual supply of females from mount Caucasus has purified the blood, and improved the breed, of the southern nations of Asia. The proper district of Mingrelia, a portion only of the ancient Colchos, has long sustained an exportation of twelve thousand slaves. The number of prisoners or criminals would be inadequate to the annual demand;

\* Buffon (Hist. Nat. tom. iii, p. 433-437) collects the unanimous suffrage of naturalists and travellers. If, in the time of Herodotus, they were in truth *μυλαγχεῖς* and *ελασχεῖς*, (and he had observed them with care), this precious fact is an example of the influence of climate on a foreign colony.

CHAP.  
XLII.

but the common people are in a state of servitude to their lords; the exercise of fraud or rapine is unpunished in a lawless community; and the market is continually replenished by the abuse of civil and paternal authority. Such a trade,\* which reduces the human species to the level of cattle, may tend to encourage marriage and population; since the multitude of children enriches their sordid and inhuman parent. But this source of impure wealth must inevitably poison the national manners, obliterate the sense of honour and virtue, and almost extinguish the instincts of nature; the *Christians* of Georgia and Mingrelia are the most dissolute of mankind; and their children, who, in a tender age, are sold into foreign slavery, have already learnt to imitate the rapine of the father and the prostitution of the mother. Yet, amidst the rudest ignorance, the untaught natives discover a singular dexterity both of mind and hand; and although the want of union and discipline exposes them to their more powerful neighbours, a bold and intrepid spirit has animated the Colchians of every age. In the host of Xerxes, they served on foot; and their arms were, a dagger or a javelin, a wooden casque, and a buckler of raw hides. But in their own country the use of cavalry has more generally prevailed: the meanest of the peasants disdain to walk; the martial nobles are pos-

\* The Mingrelian ambassador arrived at Constantinople with two hundred persons; but he ate (*sold*) them day by day, till his retinue was diminished to a secretary and two valets, (Tavernier, tom. i, p. 365). To purchase his mistress, a Mingrelian gentleman sold twelve priests and his wife to the Turks, (Chardin, tom. i, p. 66).

essed, perhaps, of two hundred horses; and above five thousand are numbered in the train of the prince of Mingrelia. The Colchian government has been always a pure and hereditary kingdom; and the authority of the sovereign is only restrained by the turbulence of his subjects. Whenever they were obedient, he could lead a numerous army into the field; but some faith is requisite to believe, that the single tribe of the Suanians was composed of two hundred thousand soldiers, or that the population of Mingrelia now amounts to four millions of inhabitants.<sup>f</sup>

It was the boast of the Colchians, that their ancestors had checked the victories of Sesostriſ; and the defeat of the Egyptian is less incredible than his successful progress, as far as the foot of mount Caucasus. They sunk, without any memorable effort, under the arms of Cyrus; followed in distant wars the standard of the great king, and presented him every fifth year with one hundred boys, and as many virgins, the fairest produce of the land.<sup>g</sup> Yet he accepted this gift like the gold and ebony of India, the frankincense of the Arabs, or the negroes and ivory of Æthiopia: the Colchians were not subject to the dominion of a satrap, and they continued to enjoy the name as well as substance of na-

Revolu-  
tions of  
Colchos;

under the  
Persians,  
before  
Christ 500;

<sup>f</sup> Strabo, l. xi, p. 765. Lamberti, *Relation de la Mingrelie*. Yet we must avoid the contrary extreme of Chardin, who allows no more than 20,000 inhabitants to supply an annual exportation of 12,000 slaves. An absurdity unworthy of that judicious traveller.

<sup>g</sup> Herodot. l. iii, c. 97. See, in l. vii, c. 79, their arms and service in the expedition of Xerxes against Greece.

CHAP.  
XLII.

under the  
Romans,  
before  
Christ 60.

tional independence.<sup>h</sup> After the fall of the Persian empire, Mithridates, king of Pontus, added Colchos to the wide circle of his dominions on the Euxine; and when the natives presumed to request that his son might reign over them, he bound the ambitious youth in chains of gold, and delegated a servant in his place. In the pursuit of Mithridates, the Romans advanced to the banks of the Phasis, and their galleys ascended the river till they reached the camp of Pompey and his legions.<sup>i</sup> But the senate, and afterwards the emperors, disdained to reduce that distant and useless conquest into the form of a province. The family of a Greek rhetorician was permitted to reign in Colchos and the adjacent kingdoms; from the time of Mark Antony to that of Nero; and after the race of Polemo<sup>k</sup> was extinct, the eastern Pontus, which preserved his name, extended no farther than the neighbourhood of Trebizond. Beyond these limits the fortifications of Hyssus, of Apsarus, of the

<sup>h</sup> Xenophon, who had encountered the Colchians in his retreat, (*Anabasis*, l. iv, p. 320, 343, 348, edit. Hutchinson; and Foster's Dissertation, p. 53-58, in Spelman's English version, vol. ii), styles them *αυτονομαι*. Before the conquest of Mithridates, they are named by Appian *ἱνδοι ἀρμενίας*, (*de Bell. Mithridatico*, c. 15, tom. i, p. 661, of the last and best edition, by John Schweighæuser, Lipsiæ, 1785, 3 vols. large octavo).

<sup>i</sup> The conquest of Colchos by Mithridates and Pompey, is marked by Appian, (*de Bell. Mithridat.*), and Plutarch, (*in Vit. Pomp.*).

<sup>k</sup> We may trace the rise and fall of the family of Polemo, in Strabo, (l. xi, p. 755; l. xii, p. 867); Dion Cassius or Xiphilin, (p. 588, 593, 601, 719, 754, 915, 946, edit. Reimer); Suetonius, (*in Neron*, c. 18; *in Vespasian*, c. 8); Eutropius, (vii, 14); Josephus, (*Antiq. Judaic.* l. xx, c. 7, p. 970, edit. Havercamp), and Eusebius, (*Chron. with Scaliger, Animadvers.* p. 196).

Phasis, of Dioscurias or Sebastopolis, and of Pityus, were guarded by sufficient detachments of horse and foot; and six princes of Colchos received their diadems from the lieutenants of Cæsar. One of these lieutenants, the eloquent and philosophic Arrian, surveyed, and has described, the Euxine coast, under the reign of Hadrian. The garrison which he reviewed at the mouth of the Phasis, consisted of four hundred chosen legionaries; the brick-walls and towers, the double ditch, and the military engines on the rampart, rendered this place inaccessible to the barbarians; but the new suburbs, which had been built by the merchants and veterans, required, in the opinion of Arrian, some external defence.<sup>1</sup> As the strength of the empire was gradually impaired, the Romans stationed on the Phasis, were either withdrawn or expelled; and the tribe of the Lazi,<sup>m</sup> whose posterity speak a foreign dialect, and inhabit the sea-coast of Trebizond, imposed their name and dominion on the ancient kingdom of Colchos. Their independence was soon invaded by a formidable neighbour, who had acquired, by arms and treaties, the sovereignty of Iberia. The dependent king of Lazica receiv-

<sup>1</sup> In the time of Procopius, there were no Roman forts on the Phasis. Pityus and Sebastopolis were evacuated on the rumour of the Persians, (Goth. l. iv, c. 4); but the latter was afterwards restored by Justinian, (de Edif. l. iv, c. 7).

<sup>m</sup> In the time of Pliny, Arrian, and Ptolemy, the Lazi were a particular tribe on the northern skirts of Colchos, (Cellarius, Geograph. Antiq. tom. ii, p. 222). In the age of Justinian, they spread, or at least reigned, over the whole country. At present they have migrated along the coast towards Trebizond, and compose a rude seafaring people, with a peculiar language, (Chardin, p. 149. Peyssonel, r. 64).

CHAP.  
XLII.

~~~~~

Conversion  
of the Lazi,  
A. D. 522.

ed his sceptre at the hands of the Persian monarch, and the successors of Constantine acquiesced in this injurious claim, which was proudly urged as a right of immemorial prescription.

In the beginning of the sixth century, their influence was restored by the introduction of Christianity, which the Mingrelians still profess with becoming zeal, without understanding the doctrines, or observing the precepts, of their religion. After the decease of his father, Zathus was exalted to the regal dignity by the favour of the great king; but the pious youth abhorred the ceremonies of the Magi, and sought, in the palace of Constantinople, an orthodox baptism, a noble wife, and the alliance of the emperor Justin. The king of Lazica was solemnly invested with the diadem, and his cloak and tunic of white silk, with a gold border, displayed, in rich embroidery, the figure of his new patron; who soothed the jealousy of the Persian court, and excused the revolt of Colchos, by the venerable names of hospitality and religion. The common interest of both empires imposed on the Colchians the duty of guarding the passes of mount Caucasus, where a wall of sixty miles is now defended by the monthly scrvice of the musqueteers of Mingrelia.<sup>n</sup>

Revolt  
and re-  
pentance  
of the  
Colchians,

But this honourable connection was soon corrupted by the avarice and ambition of the Romans.

<sup>n</sup> John Malala, Chron. tom. ii, p. 134-137. Theophanes, p. 144. Hist. Miscell. l. xv, p. 103. The fact is authentic, but the date seems too recent. In speaking of their Persian alliance, the Lazi contemporaries of Justinian employ the most obsolete words—*ἐν γρημασι μνηστικῶν, ἀπογοῶν*, &c. Could they belong to a connection which had not been dissolved above twenty years?

CHAP.

XLII.

A. D. 542-  
549

Degraded from the rank of allies, the Lazi were incessantly reminded, by words and actions, of their dependent state. At the distance of a day's journey beyond the Apsarus, they beheld the rising fortress of Petra,\* which commanded the maritime country to the south of the Phasis. Instead of being protected by the valour, Colchos was insulted by the licentiousness, of foreign mercenaries; the benefits of commerce were converted into base and vexatious monopoly; and Gubazes, the native prince, was reduced to a pageant of royalty, by the superior influence of the officers of Justinian. Disappointed in their expectations of Christian virtue, the indignant Lazi reposed some confidence in the justice of an unbeliever. After a private assurance that their ambassador should not be delivered to the Romans, they publicly solicited the friendship and aid of Chosroes. The sagacious monarch instantly discerned the use and importance of Colchos; and meditated a plan of conquest, which was renewed at the end of a thousand years by Shah Abbas, the wisest and most powerful of his successors.† His ambition was fired by the hope of launching a Persian navy from the Phasis, of commanding the trade and navigation of the Euxine

\* The sole vestige of Petra subsists in the writings of Procopius and Agathias. Most of the towns and castles of Lazica may be found by comparing their names and position with the map of Mingrelia, in Lamberti.

† See the amusing letters of Pietro della Valle, the Roman traveller, (*Viaggi*, tom. ii. 207, 209, 213, 215, 266, 286, 300; tom. iii. p. 84, 127). In the years 1618, 1619, and 1620, he conversed with Shah Abbas, and strongly encouraged a design which might have united Persia and Europe against their common enemy the Turk.

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

sea, of desolating the coast of Pontus and Bithynia, of distressing, perhaps of attacking, Constantinople, and of persuading the barbarians of Europe to second his arms and counsels against the common enemy of mankind. Under the pretence of a Scythian war, he silently led his troops to the frontiers of Iberia; the Colchian guides were prepared to conduct them through the woods and along the precipices of mount Caucasus; and a narrow path was laboriously formed into a safe and spacious highway, for the march of cavalry, and even of elephants. Gubazes laid his person and diadem at the feet of the king of Persia; his Colchians imitated the submission of their prince; and after the walls of Petra had been shaken, the Roman garrison prevented, by a capitulation, the impending fury of the last assault. But the Lazi soon discovered, that their impatience had urged them to choose an evil more intolerable than the calamities which they strove to escape. The monopoly of salt and corn was effectually removed by the loss of those valuable commodities. The authority of a Roman legislator was succeeded by the pride of an oriental despot, who beheld, with equal disdain, the slaves whom he had exalted, and the kings whom he had humbled before the footstool of his throne. The adoration of fire was introduced into Colchos by the zeal of the Magi: their intolerant spirit provoked the fervour of a Christian people; and the prejudice of nature or education was wounded by the impious practice of exposing the dead bodies of their parents, on the summit

of a lofty tower, to the crows and vultures of the air.<sup>a</sup> Conscious of the increasing hatred, which retarded the execution of his great designs, the just Nushirvan had secretly given orders to assassinate the king of the Lazi, to transplant the people into some distant land, and to fix a faithful and warlike colony on the banks of the Phasis. The watchful jealousy of the Colchians foresaw and averted the approaching ruin. Their repentance was accepted at Constantinople by the prudence, rather than the clemency, of Justinian; and he commanded Dagisteus, with seven thousand Romans, and one thousand of the Zani, to expel the Persians from the coast of the Euxine.

The siege of Petra, which the Roman general, with the aid of the Lazi, immediately undertook, is one of the most remarkable actions of the age. The city was seated on a craggy rock, which hung over the sea, and communicated by a steep and narrow path with the land. Since the approach was difficult, the attack might be deemed impossible; the Persian conqueror had strengthened the fortifications of Justinian; and the places least inaccessible were covered by additional bulwarks. In this important fortress, the vigilance of Chosroes had deposited a magazine of offensive and defensive arms, sufficient for five times the number, not only of the garri-

Siege of  
Petra,  
A. D. 549-  
551.

<sup>a</sup> See Herodotus, (l. i, c. 140, p. 69), who speaks with diffidence; Larcher, (tom. i, p. 399-401, Notes sur Herodote); Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 11), and Agathias, (l. ii, p. 61, 62). This practice, agreeable to the Zendavesta, (Hyde, de Relig. Pers. c. 34, p. 414-421), demonstrates that the burial of the Persian kings, (Xenophon. Cyropæd. l. viii, p. 658), *τι γὰρ οὕτω μακαριώτερον τι τῇ γῇ μὲναι*, is a Greek fiction, and that their tombs could be no more than cenotaphs.

CHAP.  
XLII.

son, but of the besiegers themselves. The stock of flour and salt provisions was adequate to the consumption of five years; the want of wine was supplied by vinegar, and of grain from whence a strong liquor was extracted; and a triple aqueduct eluded the diligence, and even the suspicions, of the enemy. But the firmest defence of Petra was placed in the valour of fifteen hundred Persians, who resisted the assaults of the Romans, whilst, in a softer vein of earth, a mine was secretly perforated. The wall, supported by slender and temporary props, hung tottering in the air; but Dagisteus delayed the attack till he had secured a specific recompence; and the town was relieved before the return of his messenger from Constantinople. The Persian garrison was reduced to four hundred men, of whom no more than fifty were exempt from sickness or wounds; yet such had been their inflexible perseverance, that they concealed their losses from the enemy, by enduring, without a murmur, the sight and putrifying stench of the dead bodies of their eleven hundred companions. After their deliverance, the breaches were hastily stopped with sand-bags; the mine was replenished with earth; a new wall was erected, on a frame of substantial timber; and a fresh garrison of three thousand men was stationed at Petra, to sustain the labours of a second siege. The operations, both of the attack and defence, were conducted with skilful obstinacy; and each party derived useful lessons from the experience of their past faults. A battering ram was invented, of light construction and powerful effect; it was trans-

ported and worked by the hands of forty soldiers; and as the stones were loosened by its repeated strokes, they were torn with long iron hooks from the wall. From those walls, a shower of darts was incessantly poured on the heads of the assailants, but they were most dangerously annoyed by a fiery composition of sulphur and bitumen, which in Colchos might with some propriety be named the oil of Medea. Of six thousand Romans who mounted the scaling-ladders, their general, Bessas, was the first, a gallant veteran of seventy years of age: the courage of their leader, his fall, and extreme danger, animated the irresistible effort of his troops; and their prevailing numbers oppressed the strength, without subduing the spirit, of the Persian garrison. The fate of these valiant men deserves to be more distinctly noticed. Seven hundred had perished in the siege, two thousand three hundred survived to defend the breach. One thousand and seventy were destroyed with fire and sword in the last assault; and if seven hundred and thirty were made prisoners, only eighteen among them were found without the marks of honourable wounds. The remaining five hundred escaped into the citadel, which they maintained without any hopes of relief, rejecting the fairest terms of capitulation and service, till they were lost in the flames. They died in obedience to the commands of their prince; and such examples of loyalty and valour might excite their countrymen to deeds of equal despair and more prosperous event. The instant demolition of the

CHAP. works of Preta confessed the astonishment and  
XLII. apprehension of the conqueror.

The Col-  
chian or  
Lazic war,  
A. D. 549-  
556.

A Spartan would have praised and pitied the virtue of these heroic slaves; but the tedious warfare and alternate success of the Roman and Persian arms cannot detain the attention of posterity at the foot of mount Caucasus. The advantages obtained by the troops of Justinian were more frequent and splendid; but the forces of the great king were continually supplied, till they amounted to eight elephants and seventy thousand men, including twelve thousand Scythian allies, and above three thousand Dilemites, who descended by their free choice from the hills of Hyrcania, and were equally formidable in close or in distant combat. The siege of *Archæopolis*, a name imposed or corrupted by the Greeks, was raised with some loss and precipitation; but the Persians occupied the passes of Iberia: Colchos was enslaved by their forts and garrisons; they devoured the scanty sustenance of the people; and the prince of the Lazi fled into the mountains. In the Roman camp faith and discipline were unknown; and the independent leaders, who were invested with equal power, disputed with each other the pre-eminence of vice and corruption. The Persians followed, without a murmur, the commands of a single chief, who implicitly obeyed the instructions of their supreme lord. Their general was distinguished among the heroes of the East, by his wisdom in council, and his valour in the field. The advanced age of Mermeroes, and the lameness of both his feet, could not diminish the

CHAP.  
XLII.  
~~~~~

activity of his mind, or even of his body ; and whilst he was carried in a litter in the front of battle, he inspired terror to the enemy, and a just confidence to the troops, who, under his banners, were always successful. After his death, the command devolved to Nacoragan, a proud satrap, who, in conference with the imperial chiefs, had presumed to declare that he disposed of victory as absolutely as of the ring on his finger. Such presumption was the natural cause and fore-runner of a shameful defeat. The Romans had been gradually repulsed to the edge of the sea-shore ; and their last camp, on the ruins of the Grecian colony of Phasis, was defended on all sides by strong intrenchments, the river, the Euxine, and a fleet of galleys. Despair united their counsels and invigorated their arms ; they withstood the assault of the Persians ; and the flight of Nacoragan preceded or followed the slaughter of ten thousand of his bravest soldiers. He escaped from the Romans to fall into the hands of an unforgiving master, who severely chastised the error of his own choice ; the unfortunate general was flayed alive, and his skin, stuffed into the human form, was exposed on a mountain : a dreadful warning to those who might hereafter be intrusted with the fame and fortune of Persia.\* Yet the prudence of Chosroes insensibly relinquished the prosecution of the Colchian war, in the just persuasion that it is

\* The punishment of flaying alive could not be introduced into Persia by Sapor, (Brisson de Regn. Pers. l. ii, p. 578), nor could it be copied from the foolish tale of Marsyas the Phrygian piper, most foolishly quoted as a precedent by Agathias, (l. iv, p. 132, 133).

CHAP.

XLII.

impossible to reduce, or, at least, to hold a distant country against the wishes and efforts of its inhabitants. The fidelity of Gubazes sustained the most rigorous trials. He patiently endured the hardships of a savage life, and rejected, with disdain, the specious temptations of the Persian court. The king of the Lazi had been educated in the Christian religion; his mother was the daughter of a senator; during his youth, he had served ten years a silentiary of the Byzantine palace,\* and the arrears of an unpaid salary were a motive of attachment as well as of complaint. But the long continuance of his sufferings extorted from him a naked representation of the truth; and truth was an unpardonable libel on the lieutenants of Justinian, who, amidst the delays of a ruinous war, had spared his enemies, and trampled on his allies. Their malicious information persuaded the emperor, that his faithless vassal already meditated a second defection: an order was issued to send him prisoner to Constantinople; a treacherous clause was inserted, that he might be lawfully killed in case of resistance; and Gubazes, without arms, or suspicion of danger, was stabbed in the security of a friendly interview. In the first moments of rage and despair, the Colchians would have sacrificed their country and religion to the gratification of revenge. But the authority and eloquence of the

\* In the palace of Constantinople there were thirty silentiaries, who are styled *hastati ante fores cubiculi*, *the army of the palace*, an honourable title, which conferred the rank, without imposing the duties, of a senator, (Cod. Theodos. l. vi, tit. 23. Gothofred. Comment. torn. ii, p. 129).

wiser few, obtained a salutary pause: the victory of the Phasis restored the terror of the Roman arms, and the emperor was solicitous to absolve his own name from the imputation of so foul a murder. A judge of senatorial rank was commissioned to inquire into the conduct and death of the king of the Lazi. He ascended a stately tribunal, encompassed by the ministers of justice and punishment: in the presence of both nations, this extraordinary cause was pleaded, according to the forms of civil jurisprudence, and some satisfaction was granted to an injured people, by the sentence and execution of the meaner criminals.\*

In peace, the king of Persia continually sought the pretences of a rupture; but no sooner had he taken up arms, than he expressed his desire of a safe and honourable treaty: During the fiercest hostilities, the two monarchs entertained a deceitful negotiation; and such was the superiority of Chosroes, that whilst he treated the Roman ministers with insolence and contempt, he obtained the most unprecedented honours for his own ambassadors at the imperial court. The successor of Cyrus assumed the majesty of the eastern sun, and graciously permitted his younger brother Justinian to reign over the west, with the pale and reflected splendour of the moon. This gigantic style was supported by the pomp and eloquence of Isdigune, one of the royal chamberlains. His wife and

Negotiations and treaties between Justinian and Chosroes, A. D. 540-561.

\* On these judicial orations, Agathias (l. iii. p. 81-89; l. iv. p. 108-119) lavishes eighteen or twenty pages of false and florid rhetoric. His ignorance or carelessness overlooks the strongest argument against the king of Lazica—his former revolt.

CHAP. daughters, with a train of eunuchs and camels,  
 XLII.  
 ..... attended the march of the ambassador : two sa-

traps with golden diadems were numbered among his followers : he was guarded by five hundred horse, the most valiant of the Persians ; and the Roman governor of Dara wisely refused to admit more than twenty of this martial and hostile caravan. When Isdigune had saluted the emperor, and delivered his presents, he passed ten months at Constantinople without discussing any serious affairs. Instead of being confined to his palace, and receiving food and water from the hands of his keepers, the Persian ambassador, without spies or guards, was allowed to visit the capital ; and the freedom of conversation and trade enjoyed by his domestics offended the prejudices of an age, which rigorously practised the law of nations, without confidence or courtesy." By an unexampled indulgence, his interpreter, a servant below the notice of a Roman magistrate, was seated, at the table of Justinian, by the side of his master ; and one thousand pounds of gold might be assigned for the expence of his journey and entertainment. Yet the repeated labours of Isdigune could procure only a partial and imperfect truce, which was always purchased with the treasures, and renewed at the solicitation, of the Byzantine court. Many years of fruitless desolation elapsed before Justinian and

<sup>u</sup> Procopius represents the practice of the Gothic court of Ravenna, (Goth. l. i, c. 7); and foreign ambassadors have been treated with the same jealousy and rigour in Turkey, (Busbequius, epist. iii, p. 149, 242, &c.), Russia, (Voyage d'Olearius), and China, (Narrative of M. de Lange, in Bell's Travels, vol. ii, p. 189-311).

Chosroes were compelled, by mutual lassitude, to consult the repose of their declining age. At a conference held on the frontier, each party, without expecting to gain credit, displayed the power, the justice, and the pacific intentions of their respective sovereigns; but necessity and interest dictated the treaty of peace, which was concluded for a term of fifty years, diligently composed in the Greek and Persian language, and attested by the seals of twelve interpreters. The liberty of commerce and religion was fixed and defined; the allies of the emperor and the great king were included in the same benefits and obligations; and the most scrupulous precautions were provided to prevent or determine the accidental disputes that might arise on the confines of two hostile nations. After twenty years of destructive though feeble war, the limits still remained without alteration; and Chosroes was persuaded to renounce his dangerous claim to the possession or sovereignty of Colchos and its dependent states. Rich in the accumulated treasures of the East, he extorted from the Romans an annual payment of thirty thousand pieces of gold; and the smallness of the sum revealed the disgrace of a tribute in its naked deformity. In a previous debate, the chariot of Sesostris, and the wheel of fortune, were applied by one of the ministers of Justinian, who observed that the reduction of Antioch, and some Syrian cities, had elevated beyond measure the vain and ambitious spirit of the barbarian. "You are mistaken," replied the modest Persian: "the king of kings.

CHAP. "the lord of mankind, looks down with con-  
 XLII. tempt on such petty acquisitions; and of the  
 "ten nations, vanquished by his invincible arms,  
 "he esteems the Romans as the least formid-  
 "able."\* According to the orientals, the em-  
 pire of Nushirvan extended from Ferganah in  
 Transoxiana, to Yemen or Arabia Felix. He  
 subdued the rebels of Hyrcania, reduced the pro-  
 vinces of Cabul and Zablestan on the banks of  
 the Indus, broke the power of the Euthalites,  
 terminated by an honourable treaty the Turkish  
 war, and admitted the daughter of the great khan  
 into the number of his lawful wives. Victorious  
 and respected among the princes of Asia, he gave  
 audience, in his palace of Madain, or Ctesiphon,  
 to the ambassadors of the world. Their gifts or  
 tributes, arms, rich garments, gems, slaves, or  
 aromatics, were humbly presented at the foot  
 of his throne; and he condescended to accept  
 from the king of India, ten quintals of the wood  
 of aloes, a maid seven cubits in height, and a  
 carpet softer than silk, the skin, as it was report-  
 ed, of an extraordinary serpent.†

Conquest  
 of the  
 Abyssini-  
 ans,  
 A. D. 522.

Justinian had been reproached for his alliance  
 with the Æthiopians, as if he attempted to in-  
 troduce a people of savage negroes into the system  
 of civilized society. But the friends of the Ro-  
 man empire, the Axumites, or Abyssinians, may

\* The negotiations and treaties between Justinian and Chosroes are copiously explained by Procopius, (Persic. l. ii, c. 10, 13, 26, 27, 28; Gothic. l. ii, c. 11, 15); Agathias, (l. iv, p. 141, 142), and Menander, (in Excerpt. Legat. p. 132-147). Consult Barbeyrac, Hist. des Anciens Traites, tom. ii, p. 154, 181-184, 193-200.

† D'Herbelot, Bibliot. Orient. p. 680, 681, 294, 295.

be always distinguished from the original natives of Africa.<sup>a</sup> The hand of nature has flattened the noses of the negroes, covered their heads with shaggy wool, and tinged their skin with inherent and indelible blackness. But the olive complexion of the Abyssinians, their hair, shape, and features, distinctly mark them as a colony of Arabs; and this descent is confirmed by the resemblance of language and manners, the report of an ancient emigration, and the narrow interval between the shores of the Red Sea. Christianity had raised that nation above the level of African barbarism;<sup>a</sup> their intercourse with Egypt, and the successors of Constantine,<sup>b</sup> had communicated the rudiments of the arts and sciences;

<sup>a</sup> See Buffon, *Hist. Naturelle*, tom. iii, p. 449. This Arab cast of features and complexion, which has continued 3400 years, (Ludolph-Hist. et Comment. *Æthiopic.* l. i, c. 4), in the colony of Abyssinia, will justify the suspicion, that race, as well as climate, must have contributed to form the negroes of the adjacent and similar regions.

<sup>a</sup> The Portuguese missionaries, Alvarez, (Ramusio, tom. i, fol. 204, rect. 274 vers.); Burmudez, (Purchas's *Pilgrims*, vol. ii, l. v, c. 7, p. 1149-1188); Lobo, (*Relation, &c.* par M. le Grand, with xv Dissertations; Paris, 1728), and Tellez, (*Relations de Thevenot*, part iv), could only relate of modern Abyssinia what they had seen or invented. The erudition of Ludolphus, (*Hist. Æthiopica*, Francofurt. 1681; *Commentarius*, 1691; *Appendix*, 1694), in twenty-five languages, could add little concerning its ancient history. Yet the fame of Cal ed, or Ellisthæus, the conqueror of Yemen, is celebrated in national songs and legends.

<sup>b</sup> The negotiations of Justinian with the Axumites, or Æthiopians, are recorded by Procopius, (*Persic.* l. i, c. 19, 20), and John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 163-165, 193-196). The historian of Antioch quotes the original narrative of the ambassador Nonnosus, of which Photius (*Bibliot. cod.* iii) has preserved a curious extract.

CHAP.  
XLII.

their vessels traded to the isle of Ceylon,<sup>c</sup> and seven kingdoms obeyed the Negus or supreme prince of Abyssinia. The independence of the Homerites, who reigned in the rich and happy Arabia, was first violated by an Æthiopian conqueror; he drew his hereditary claim from the queen of Sheba,<sup>d</sup> and his ambition was sanctified by religious zeal. The Jews, powerful and active in exile, had seduced the mind of Dunaan, prince of the Homerites. They urged him to retaliate the persecution inflicted by the imperial laws on their unfortunate brethren: some Roman merchants were injuriously treated; and several Christians of Negra<sup>e</sup> were honoured with the crown of martyrdom.<sup>f</sup> The churches of Arabia implored the protection of the Abyssinian monarch. The Negus passed the Red Sea with a fleet and army, deprived the Jewish proselyte of his kingdom and life, and extinguished a race of princes, who had ruled above two thousand

<sup>c</sup> The trade of the Axumites to the coast of India and Africa, and the isle of Ceylon, is curiously represented by Cosmas Indicopleustes, (*Topograph. Christian.* l. ii, p. 132, 138, 139, 140; l. xi, p. 338, 339).

<sup>d</sup> Ludolph. *Hist. et Comment. Æthiop.* l. ii, c. 3.

<sup>e</sup> The city of Negra, or Nag'ran, in Yemen, is surrounded with palm-trees, and stands in the high-road between Saana, the capital, and Mecca, from the former ten, from the latter twenty, days journey of a caravan of camels, (*Abulfeda, Descript. Arabiæ*, p. 52).

<sup>f</sup> The martyrdom of St. Arethas prince of Negra, and his three hundred and forty companions, is embellished in the legends of Metaphrastes and Nicephorus Callistus, copied by Baronius (*A. D.* 522, N°. 22-66; *A. D.* 523, N°. 16-29), and refuted, with obscure diligence, by Basnage, (*Hist. des Juifs*, tom. xii, l. viii, c. ii, p. 333-348), who investigates the state of the Jews in Arabia and Æthiopia.

years the sequestered region of myrrh and frankincense. The conqueror immediately announced the victory of the gospel, requested an orthodox patriarch, and so warmly professed his friendship to the Roman empire, that Justinian was flattered by the hope of diverting the silk-trade through the channel of Abyssinia, and of exciting the forces of Arabia against the Persian king. Nonnosus, descended from a family of ambassadors, was named by the emperor to execute this important commission. He wisely declined the shorter, but more dangerous, road through the sandy deserts of Nubia; ascended the Nile, embarked on the Red Sea, and safely landed at the African port of Adulis. From Adulis to the royal city of Axume is no more than fifty leagues, in a direct line; but the winding passes of the mountains detained the ambassador fifteen days; and as he traversed the forests, he saw, and vaguely computed, about five thousand wild elephants. The capital, according to his report, was large and populous; and the *village* of Axume is still conspicuous by the regal coronations, by the ruins of a Christian temple, and by sixteen or seventeen obelisks inscribed with Grecian characters.\* But the Negus gave audience in the open field, seated on a lofty chariot, which was drawn by four elephants superbly caparisoned, and surrounded by his nobles

Their alliance with Justinian, A. D. 537.

\* Alvarez (in Ramusio, tom. i, fol. 219 vers. 221 vers.) saw the flourishing state of Axume in the year 1520—luogo molto buono e grande. It was ruined in the same century by the Turkish invasion. No more than one hundred houses remain; but the memory of its past greatness is preserved by the regal coronation, (Ludolph. Hist. et Comment. l. ii, c. 11).

CHAP.

XLII.

and musicians. He was clad in a linen-garment and cap, holding in his hand two javelins and a light shield; and, although his nakedness was imperfectly covered, he displayed the barbaric pomp of gold-chains, collars, and bracelets, richly adorned with pearls and precious stones. The ambassador of Justinian knelt; the Negus raised him from the ground, embraced Nonnosus, kissed the seal, perused the letter, accepted the Roman alliance, and, brandishing his weapons, denounced implacable war against the worshippers of fire. But the proposal of the silk-trade was eluded; and notwithstanding the assurances, and perhaps the wishes, of the Abyssinians, these hostile menaces evaporated without effect. The Homerites were unwilling to abandon their aromatic groves, to explore a sandy desert, and to encounter, after all their fatigues, a formidable nation from whom they had never received any personal injuries. Instead of enlarging his conquests, the king of Æthiopia was incapable of defending his possessions. Abrahah, the slave of a Roman merchant of Adulis, assumed the sceptre of the Homerites; the troops of Africa were seduced by the luxury of the climate; and Justinian solicited the friendship of the usurper, who honoured, with a slight tribute, the supremacy of his prince. After a long series of prosperity, the power of Abrahah was overthrown before the gates of Mecca; his children were despoiled by the Persian conqueror; and the Æthiopians were finally expelled from the continent of Asia. This narrative of obscure and remote events is not foreign

to the decline and fall of the Roman empire. If a Christian power had been maintained in Arabia, Mahomet must have been crushed in his cradle, and Abyssinia would have prevented a revolution which has changed the civil and religious state of the world.<sup>b</sup>

CHAP.

XLII.

<sup>b</sup> The revolutions of Yemen in the sixth century must be collected from Procopius, (Persic. l. i, c. 19, 20); Theophanes Byzant. (apud Phot. cod. lxiii, p. 80); St. Theophanes, (in Chronograph. p. 144, 145, 188, 189, 206, 207, who is full of strange blunders); Pocock, (Specimen Hist. Arab. p. 62, 65); d'Herbelot, (Bibliot. Orientale, p. 12, 477), and Sale's Preliminary Discourse and Koran, (c. 105). The revolt of Abrahah is mentioned by Procopius; and his fall, though clouded with miracles, is an historical fact.

## CHAP. XLIII.

*Rebellions of Africa—Restoration of the Gothic kingdom by Totila—Loss and recovery of Rome—Final conquest of Italy by Narses—Extinction of the Ostrogoths—Defeat of the Franks and Alemanni—Last victory, disgrace, and death of Belisarius—Death and character of Justinian—Comet, earthquakes, and plague.*

CHAP.  
XLIII.

THE review of the nations from the Danube to the Nile has exposed on every side the weakness of the Romans ; and our wonder is reasonably excited that they should presume to enlarge an empire, whose ancient limits they were incapable of defending. But the wars, the conquests, and the triumphs of Justinian, are the feeble and pernicious efforts of old age, which exhaust the remains of strength, and accelerate the decay of the powers of life. He exulted in the glorious act of restoring Africa and Italy to the republic ; but the calamities which followed the departure of Belisarius betrayed the impotence of the conqueror, and accomplished the ruin of those unfortunate countries.

The troubles of  
Africa,  
A. D. 535–  
545.

From his new acquisitions, Justinian expected that his avarice, as well as pride, should be richly gratified. A rapacious minister of the finances closely pursued the footsteps of Belisarius ; and as the old registers of tribute had been burnt by the

Vandals, he indulged his fancy in a liberal calculation and arbitrary assessment of the wealth of Africa.\* The increase of taxes, which were drawn away by a distant sovereign, and a general resumption of the patrimony or crown lands, soon dispelled the intoxication of the public joy : but the emperor was insensible to the modest complaints of the people, till he was awakened and alarmed by the clamours of military discontent. Many of the Roman soldiers had married the widows and daughters of the Vandals. As their own, by the double right of conquest and inheritance, they claimed the estates which Genseric had assigned to his victorious troops. They heard with disdain the cold and selfish representations of their officers, that the liberality of Justinian had raised them from a savage or servile condition; that they were already enriched by the spoils of Africa, the treasure, the slaves, and the moveables, of the vanquished barbarians ; and that the ancient and lawful patrimony of the emperors would be applied only to the support of that government on which their own safety and reward must ultimately depend. The mutiny was secretly inflamed by a thousand soldiers, for the most part Heruli, who

\* For the troubles of Africa, I neither have nor desire another guide than Procopius, whose eye contemplated the image, and whose ear collected the reports, of the memorable events of his own times. In the second book of the Vandalic war he relates the revolt of Stroz, (c. 14-24), the return of Belisarius, (c. 15), the victory of Germanus, (c. 16, 17, 18), the second administration of Solomon, (c. 19, 20, 21), the government of Sergius, (c. 22, 23), of Areobindus, (c. 24), the tyranny and death of Gontharis, (c. 25, 26, 27, 28) ; nor can I discern any symptoms of flattery or malevolence in his various portraits.

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
~~~~~

had imbibed the doctrines, and were instigated by the clergy, of the Arian sect; and the cause of perjury and rebellion was sanctified by the dispensing powers of fanaticism. The Arians deplored the ruin of their church, triumphant above a century in Africa; and they were justly provoked by the laws of the conqueror, which interdicted the baptism of their children, and the exercise of all religious worship. Of the Vandals chosen by Belisarius, the far greater part, in the honours of the eastern service, forgot their country and religion. But a generous band of four hundred obliged the mariners, when they were in sight of the isle of Lesbos, to alter their course: they touched on Peloponnesus, ran ashore on a desert coast of Africa, and boldly erected, on mount Aurasius, the standard of independence and revolt. While the troops of the province disclaimed the command of their superiors, a conspiracy was formed at Carthage against the life of Solomon, who filled with honour the place of Belisarius; and the Arians had piously resolved to sacrifice the tyrant at the foot of the altar, during the awful mysteries of the festival of Easter. Fear or remorse restrained the daggers of the assassins, but the patience of Solomon emboldened their discontent; and at the end of ten days, a furious sedition was kindled in the circus, which desolated Africa above ten years. The pillage of the city, and the indiscriminate slaughter of its inhabitants, were suspended only by darkness, sleep, and intoxication: the governor, with seven companions, among whom was the historian Procopius, escaped to Sicily: two-thirds of the

army were involved in the guilt of treason; and eight thousand insurgents, assembling in the field of Bulla, elected Stozza for their chief, a private soldier, who possessed, in a superior degree, the virtues of a rebel. Under the mask of freedom, his eloquence could lead, or at least impel, the passions of his equals. He raised himself to a level with Belisarius, and the nephew of the emperor, by daring to encounter them in the field; and the victorious generals were compelled to acknowledge, that Stozza deserved a purer cause and a more legitimate command. Vanquished in battle, he dexterously employed the arts of negotiation; a Roman army was seduced from their allegiance, and the chiefs, who had trusted to his faithless promise, were murdered, by his order, in a church of Numidia. When every resource, either of force or perfidy, was exhausted, Stozza, with some desperate Vandals, retired to the wilds of Mauritania, obtained the daughter of a barbarian prince, and eluded the pursuit of his enemies, by the report of his death. The personal weight of Belisarius, the rank, the spirit, and the temper, of Germanus, the emperor's nephew, and the vigour and success of the second administration of the eunuch Solomon, restored the modesty of the camp, and maintained, for a while, the tranquillity of Africa. But the vices of the Byzantine court were felt in that distant province; the troops complained that they were neither paid nor relieved; and as soon as the public disorders were sufficiently mature, Stozza was again alive, in arms, and at the gates of Carthage. He fell in

CHAP.  
XLIII.

a single combat, but he smiled in the agonies of death, when he was informed that his own javelin had reached the heart of his antagonist. The example of Stoza, and the assurance that a fortunate soldier had been the first king, encouraged the ambition of Gontharis, and he promised, by a private treaty, to divide Africa with the Moors, if, with their dangerous aid, he should ascend the throne of Carthage. The feeble Areobindus, unskilled in the affairs of peace and war, was raised by his marriage with the niece of Justinian, to the office of exarch. He was suddenly oppressed by a sedition of the guards, and his abject supplications, which provoked the contempt, could not move the pity, of the inexorable tyrant. After a reign of thirty days, Gontharis himself was stabbed at a banquet, by the hand of Artaban; and it is singular enough, that an Armenian prince, of the royal family of Arsaces, should re-establish, at Carthage, the authority of the Roman empire. In the conspiracy which unsheathed the dagger of Brutus against the life of Cæsar, every circumstance is curious and important to the eyes of posterity: but the guilt or merit of these loyal or rebellious assassins could interest only the contemporaries of Procopius, who, by their hopes and fears, their friendship or resentment, were personally engaged in the revolutions of Africa.<sup>b</sup>

<sup>b</sup> Yet I must not refuse him the merit of painting, in lively colours, the murder of Gontharis. One of the assassins uttered a sentiment not unworthy of a Roman patriot.—“ If I fail,” said Artasires, “ in the first stroke, kill me on the spot, lest the rack should extort a discovery of my accomplices.”

CHAP.  
XLIII.Rebellion  
of the  
Moors,  
A. D. 543-  
558.

That country was rapidly sinking into the state of barbarism, from whence it had been raised by the Phœnician colonies and Roman laws: and every step of intestine discord was marked by some deplorable victory of savage man over civilized society. The Moors,\* though ignorant of justice, were impatient of oppression: their vagrant life and boundless wilderness disappointed the arms, and eluded the chains, of a conqueror; and experience had shewn, that neither oaths nor obligations could secure the fidelity of their attachment. The victory of mount Auras had awed them into momentary submission; but if they respected the character of Solomon, they hated and despised the pride and luxury of his two nephews, Cyrus and Sergius, on whom their uncle had imprudently bestowed the provincial governments of Tripoli and Pentapolis. A Moorish tribe encamped under the walls of Leptis, to renew their alliance, and receive from the governor the customary gifts. Fourscore of their deputies were introduced as friends into the city; but, on the dark suspicion of a conspiracy, they were massacred at the table of Sergius; and the clamour of arms and revenge was re-echoed through the valleys of mount Atlas, from both the Syrtes to the Atlantic ocean. A personal injury, the unjust execution, or murder, of his brother, rendered Antalus the enemy of the Romans. The defeat of the Vandals had formerly signalized his

\* The Moorish wars are occasionally introduced into the narrative of Procopius, (Vandal. l. ii, c. 19-23, 25, 27, 28; Gothic. l. iv, c. 17); and Theophanes adds some prosperous and adverse events in the last years of Justinian.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

valour; the rudiments of justice and prudence were still more conspicuous in a Moor; and while he laid Adrumetum in ashes, he calmly admonished the emperor that the peace of Africa might be secured by the recal of Solomon and his unworthy nephews. The exarch led forth his troops from Carthage: but, at the distance of six days journey, in the neighbourhood of Tebeste,<sup>d</sup> he was astonished by the superior numbers and fierce aspect of the barbarians. He proposed a treaty; solicited a reconciliation; and offered to bind himself by the most solemn oaths. "By what oaths can he bind himself?" interrupted the indignant Moors. "Will he swear by the gospels, the divine books of the Christians? It was on those books that the faith of his nephew Sergius was pledged to eighty of our innocent and unfortunate brethren. Before we trust them a second time, let us try their efficacy in the chastisement of perjury, and the vindication of their own honour." Their honour was vindicated in the field of Tebeste, by the death of Solomon, and the total loss of his army. The arrival of fresh troops and more skilful commanders, soon checked the insolence of the Moors; seventeen of their princes were slain in the same battle; and the doubtful and transient submission

<sup>d</sup> Now Tibesh, in the kingdom of Algiers. It is watered by a river, the Sujerass, which falls into the Mejerda, (*Bagradas*). Tibesh is still remarkable for its walls of large stones, (like the Coliseum of Rome), a fountain and a grove of walnut-trees: the country is fruitful, and the neighbouring Bereberes are warlike. It appears from an inscription, that under the reign of Adrian, the road from Carthage to Tebeste was constructed by the third legion, (Marmol. Description de l'Afrique, tom. ii, p. 442, 443. Shaw's Travels, p. 64, 65, 66).

of their tribes was celebrated with lavish applause by the people of Constantinople. Successive inroads had reduced the province of Africa to one-third of the measure of Italy; yet the Roman emperors continued to reign above a century over Carthage, and the fruitful coast of the Mediterranean. But the victories and the losses of Justinian were alike pernicious to mankind; and such was the desolation of Africa, that in many parts a stranger might wander whole days without meeting the face either of a friend or an enemy. The nation of the Vandals had disappeared; they once amounted to an hundred and sixty thousand warriors, without including the children, the women, or the slaves. Their numbers were infinitely surpassed by the number of the Moorish families extirpated in a relentless war; and the same destruction was retaliated on the Romans and their allies, who perished by the climate, their mutual quarrels, and the rage of the barbarians. When Procopius first landed, he admired the populousness of the cities and country, strenuously exercised in the labours of commerce and agriculture. In less than twenty years, that busy scene was converted into a silent solitude; the wealthy citizens escaped to Sicily and Constantinople; and the secret historian has confidently affirmed, that five millions of Africans were consumed by the wars and government of the emperor Justinian.\*

The jealousy of the Byzantine court had not

Revolt of  
the Goths,  
A. D. 540.

\* Procopius, Anecdot. c. 18. The series of the African history attests this melancholy truth.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

permitted Belisarius to achieve the conquest of Italy; and his abrupt departure revived the courage of the Goths,<sup>f</sup> who respected his genius, his virtue, and even the laudable motive which had urged the servant of Justinian to deceive and reject them. They had lost their king, (an inconsiderable loss), their capital, their treasures, the provinces from Sicily to the Alps, and the military force of two hundred thousand barbarians, magnificently equipped with horses and arms. Yet all was not lost, as long as Pavia was defended by one thousand Goths, inspired by a sense of honour, the love of freedom, and the memory of their past greatness. The supreme command was unanimously offered to the brave Uraias; and it was in his eyes alone that the disgrace of his uncle Vitiges could appear as a reason of exclusion. His voice inclined the election in favour of Hildibald, whose personal merit was recommended by the vain hope that his kinsman Theudes, the Spanish monarch, would support the common interest of the Gothic nation. The success of his arms in Liguria and Venetia seemed to justify their choice; but he soon declared to the world, that he was incapable of forgiving or commanding his benefactor. The consort of Hildibald was deeply wounded by the beauty, the riches, and the pride

<sup>f</sup> In the second (c. 30) and third books, (c. 1-40), Procopius continues the history of the Gothic war from the fifth to the fifteenth year of Justinian. As the events are less interesting than in the former period, he allots only half the space to double the time. Jornandes and the Chronicle of Marcellinus, afford some collateral hints. Sigonius, Pagi, Muratori, Mascon, and De Buat, are useful, and have been used.

of the wife of Uraias; and the death of that virtuous patriot excited the indignation of a free people. A bold assassin executed their sentence by striking off the head of Hildibald in the midst of a banquet: the Rugians, a foreign tribe, assumed the privilege of election; and Totila, the nephew of the late king, was tempted, by revenge, to deliver himself and the garrison of Trevigo into the hands of the Romans. But the gallant and accomplished youth was easily persuaded to prefer the Gothic throne before the service of Justinian; and as soon as the palace of Pavia had been purified from the Rugian usurper, he reviewed the national force of five thousand soldiers, and generously undertook the restoration of the kingdom of Italy.

The successors of Belisarius, eleven generals of equal rank, neglected to crush the feeble and disunited Goths, till they were roused to action by the progress of Totila and the reproaches of Justinian. The gates of Verona were secretly opened to Artabazus, at the head of one hundred Persians in the service of the empire. The Goths fled from the city. At the distance of sixty furlongs the Roman generals halted to regulate the division of the spoil. While they disputed, the enemy discovered the real number of the victors: the Persians were instantly overpowered, and it was by leaping from the wall that Artabazus preserved a life which he lost in a few days by the lance of a barbarian, who had defied him to single combat. Twenty thousand Romans encountered the forces of Totila, near Faenza, and on the hills of Mugello, of the Florentine territory. The ardour of

Victories  
of Totila,  
king of  
Italy,  
A. D. 541-  
544.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

freedmen, who fought to regain their country, was opposed to the languid temper of mercenary troops, who were even destitute of the merits of strong and well-disciplined servitude. On the first attack they abandoned their ensigns, threw down their arms, and dispersed on all sides with an active speed which abated the loss, whilst it aggravated the shame, of their defeat. The king of the Goths, who blushed for the baseness of his enemies, pursued with rapid steps the path of honour and victory. Totila passed the Po, traversed the Apennine, suspended the important conquest of Ravenna, Florence, and Rome, and marched through the heart of Italy, to form the siege, or rather blockade, of Naples. The Roman chiefs, imprisoned in their respective cities, and accusing each other of the common disgrace, did not presume to disturb his enterprise. But the emperor, alarmed by the distress and danger of his Italian conquests, despatched to the relief of Naples a fleet of galleys and a body of Thracian and Armenian soldiers. They landed in Sicily, which yielded its copious stores of provisions; but the delays of the new commander, an unwarlike magistrate, protracted the sufferings of the besieged; and the succours, which he dropt with a timid and tardy hand, were successively intercepted by the armed vessels stationed by Totila in the bay of Naples. The principal officer of the Romans was dragged, with a rope round his neck, to the foot of the wall, from whence, with a trembling voice, he exhorted the citizens to implore, like himself, the mercy of the conqueror. They requested a truce,

with a promise of surrendering the city, if no effectual relief should appear at the end of thirty days. Instead of *one* month, the audacious barbarian granted them *three*, in the just confidence that famine would anticipate the term of their capitulation. After the reduction of Naples and Cumæ, the provinces of Lucania, Apulia, and Calabria, submitted to the king of the Goths. Totila led his army to the gates of Rome, pitched his camp at Tibur, or Tivoli, within twenty miles of the capital, and calmly exhorted the senate and people to compare the tyranny of the Greeks with the blessings of the Gothic reign.

The rapid success of Totila may be partly ascribed to the revolution which three years experience had produced in the sentiments of the Italians. At the command, or at least in the name, of a catholic emperor, the pope,<sup>c</sup> their spiritual father, had been torn from the Roman church, and either starved or murdered on a desolate island.<sup>b</sup> The virtues of Belisarius were replaced by the various or uniform vices of eleven chiefs, at Rome, Ravenna, Florence, Perugia, Spoleto, &c. who abused their authority for the indulgence of lust or avarice. The improvement of the revenue was committed to Alexander, a subtle scribe, long

<sup>c</sup> Sylvester, bishop of Rome, was first transported to Patara, in Lycia, and at length starved (sub eorum custodiâ inedia confectus) in the isle of Palmaria, A. D. 538, June 20, (Liberat. in Breviar. c. 22. Anastasius in Sylvester. Baronius, A. D. 340, N°. 2, 3. Pagi in Vit. Pont. tom. i, p. 285, 286). Procopius (Anecd. c. 1) accuses only the empress and Antonina.

<sup>b</sup> Palmaria, a small island, opposite to Tarracina and the coast of the Volsci, (Cluver. Ital. Antiq. l. iii, c. 7, p. 1014).

CHAP.  
XLIII.

practised in the fraud and oppression of the Byzantine schools; and whose name of *Psalliction*, the *scissars*,<sup>1</sup> was drawn from the dexterous artifice with which he reduced the size, without defacing the figure, of the gold coin. Instead of expecting the restoration of peace and industry, he imposed an heavy assessment on the fortunes of the Italians. Yet his present or future demands were less odious than a prosecution of arbitrary rigour against the persons and property of all those, who, under the Gothic kings, had been concerned in the receipt and expenditure of the public money. The subjects of Justinian, who escaped these partial vexations, were oppressed by the irregular maintenance of the soldiers, whom Alexander defrauded and despised; and their hasty sallies in quest of wealth, or subsistence, provoked the inhabitants of the country to await or implore their deliverance from the virtues of a barbarian. Totila<sup>2</sup> was chaste and temperate: and none were deceived, either friends or enemies, who depended on his faith or his clemency. To the husbandmen of Italy the Gothic king issued a welcome proclamation, enjoining them to pursue their important labours, and to rest assured, that, on the payment of the ordinary taxes they should be defended by his valour and discipline from the injuries of war. The

<sup>1</sup> As the Logothete Alexander, and most of his civil and military colleagues, were either disgraced or despised, the ink of the Anecdotes (c. 4, 5, 18) is scarcely blacker than that of the Gothic History, (l. iii, c. i, 3, 4, 9, 20, 21, &c.).

<sup>2</sup> Procopius (l. iii, c. 2, 8, &c.) does ample and willing justice to the merit of Totila. The Roman historians, from Sallust and Tacitus, were happy to forget the vices of their countrymen in the contemplation of barbaric virtue.

CHAP.

XLIII.

strong towns he successively attacked; and as soon as they had yielded to his arms, he demolished the fortifications; to save the people from the calamities of a future siege, to deprive the Romans of the arts of defence, and to decide the tedious quarrel of the two nations, by an equal and honourable conflict in the field of battle. The Roman captives and deserters were tempted to enlist in the service of a liberal and courteous adversary; the slaves were attracted by the firm and faithful promise, that they should never be delivered to their masters; and from the thousand warriors of Pavia, a new people, under the same appellation of Goths, was insensibly formed in the camp of Totila. He sincerely accomplished the articles of capitulation, without seeking or accepting any sinister advantage from ambiguous expressions or unforeseen events: the garrison of Naples had stipulated, that they should be transported by sea; the obstinacy of the winds prevented their voyage, but they were generously supplied with horses, provisions, and a safe conduct to the gates of Rome. The wives of the senators, who had been surprised in the villas of Campania, were restored, without a ransom, to their husbands; the violation of female chastity was inexorably chastised with death; and, in the salutary regulation of the diet of the famished Neapolitans, the conqueror assumed the office of an humane and attentive physician. The virtues of Totila are equally laudable, whether they proceeded from true policy, religious principle, or the instinct of humanity: he often harangued his troops; and it was his constant theme, that na-

CHAP. tional vice and ruin are inseparably connected;  
 XLIII. that victory is the fruit of moral as well as mi-  
~~litary~~ litary virtue; and that the prince, and even the  
 people, are responsible for the crimes which they  
 neglect to punish.

Second  
 command  
 of Belisa-  
 rius in  
 Italy,  
 A. D. 544-  
 548.

The return of Belisarius to save the country which he had subdued, was pressed with equal vehemence by his friends and enemies; and the Gothic war was imposed as a trust or an exile on the veteran commander. An hero on the banks of the Euphrates, a slave in the palace of Constantinople, he accepted, with reluctance, the painful task of supporting his own reputation, and retrieving the faults of his successors. The sea was open to the Romans: the ships and soldiers were assembled at Salona, near the palace of Diocletian: he refreshed and reviewed his troops at Pola in Istria, coasted round the head of the Hadriatic, entered the port of Ravenna, and despatched orders rather than supplies to the subordinate cities. His first public oration was addressed to the Goths and Romans, in the name of the emperor, who had suspended for a while the conquest of Persia, and listened to the prayers of his Italian subjects. He gently touched on the causes and the authors of the recent disasters; striving to remove the fear of punishment for the past, and the hope of impunity for the future, and labouring, with more zeal than success, to unite all the members of his government in a firm league of affection and obedience. Justinian, his gracious master, was inclined to pardon and reward; and it was their interest, as well as duty, to reclaim their deluded

brethren, who had been seduced by the arts of the usurper. Not a man was tempted to desert the standard of the Gothic king. Belisarius soon discovered, that he was sent to remain the idle and impotent spectator of the glory of a young barbarian; and his own epistle exhibits a genuine and lively picture of the distress of a noble mind.—

“ Most excellent prince, we are arrived in Italy, destitute of all the necessary implements of war, men, horses, arms, and money. In our late circuit through the villages of Thrace and Illyricum, we have collected, with extreme difficulty, about four thousand recruits, naked, and unskilled in the use of weapons and the exercises of the camp. The soldiers already stationed in the province are discontented, fearful, and dismayed; at the sound of an enemy, they dismiss their horses, and cast their arms on the ground. No taxes can be raised, since Italy is in the hands of the barbarians; the failure of payment has deprived us of the right of command, or even of admonition. Be assured, dread sir, that the greater part of your troops have already deserted to the Goths. If the war could be achieved by the presence of Belisarius alone, your wishes are satisfied; Belisarius is in the midst of Italy. But if you desire to conquer, far other preparations are requisite: without a military force, the title of general is an empty name. It would be expedient to restore to my service my own veterans and domestic guards. Before I can take the field, I must receive an adequate supply of light and heavy

CHAP. "armed troops; and it is only with ready money  
 XLIII. "that you can procure the indispensable aid of  
 "a powerful body of the cavalry of the Huns."<sup>1</sup>

An officer in whom Belisarius confided was sent from Ravenna to hasten and conduct the succours; but the message was neglected, and the messenger was detained at Constantinople by an advantageous marriage. After his patience had been exhausted by delay and disappointment, the Roman general repassed the Adriatic, and expected at Dyrrachium the arrival of the troops, which were slowly assembled among the subjects and allies of the empire. His powers were still inadequate to the deliverance of Rome, which was closely besieged by the Gothic king. The Appian way, a march of forty days, was covered by the barbarians; and as the prudence of Belisarius declined a battle, he preferred the safe and speedy navigation of five days from the coast of Epirus to the mouth of the Tiber.

Rome besieged by the Goths, A. D. 546, May.

After reducing, by force or treaty, the towns of inferior note in the midland provinces of Italy, Totila proceeded, not to assault, but to encompass and starve, the ancient capital. Rome was afflicted by the avarice, and guarded by the valour, of Bessas, a veteran chief of Gothic extraction, who filled, with a garrison of three thousand soldiers, the spacious circle of her venerable walls. From the distress of the people he extracted a profitable trade, and secretly rejoiced in the continu-

<sup>1</sup> Procopius, l. iii, c. 12. The soul of an hero is deeply impressed on the letter: nor can we confound such genuine and original acts with the elaborate and often empty speeches of the Byzantine historians.

ance of the siege. It was for his use that the granaries had been replenished; the charity of Pope Vigilius had purchased and embarked an ample supply of Sicilian corn; but the vessels which escaped the barbarians were seized by a rapacious governor, who imparted a scanty sustenance to the soldiers, and sold the remainder to the wealthy Romans. The medimnus, or fifth part of the quarter of wheat, was exchanged for seven pieces of gold; fifty pieces were given for an ox, a rare and accidental prize; the progress of famine enhanced this exorbitant value, and the mercenaries were tempted to deprive themselves of the allowance which was scarcely sufficient for the support of life. A tasteless and unwholesome mixture, in which the bran thrice exceeded the quantity of flour, appeased the hunger of the poor; they were gradually reduced to feed on dead horses, dogs, cats, and mice, and eagerly to snatch the grass, and even the nettles, which grew among the ruins of the city. A crowd of spectres, pale and emaciated, their bodies oppressed with disease, and their minds with despair, surrounded the palace of the governor, urged, with unavailing truth, that it was the duty of a master to maintain his slaves, and humbly requested, that he would provide for their subsistence, permit their flight, or command their immediate execution. Bessas replied, with unfeeling tranquillity, that it was impossible to feed, unsafe to dismiss, and unlawful to kill, the subjects of the emperor. Yet the example of a private citizen might have shewn his countrymen, that a tyrant cannot

CHAP.  
XLIII

withhold the privilege of death. Pierced by the cries of five children, who vainly called on their father for bread, he ordered them to follow his steps, advanced with calm and silent despair to one of the bridges of the Tiber, and, covering his face, threw himself headlong into the stream, in the presence of his family and the Roman people. To the rich and pusillanimous, Bessas<sup>m</sup> sold the permission of departure; but the greatest part of the fugitives expired on the public highways, or were intercepted by the flying parties of barbarians. In the meanwhile, the artful governor soothed the discontent, and revived the hopes, of the Romans, by the vague reports of the fleets and armies which were hastening to their relief from the extremities of the East. They derived more rational comfort from the assurance that Belisarius had landed at the port; and, without numbering his forces, they firmly relied on the humanity, the courage, and the skill of their great deliverer.

Attempt  
of Belisa-  
rius.

The foresight of Totila had raised obstacles worthy of such an antagonist. Ninety furlongs below the city, in the narrowest part of the river, he joined the two banks by strong and solid timbers in the form of a bridge; on which he erected two lofty towers, manned by the bravest of his Goths, and profusely stored with missile wea-

<sup>m</sup> The avarice of Bessas is not dissembled by Procopius, (l. iii, c. 17, 20). He expiated the loss of Rome by the glorious conquest of Petra, (Goth. l. iv, c. 12): but the same vices followed him from the Tiber to the Phasis, (c. 13); and the historian is equally true to the merits and defects of his character. The chastisement which the author of the romance of *Belisaire* has inflicted on the oppressors of Rome is more agreeable to justice than to history.

apons and engines of offence. The approach of the bridge and towers was covered by a strong and massy chain of iron; and the chain, at either end, on the opposite sides of the Tiber, was defended by a numerous and chosen detachment of archers. But the enterprise of forcing these barriers, and relieving the capital, displays a shining example of the boldness and conduct of Belisarius. His cavalry advanced from the port along the public road, to awe the motions and distract the attention of the enemy. His infantry and provisions were distributed in two hundred large boats; and each boat was shielded by an high rampart of thick planks, pierced with many small holes for the discharge of missile weapons. In the front, two large vessels were linked together to sustain a floating castle, which commanded the towers of the bridge, and contained a magazine of fire, sulphur, and bitumen. The whole fleet, which the general led in person, was laboriously moved against the current of the river. The chain yielded to their weight, and the enemies who guarded the banks were either slain or scattered. As soon as they touched the principal barrier, the fire-ship was instantly grappled to the bridge; one of the towers with two hundred Goths, was consumed by the flames; the assailants shouted victory; and Rome was saved, if the wisdom of Belisarius had not been defeated by the misconduct of his officers. He had previously sent orders to Bessas to second his operations by a timely sally from the town; and he had fixed his lieutenant, Isaac, by a peremptory command, to the station of the port. But avarice

CLAP.

XLHI.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

rendered Bessas immovable; while the youthful ardour of Isaac delivered him into the hands of a superior enemy. The exaggerated rumour of his defeat was hastily carried to the ears of Belisarius: he paused; betrayed in that single moment of his life some emotions of surprise and perplexity; and reluctantly sounded a retreat to save his wife Antonina, his treasures, and the only harbour which he possessed on the Tuscan coast. The vexation of his mind produced an ardent and almost mortal fever; and Rome was left without protection to the mercy or indignation of Totila. The continuance of hostilities had embittered the national hatred, the Arian clergy was ignominiously driven from Rome; Pelagius, the archdeacon, returned without success from an embassy to the Gothic camp; and a Sicilian bishop, the envoy or nuncio of the pope, was deprived of both his hands, for daring to utter falsehoods in the service of the church and state.

Rome  
taken by  
the Goths,  
A. D. 546,  
Dec. 17.

Famine had relaxed the strength and discipline of the garrison of Rome. They could derive no effectual service from a dying people; and the inhuman avarice of the merchant at length absorbed the vigilance of the governor. Four Isaurian sentinels, while their companions slept, and their officers were absent, descended by a rope from the wall, and secretly proposed to the Gothic king to introduce his troops into the city. The offer was entertained with coldness and suspicion; they returned in safety; they twice repeated their visit; the place was twice examined; the conspiracy was known and disregarded; and no sooner had Totila

consented to the attempt, than they unbarred the Asinarian gate, and gave admittance to the Goths. Till the dawn of day they halted in order of battle, apprehensive of treachery or ambush; but the troops of Bessas, with their leader, had already escaped; and when the king was pressed to disturb their retreat, he prudently replied, that no sight could be more grateful than that of a flying enemy. The patricians, who were still possessed of horses, Decius, Basilius, &c. accompanied the governor; their brethren, among whom Olybrius, Orestus, and Maximus, are named by the historian, took refuge in the church of St. Peter; but the assertion, that only five hundred persons remained in the capital, inspires some doubt of the fidelity either of his narrative or of his text. As soon as daylight had displayed the entire victory of the Goths, their monarch devoutly visited the tomb of the prince of the apostles; but while he prayed at the altar, twenty-five soldiers, and sixty citizens, were put to the sword in the vestibule of the temple. The archdeacon Pelagius<sup>a</sup> stood before him with the gospels in his hand. "O Lord, be merciful to your servant." "Pelagius," said Totila with an insulting smile, "your pride now condescends to become a suppliant." "I am a suppliant," replied the prudent archdeacon; "God has now made us your subjects, and as your subjects

<sup>a</sup> During the long exile, and after the death of Vigilius, the Roman church was governed, at first by the archdeacon, and at length (A. D. 555) by the pope Pelagius, who was not thought guiltless of the sufferings of his predecessor. See the original lives of the popes under the name of Anastasius, (Muratori, Script. Rer. Italicarum, tom. iii, P. i, p. 130, 131), who relates several curious incidents of the sieges of Rome and the wars of Italy.

CHAP. "we are entitled to your clemency." At his  
XLIII. humble prayer, the lives of the Romans were  
spared; and the chastity of the maids and matrons  
was preserved inviolate from the passions of the  
hungry soldiers. But they were rewarded by the  
freedom of pillage, after the most precious spoils  
had been reserved for the royal treasury. The  
houses of the senators were plentifully stored with  
gold and silver; and the avarice of Bessas had  
laboured with so much guilt and shame for the  
benefit of the conqueror. In this revolution, the  
sons and daughters of Roman consuls tasted the  
misery which they had spurned or relieved, wan-  
dered in tattered garments through the streets of  
the city, and begged their bread, perhaps without  
success, before the gates of their hereditary man-  
sions. The riches of Rusticana, the daughter of  
Symmachus and widow of Boethius, had been  
generously devoted to alleviate the calamities of  
famine. But the barbarians were exasperated by  
the report, that she had prompted the people to  
overthrow the statues of the great Theodoric; and  
the life of that venerable matron would have been  
sacrificed to his memory, if Totila had not re-  
spected her birth, her virtues, and even the pious  
motive of her revenge. The next day he pro-  
nounced two orations, to congratulate and admo-  
nish his victorious Goths, and to reproach the  
senate, as the vilest of slaves, with their perjury,  
folly, and ingratitude; sternly declaring, that their  
estates and honours were justly forfeited to the com-  
panions of his arms. Yet he consented to forgive  
their revolt, and the senators repaid his clemency

by despatching circular letters to their tenants and vassals in the provinces of Italy, strictly to enjoin them to desert the standard of the Greeks, to cultivate their lands in peace, and to learn from their masters the duty of obedience to a Gothic sovereign. Against the city which had so long delayed the course of his victories he appeared inexorable: one-third of the walls, in different parts, were demolished by his command; fire and engines prepared to consume, or subvert, the most stately works of antiquity: and the world was astonished by the fatal decree, that Rome should be changed into a pasture for cattle. The firm and temperate remonstrance of Belisarius suspended the execution; he warned the barbarian not to sully his fame by the destruction of those monuments which were the glory of the dead, and the delight of the living; and Totila was persuaded, by the advice of an enemy, to preserve Rome as the ornament of his kingdom, or the fairest pledge of peace and reconciliation. When he had signified to the ambassadors of Belisarius, his intention of sparing the city, he stationed an army at the distance of one hundred and twenty furlongs, to observe the motions of the Roman general. With the remainder of his forces, he marched into Lucania and Apulia, and occupied, on the summit of mount Garganus,\*

\* Mount Garganus, now Monte St. Angelo, in the kingdom of Naples, runs three hundred stadia into the Adriatic sea, (Strab. l. vi, p. 436), and in the darker ages was illustrated by the apparition, miracles, and church of St. Michael the archangel. Horace, a native of Apulia or Lucania, had seen the elms and oaks of Garganus labouring and bel-

CHAP.  
XLIII.

Recovered  
by Belisa-  
rius,  
A. D. 547,  
February.

one of the camps of Hannibal.<sup>p</sup> The senators were dragged in his train, and afterwards confined in the fortresses of Campania: the citizens, with their wives and children, were dispersed in exile; and during forty days Rome was abandoned to desolate and dreary solitude.<sup>q</sup>

The loss of Rome was speedily retrieved by an action, to which, according to the event, the public opinion would apply the names of rashness or heroism. After the departure of Totila, the Roman general sallied from the port at the head of a thousand horse, cut in pieces the enemy who opposed his progress, and visited with pity and reverence the vacant space of the *eternal* city. Resolved to maintain a station so conspicuous in the eyes of mankind, he summoned the greatest part of his troops to the standard which he erected on the Capitol: the old inhabitants were recalled by the love of their country and the hopes of food; and the keys of Rome were sent a second time to the emperor Justinian. The walls, as far as they had been demolished by the Goths, were repaired with rude and dissimilar materials; the ditch was restored;

lowing with the north wind that blew on that lofty coast, (Carm. ii. 9. Epist. ii. i, 201).

<sup>p</sup> I cannot ascertain this particular camp of Hannibal; but the Punic quarters were long and often in the neighbourhood of Arpi, (T. Liv. xxii. 9, 12; xxiv. 3. &c.).

<sup>q</sup> Totila . . . . Roman ingreditur . . . . ac evertit muros domos aliquantas igni comburens, ac omnes Romanorum res in prædâ accepit, hos ipsos Romanos in Campaniam captivos abduxit. Post quam devastationem, xl aut amplius dies, Roma fuit ita desolata, ut nemo ibi hominum, nisi (nullæ?) bestię morarentur, (Marcellin. in Chron. p. 54),

iron spikes\* were profusely scattered in the highways to annoy the feet of the horses; and as new gates could not suddenly be procured, the entrance was guarded by a Spartan rampart of his bravest soldiers. At the expiration of twenty-five days, Totila returned by hasty marches from Apulia, to avenge the injury and disgrace. Belisarius expected his approach. The Goths were thrice repulsed in three general assaults; they lost the flower of their troops; the royal standard had almost fallen into the hands of the enemy, and the fame of Totila sunk, as it had risen, with the fortune of his arms. Whatever skill and courage could achieve, had been performed by the Roman general; it remained only, that Justinian should terminate, by a strong and seasonable effort, the war which he had ambitiously undertaken. The indolence, perhaps the impotence, of a prince who despised his enemies, and envied his servants, protracted the calamities of Italy. After a long silence, Belisarius was commanded to leave a sufficient garrison at Rome, and to transport himself into the province of Lucania, whose inhabitants, inflamed by catholic zeal, had cast away the yoke of their Arian conquerors. In this ignoble warfare, the hero, invincible against the power of the barbarians, was basely vanquished by the delay, the disobedience, and the cowardice of

\* The *tribuli* are small engines with four spikes, one fixed in the ground, the three others erect or adverse, (Procopius, Gothic. l. iii, c. 24. Just. Lipsius, Poliorceticar. l. v, c. 3). The metaphor was borrowed from the *tribuli*, (*land-caltrops*), an herb with a prickly fruit common in Italy, (Martin, ad Virgil. Georgic. i, 153, vol. ii, p. 33).

CHAP. his own officers. He reposed in his winter-  
 XLIII. quarters of Crotona, in the full assurance, that  
 the two passes of the Lucanian hills were guard-  
 ed by his cavalry. They were betrayed by  
 treachery or weakness; and the rapid march of  
 the Goths scarcely allowed time for the escape  
 of Belisarius to the coast of Sicily. At length  
 a fleet and army were assembled for the relief  
 of Ruscianum, or Rossano,\* a fortress sixty fur-  
 longs from the ruins of Sybaris, where the nobles  
 of Lucania had taken refuge. In the first at-  
 tempt, the Roman forces were dissipated by a  
 storm. In the second they approached the shore;  
 but they saw the hills covered with archers, the  
 landing-place defended by a line of spears, and  
 the king of the Goths impatient for battle. The  
 conqueror of Italy retired with a sigh, and con-  
 tinued to languish, inglorious and inactive, till  
 Antonina, who had been sent to Constantinople  
 to solicit succours, obtained, after the death of  
 the empress, the permission of his return.

Final recal  
 of Belisa-  
 rius,  
 A. D. 548,  
 September.

The five last campaigns of Belisarius might abate  
 the envy of his competitors, whose eyes had been  
 dazzled and wounded by the blaze of his former  
 glory. Instead of delivering Italy from the Goths,  
 he had wandered like a fugitive along the coast,  
 without daring to march into the country, or to  
 accept the bold and repeated challenge of Totila.  
 Yet in the judgment of the few who could discri-

\* Ruscia, the *navale Thuriorum*, was transferred to the distance of sixty stadia to Ruscianum, Rossano, an archbishopric without suffragans. The republic of Sybaris is now the estate of the duke of Corigliano, (Riedesel, *Travels into Magna Græcia and Sicily*, p. 166-171).

minate counsels from events, and compare the instruments with the execution, he appeared a more consummate master of the art of war, than in the season of his prosperity, when he presented two captive kings before the throne of Justinian. The valour of Belisarius was not chilled by age; his prudence was matured by experience, but the moral virtues of humanity and justice seem to have yielded to the hard necessity of the times. The parsimony or poverty of the emperor compelled him to deviate from the rule of conduct which had deserved the love and confidence of the Italians. The war was maintained by the oppression of Ravenna, Sicily, and all the faithful subjects of the empire; and the rigorous prosecution of Herodian provoked that injured or guilty officer to deliver Spoleto into the hands of the enemy. The avarice of Antonina, which had been sometimes diverted by love, now reigned without a rival in her breast. Belisarius himself had always understood, that riches, in a corrupt age, are the support and ornament of personal merit. And it cannot be presumed that he should stain his honour for the public service, without applying a part of the spoil to his private emolument. The hero had escaped the sword of the barbarians, but the dagger of conspiracy<sup>†</sup> awaited his return. In the midst of wealth and honours, Artaban, who had chastised the African tyrant, complained of the ingratitude of courts. He aspired to Præjecta, the empe-

<sup>†</sup> This conspiracy is related by Procopius (Gothic. l. iii, c. 31, 32) with such freedom and candour, that the liberty of the Anecdotes gives him nothing to add.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

rör's niece, who wished to reward her deliverer ; but the impediment of his previous marriage was asserted by the piety of Theodora. The pride of royal descent was irritated by flattery ; and the service in which he gloried, had proved him capable of bold and sanguinary deeds. The death of Justinian was resolved, but the conspirators delayed the execution till they could surprise Belisarius disarmed, and naked, in the palace of Constantinople. ~~Not a hope could be entertained of shaking his long-tried fidelity ; and they justly~~ dreaded the revenge, or rather justice, of the veteran general, who might speedily assemble an army in Thrace to punish the assassins, and perhaps to enjoy the fruits of their crime. Delay afforded time for rash communications and honest confessions : Artaban and his accomplices were condemned by the senate, but the extreme clemency of Justinian detained them in the gentle confinement of the palace, till he pardoned their flagitious attempt against his throne and life. If the emperor forgave his enemies, he must cordially embrace a friend whose victories were alone remembered, and who was endeared to his prince by the recent circumstance of their common danger. Belisarius reposed from his toils, in the high station of general of the East and count of the domestics ; and the older consuls and patricians respectfully yielded the precedence of rank to the peerless merit of the first of the Romans.\*

\* The honours of Belisarius are gladly commemorated by his secretary, (Procop. Goth. l. iii, c. 35 ; l. iv, c. 21). The title of *Σεπάρχης* is ill translated, at least in this instance, by *præfectus prætorio* ; and to a military

The first of the Romans still submitted to be the slave of his wife; but the servitude of habit and affection became less disgraceful when the death of Theodora had removed the baser influence of fear. Joannina their daughter, and the sole heiress of their fortunes, was betrothed to Anastasius, the grandson, or rather the nephew, of the empress,<sup>\*</sup> whose kind interposition forwarded the consummation of their youthful loves. But the power of Theodora expired, the parents of Joannina returned, and her honour, perhaps her happiness, were sacrificed to the revenge of an unfeeling mother, who dissolved the imperfect nuptials before they had been ratified by the ceremonies of the church.<sup>†</sup>

Before the departure of Belisarius, Perugia was besieged, and few cities were impregnable to the Gothic arms. Ravenna, Ancona, and Crotona, still resisted the barbarians; and when Totila asked

Rome again  
taken by  
the Goths,  
A. D. 549.

military character, *magister militum* is more proper and applicable, (Ducange, Gloss. Græc. p. 1458, 1459).

<sup>\*</sup> Alemannus, (ad Hist. Arcanum, p. 68): Ducange, (*Familie Byzant.* p. 98), and Heinneccius, (*Hist. Juris Civilis*, p. 434), all three represent Anastasius as the son of the daughter of Theodora; and their opinion firmly reposes on the unambiguous testimony of Procopius, (*Anecdotes*, c. 4, 5—*ἀνακτορις* twice repeated). And yet I will remark, 1. That in the year 547, Theodora could scarcely have a grandson of the age of puberty: 2. That we are totally ignorant of this daughter and her husband; and, 3. That Theodora concealed her bastards, and that her grandson by Justinian would have been heir-apparent of the empire.

<sup>†</sup> The *αμαρτηματα*, or sins, of the hero in Italy and after his return, are manifested *απαρκαλονται*; and most probably swelled, by the author of the Anecdotes, (c. 4, 5). The designs of Antonina were favoured by the fluctuating jurisprudence of Justinian. On the law of marriage and divorce, that emperor was *trocho versatilior*, (Heinneccius, *Element. Juris Civil. ad Ordinem Pandect.* P. iv, N°. 233).

CHAP.  
XLIII.

in marriage one of the daughters of France, he was stung by the just reproach that the king of Italy was unworthy of his title till it was acknowledged by the Roman people. Three thousand of the bravest soldiers had been left to defend the capital. On the suspicion of a monopoly, they massacred the governor, and announced to Justinian, by a deputation of the clergy, that unless their offence was pardoned and their arrears were satisfied, they should instantly accept the tempting offers of Totila. But the officer who succeeded to the command (his name was Diogenes) deserved their esteem and confidence; and the Goths, instead of finding an easy conquest, encountered a vigorous resistance from the soldiers and people, who patiently endured the loss of the port, and of all maritime supplies. The siege of Rome would perhaps have been raised, if the liberality of Totila to the Isaurians had not encouraged some of their venal countrymen to copy the example of treason. In a dark night, while the Gothic trumpets sounded on another side, they silently opened the gate of St. Paul: the barbarians rushed into the city; and the flying garrison was intercepted before they could reach the harbour of Centumcellæ. A soldier trained in the school of Belisarius, Paul of Cilicia, retired with four hundred men to the mole of Hadrian. They repelled the Goths; but they felt the approach of famine; and their aversion to the taste of horse-flesh confirmed their resolution to risk the event of a desperate and decisive sally. But their spirit insensibly stooped to the offers of capitula-

tion: they retrieved their arrears of pay, and preserved their arms and horses, by inlisting in the service of Totila; their chiefs, who pleaded a laudable attachment to their wives and children in the East, were dismissed with honour; and above four hundred enemies, who had taken refuge in the sanctuaries, were saved by the clemency of the victor. He no longer entertained a wish of destroying the edifices of Rome,<sup>2</sup> which he now respected as the seat of the Gothic kingdom: the senate and people were restored to their country; the means of subsistence were liberally provided; and Totila, in the robe of peace, exhibited the equestrian games of the circus. Whilst he amused the eyes of the multitude, four hundred vessels were prepared for the embarkation of his troops. The cities of Rhegium and Tarentum were reduced: he passed into Sicily, the object of his implacable resentment; and the island was stripped of its gold and silver, of the fruits of the earth, and of an infinite number of horses, sheep, and oxen. Sardinia and Corsica obeyed the fortune of Italy; and the sea-coast of Greece was visited by a fleet of three hundred galleys.<sup>3</sup> The

<sup>2</sup> The Romans were still attached to the monuments of their ancestors; and according to Procopius, (Goth. l. iv, c. 22), the galley of *Æneas*, of a single rank of oars, 25 feet in breadth, 120 in length, was preserved entire in the *navalia*, near Monte Testaccio, at the foot of the Aventine, (Nardini, *Roma Antica*, l. vii, c. 9, p. 466. Donatus, *Roma Antiqua*, l. iv, c. 13, p. 334). But all antiquity is ignorant of this relic.

<sup>3</sup> In these seas, Procopius searched without success for the isle of Calypso. He was shewn, at *Phœacia* or *Coreyra*, the petrified ship of Ulysses, (*Odys.* xiii, 163); but he found it a recent fabric of many stones, dedicated by a merchant to Jupiter Cassius, (l. iv, c. 22). Eustathius had supposed it to be the faithful likeness of a rock.

CHAP. Goths were landed in Corcyra and the ancient  
 XLIII. continent of Epirus; they advanced as far as Ni-  
 copolis, the trophy of Augustus, and Dodona,<sup>b</sup>  
 once famous by the oracle of Jove. In every  
 step of his victories, the wise barbarian repeated  
 to Justinian his desire of peace, applauded the  
 concord of their predecessors, and offered to em-  
 ploy the Gothic arms in the service of the em-  
 pire.

Prepara-  
 tions of  
 Justinian  
 for the Go-  
 thic war,  
 A. D. 549-  
 551.

~~Justinian was deaf to the voice of peace; but~~  
~~he neglected the prosecution of war; and the~~  
 indolence of his temper disappointed, in some  
 degree, the obstinacy of his passions. From this  
 salutary slumber the emperor was awakened by  
 the pope Vigilius and the patrician Cethegus,  
 who appeared before his throne, and adjured him,  
 in the name of God and the people, to resume  
 the conquest and deliverance of Italy. In the  
 choice of the generals, caprice, as well as judg-  
 ment, was shewn. A fleet and army sailed for  
 the relief of Sicily under the conduct of Liberius;  
 but his youth and want of experience were  
 afterwards discovered, and before he touched the  
 shores of the island he was overtaken by his suc-  
 cessor. In the place of Liberius, the conspirator  
 Artaban was raised from a prison to military  
 honours; in the pious presumption, that grati-  
 tude would animate his valour and fortify his  
 allegiance. Belisarius reposed in the shade of  
 his laurels, but the command of the principal

<sup>b</sup> M. d'Anville (*Memoires de l'Acad. tom. xxxii, p. 513-528*) il-  
 lustrates the gulf of Ambracia; but he cannot ascertain the situa-  
 tion of Dodona. A country in sight of Italy is less known than the  
 wilds of America.

army was reserved for Germanus,<sup>c</sup> the emperor's nephew, whose rank and merit had been long depressed by the jealousy of the court. Theodora had injured him in the rights of a private citizen; the marriage of his children, and the testament of his brother; and although his conduct was pure and blameless, Justinian was displeased that he should be thought worthy of the confidence of the malecontents. The life of Germanus was a lesson of implicit obedience; he nobly refused to prostitute his name and character in the factions of the circus: the gravity of his manners was tempered by innocent cheerfulness; and his riches were lent without interest to indigent or deserving friends. His valour had formerly triumphed over the Sclavonians of the Danube and the rebels of Africa: the first report of his promotion revived the hopes of the Italians: and he was privately assured, that a crowd of Roman deserters would abandon, on his approach, the standard of Totila. His second marriage with Malasontha, the grand-daughter of Theodoric, endeared Germanus to the Goths themselves; and they marched with reluctance against the father of a royal infant, the last offspring of the line of Amali.<sup>d</sup> A splendid allowance was assigned by the em-

<sup>c</sup> See the acts of Germanus in the public (Vandal. l. ii, c. 16, 17, 18; Goth. l. iii, c. 31, 32) and private history, (Anecd. c. 5), and those of his son Justin, in Agathias, (l. iv, p. 130, 131). Notwithstanding an ambiguous expression of Jornandes, *fratri suo*, Alemannus has proved that he was the son of the emperor's brother.

<sup>d</sup> *Conjuncta Aniciorum gens cum Amalâ stirpe spem adhuc utriusque generis promittit*, (Jornandes, c. 60, p. 703). He wrote at Ravenna before the death of Totila.

CHAP. XLIII. peror : the general contributed his private fortune; his two sons were popular and active; and he surpassed, in the promptitude and success of his levies, the expectation of mankind. He was permitted to select some squadrons of Thracian cavalry : the veterans, as well as the youth of Constantinople and Europe, engaged their voluntary service ; and as far as the heart of Germany, his fame and liberality attracted the aid of the barbarians. The Romans advanced to Sardica ; an army of Sclavonians fled before their march ; but within two days of their final departure, the designs of Germanus were terminated by his malady and death. Yet the impulse which he had given to the Italian war still continued to act with energy and effect. The maritime towns, Ancona, Crotona, Centumcellæ, resisted the assaults of Totila. Sicily was reduced by the zeal of Artaban, and the Gothic navy was defeated near the coast of the Hadriatic. The two fleets were almost equal, forty-seven to fifty galleys : the victory was decided by the knowledge and dexterity of the Greeks ; but the ships were so closely grappled, that only twelve of the Goths escaped from this unfortunate conflict. They affected to depreciate an element in which they were unskilled, but their own experience confirmed the truth of a maxim, that the master of the sea will always acquire the dominion of the land.\*

\* The third book of Procopius is terminated by the death of Germanus, (Add. l. iv, c. 23, 24, 25, 26).

After the loss of Germanus, the nations were provoked to smile, by the strange intelligence, that the command of the Roman armies was given to an eunuch. But the eunuch Narses<sup>f</sup> is ranked among the few who have rescued that unhappy name from the contempt and hatred of mankind. A feeble diminutive body concealed the soul of a statesman and a warrior. His youth had been employed in the management of the loom and distaff, in the cares of the household, and the service of female luxury; but while his hands were busy, he secretly exercised the faculties of a vigorous and discerning mind. A stranger to the schools and the camp, he studied in the palace to dissemble, to flatter, and to persuade; and as soon as he approached the person of the emperor, Justinian listened with surprise and pleasure to the manly counsels of his chamberlain and private treasurer.<sup>g</sup> The talents of Narses were tried and improved in frequent embassies; he led an army into Italy, acquired a practical knowledge of the war and the country, and presumed to strive

CHAP.  
XLIII.

Character  
and expe-  
dition of  
the eu-  
nuch  
Narses,  
A. D. 552.

<sup>f</sup> Procopius relates the whole series of this second Gothic war and the victory of Narses, (l. iv, c. 21, 26-35). A splendid scene! Among the six subjects of epic poetry which Tasso revolved in his mind, he hesitated between the conquests of Italy by Belisarius and by Narses, (Hayley's Works, vol. iv, p. 70).

<sup>g</sup> The country of Narses is unknown, since he must not be confounded with the Persarmenian. Procopius styles him (Goth. l. ii, c. 13) βασιλικῶν χρημάτων ταμίης; Paul Warnefrid (l. ii, c. 3, p. 776) Chartularius: Marcellinus adds the name of Cubicularius. In an inscription on the Salarian bridge he is entitled Ex-consul, Ex-præpositus, Cubiculi Patricius, (Mascou, Hist. of the Germans, l. xiii, c. 25). The law of Theodosius against eunuchs was obsolete or abolished, (Annotation xx); but the foolish prophecy of the Romans subsisted in full vigour, (Procop. l. iv, c. 21).

CHAP.  
XLIII.

with the genius of Belisarius. Twelve years after his return, the eunuch was chosen to achieve the conquest which had been left imperfect by the first of the Roman generals. Instead of being dazzled by vanity or emulation, he seriously declared, that unless he were armed with an adequate force, he would never consent to risk his own glory, and that of his sovereign. Justinian granted to the favourite, what he might have denied to the hero; the Gothic war was rekindled from its ashes, and the preparations were not unworthy of the ancient majesty of the empire. The key of the public treasure was put into his hand, to collect magazines, to levy soldiers, to purchase arms and horses, to discharge the arrears of pay, and to tempt the fidelity of the fugitives and deserters. The troops of Germanus were still in arms; they halted at Salona in the expectation of a new leader; and legions of subjects and allies were created by the well-known liberality of the eunuch Narses. The king of the Lombards<sup>b</sup> satisfied or surpassed the obligations of a treaty, by lending two thousand two hundred of his bravest warriors, who were followed by three thousand of their martial attendants. Three thousand Heruli fought on horseback under Philemuth, their native chief; and the noble Aratus, who adopted the manners and discipline of Rome, conducted a band of

<sup>b</sup> Paul Warnefrid, the Lombard, records with complacency the succour, service, and honourable dismissal of his countrymen—*reipublicæ Romanæ adversus æmulos adjutores fuerant*, (l. ii, c. 1, p. 774, edit. Grot.). I am surprised that Alboin, their martial king, did not lead his subjects in person.

veterans of the same nation. Dagistheus was released from prison to command the Huns; and Kobad, the grandson and nephew of the great king, was conspicuous by the regal tiara at the head of his faithful Persians, who had devoted themselves to the fortunes of their prince.<sup>1</sup> Absolute in the exercise of his authority, more absolute in the affection of his troops, Narses led a numerous and gallant army from Philippolis to Salona, from whence he coasted the eastern side of the Hadriatic as far as the confines of Italy. His progress was checked. The East could not supply vessels capable of transporting such multitudes of men and horses. The Franks, who, in the general confusion, had usurped the greater part of the Venetian province, refused a free passage to the friends of the Lombards. The station of Verona was occupied by Teias, with the flower of the Gothic forces; and that skilful commander had overspread the adjacent country with the fall of woods and the inundation of waters.<sup>2</sup> In this perplexity, an officer of experience proposed a measure, secure by the appearance of rashness; that the Roman army should cautiously advance along the sea-shore, while the fleet preceded their

<sup>1</sup> He was, if not an impostor, the son of the blind Zames, saved by compassion, and educated in the Byzantine court by the various motives of policy, pride, and generosity, (*Procop. Persic. l. i, c. 23*).

<sup>2</sup> In the time of Augustus, and in the middle ages, the whole waste from Aquileia to Ravenna was covered with woods, lakes, and morasses. Man has subdued nature, and the land has been cultivated, since the waters are confined and embanked. See the learned researches of Muratori, (*Antiquitat. Italiæ mediæ ævi, tom. i, dissert. xxi, p. 253, 254*), from Vitruvius, Strabo, Herodian, old charters, and local knowledge.

CHAP. march, and successively cast a bridge of boats  
 XLIII. over the mouths of the rivers, the Timavus, the  
 Brenta, the Adige, and the Po, that fall into the  
 Hadriatic to the north of Ravenna. Nine days  
 he reposed in the city, collected the fragments of  
 the Italian army, and marched towards Rimini  
 to meet the defiance of an insulting enemy.

Defeat  
 and death  
 of Totila,  
 A. D. 552,  
 July.

The prudence of Narses impelled him to speedy  
 and decisive action. His powers were the last  
 effort of the state : the cost of each day accu-  
 mulated the enormous account; and the nations,  
 untrained to discipline or fatigue, might be  
 rashly provoked to turn their arms against each  
 other, or against their benefactor. The same  
 considerations might have tempered the ardour  
 of Totila. But he was conscious, that the cler-  
 gy and people of Italy aspired to a second revo-  
 lution : he felt or suspected the rapid progress  
 of treason, and he resolved to risk the Gothic  
 kingdom on the chance of a day, in which the  
 valiant would be animated by instant danger,  
 and the disaffected might be awed by mutual  
 ignorance. In his march from Ravenna, the  
 Roman general chastised the garrison of Rimi-  
 ni, traversed in a direct line the hills of Urbino,  
 and re-entered the Flaminian way, nine miles be-  
 yond the perforated rock, an obstacle of art and  
 nature which might have stopped or retarded his  
 progress.<sup>1</sup> The Goths were assembled in the neigh-

<sup>1</sup> The Flaminian way, as it is corrected from the Itineraries, and the  
 best modern maps, by d'Anville, (*Analyse de l'Italie*, p. 147-162).  
 may be thus stated.—Rome to Narçi, 51 Roman miles: Terni, 57; Spo-  
 leto.

bourhood of Rome, they advanced, without delay, to seek a superior enemy, and the two armies approached each other at the distance of one hundred furlongs, between Tagina<sup>m</sup> and the sepulchres of the Gauls.<sup>n</sup> The haughty message of Narses was an offer, not of peace, but of pardon. The answer of the Gothic king declared his resolution to die or conquer. "What day," said the messenger, "will you fix for the combat?" "The eighth day," replied Totila: but early the next morning he attempted to surprise a foe, suspicious of deceit, and prepared for battle. Tén thousand Heruli and Lombards, of approved valour and doubtful faith, were placed in the centre. Each of the wings was composed of eight thousand Romans; the right was guarded by the cavalry of the Huns, the left was covered by fifteen hundred chosen horse, destined, according to the emergencies of action, to sustain the retreat of their friends,

leto, 75; Foligno, 88; Nocera, 103; Cagli, 142; Intercisa, 157; Fossombrone, 160; Fano, 176; Pesaro, 184; RIMINI, 208—about 189 English miles. He takes no notice of the death of Totila; but Wesseling (Itinerar. p. 614) exchanges for the field of *Taginas* the unknown appellation of *Ptanas*, eight miles from Nocera.

<sup>m</sup> Taginæ, or rather Tadinæ, is mentioned by Pliny; but the bishopric of that obscure town, a mile from Gualdo, in the plain, was united, in the year 1007, with that of Nocera. The signs of antiquity are preserved in the local appellations, *Fossato*, the camp; *Capraia*, *Caprea*; *Bustia*, *Busta Gallorum*. See Cluverius, (*Italia Antiqua*, l. ii, c. 6, p. 615, 616, 617); Lucus Holstenius, (*Annotat. ad Cluver.* p. 85, 86); Guazzesi, (*Dissertat.* p. 177–217, a professed inquiry), and the maps of the ecclesiastical state and the march of Ancona, by Le Maire and Magini.

<sup>n</sup> The battle was fought in the year of Rome 458; and the consul Decius, by devoting his own life, assured the triumph of his country and his colleague Fabius, (*T. Liv.* x, 28, 29). Procopius ascribes to Camillus the victory of the *Busta Gallorum*; and his error is branded by Cluverius with the national reproach of Græcorum nugamenta.

CHAP. or to encompass the flank of the enemy. From  
 XLIII. his proper station at the head of the right wing, the  
 eunuch rode along the line, expressing by his voice  
 and countenance the assurance of victory; exciting  
 the soldiers of the emperor to punish the guilt and  
 madness of a band of robbers; and exposing to  
 their view, gold-chains, collars, and bracelets, the  
 rewards of military virtue. From the event of a  
 single combat, they drew an omen of success; and  
 they beheld with pleasure the courage of fifty  
 archers, who maintained a small eminence against  
 three successive attacks of the Gothic cavalry. At  
 the distance only of two bow-shots, the armies spent  
 the morning in dreadful suspense, and the Romans  
 tasted some necessary food, without unloosening  
 the cuirass from their breast, or the bridle from  
 their horses. Narses awaited the charge; and it  
 was delayed by Totila till he had received his last  
 succours of two thousand Goths. While he con-  
 sumed the hours in fruitless treaty, the king ex-  
 hibited in a narrow space the strength and agility  
 of a warrior. His armour was enchased with gold;  
 his purple banner floated with the wind; he cast  
 his lance into the air; caught it with the right  
 hand; shifted it to the left; threw himself back-  
 wards; recovered his seat; and managed a fiery  
 steed in all the paces and evolutions of the eque-  
 strian school. As soon as the succours had arrived,  
 he retired to his tent, assumed the dress and arms  
 of a private soldier, and gave the signal of battle.  
 The first line of cavalry advanced with more cou-  
 rage than discretion, and left behind them the in-  
 fantry of the second line. They were soon en-

gaged between the horns of a crescent, into which the adverse wings had been insensibly curved, and were saluted from either side by the volleys of four thousand archers. Their ardour, and even their distress, drove them forwards to a close and unequal conflict, in which they could only use their lances against an enemy equally skilled in all the instruments of war. A generous emulation inspired the Romans and their barbarian allies: and Narses, who calmly viewed and directed their efforts, doubted to whom he should adjudge the prize of superior bravery. The Gothic cavalry was astonished and disordered, pressed and broken; and the line of infantry, instead of presenting their spears, or opening their intervals, were trampled under the feet of the flying horse. Six thousand of the Goths were slaughtered, without mercy, in the field of Tagina. Their prince, with five attendants, was overtaken by Asbad, of the race of the Gepidæ. "Spare the king of Italy," cried a loyal voice, and Asbad struck his lance through the body of Totila. The blow was instantly revenged by the faithful Goths; they transported their dying monarch seven miles beyond the scene of his disgrace; and his last moments were not embittered by the presence of an enemy. Compassion afforded him the shelter of an obscure tomb; but the Romans were not satisfied of their victory, till they beheld the corpse of the Gothic king. His hat, enriched with gems, and his bloody robe, were presented to Justinian by the messengers of triumph.<sup>o</sup>

<sup>o</sup> Theophanes, Chron. p. 193. Hist. Miscell. l. xvi. p. 108.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

Conquest  
of Rome  
by Narses.

As soon as Narses had paid his devotions to the Author of victory, and the blessed Virgin, his peculiar patroness,<sup>p</sup> he praised, rewarded, and dismissed the Lombards. The villages had been reduced to ashes by these valiant savages; they ravished matrons and virgins on the altar; their retreat was diligently watched by a strong detachment of regular forces, who prevented a repetition of the like disorders. The victorious eunuch pursued his march through Tuscany, accepted the submission of the Goths, heard the acclamations, and often the complaints, of the Italians, and encompassed the walls of Rome with the remainder of his formidable host. Round the wide circumference, Narses assigned to himself, and to each of his lieutenants, a real or a feigned attack, while he silently marked the place of easy and unguarded entrance. Neither the fortifications of Hadrian's mole, nor of the port, could long delay the progress of the conqueror; and Justinian once more received the keys of Rome, which, under his reign, had been *five* times taken and recovered.<sup>q</sup> But the deliverance of Rome was the last calamity of the Roman people. The barbarian allies of Narses too frequently confounded the privileges of peace and war: the despair of the flying Goths found some

<sup>p</sup> Evagrius, l. iv, c. 24. The inspiration of the Virgin revealed to Narses the day, and the word, of battle, (Paul Diacon. l. ii, c. 3, p. 776).

<sup>q</sup> ΕΤΙ ΤΑΥΤΗ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΥΟΝΤΟΣ ΤΟ ΠΕΜΠΤΟΝ ΙΑΛΩ. In the year 536 by Belisarius, in 546 by Totila, in 547 by Belisarius, in 549 by Totila, and in 552 by Narses. Maltretus had inadvertently translated *sextum*; a mistake which he afterwards retracts: but the mischief was done; and Cousin, with a train of French and Latin readers, have fallen into the snare.

consolation in sanguinary revenge: and three hundred youths of the noblest families, who had been sent as hostages beyond the Po, were inhumanly slain by the successor of Totila. The fate of the senate suggests an awful lesson of the vicissitude of human affairs. Of the senators whom Totila had banished from their country, some were rescued by an officer of Belisarius, and transported from Campania to Sicily; while others were too guilty to confide in the clemency of Justinian, or too poor to provide horses for their escape to the sea-shore. Their brethren languished five years in a state of indigence and exile: the victory of Narses revived their hopes; but their premature return to the metropolis was prevented by the furious Goths; and all the fortresses of Campania were stained with patrician<sup>r</sup> blood. After a period of thirteen centuries, the institution of Romulus expired; and if the nobles of Rome still assumed the title of senators, few subsequent traces can be discovered of a public council, or constitutional order. Ascend six hundred years, and contemplate the kings of the earth soliciting an audience, as the slaves or freedmen of the Roman senate!<sup>s</sup>

The Gothic war was yet alive. The bravest of the nation retired beyond the Po; and Teias was unanimously chosen to succeed and revenge their

Defeat and death of Teias, the last king of the Goths,

<sup>r</sup> Compare two passages of Procopius, (l. iii, c. 26; l. iv, c. 24), which, with some collateral hints from Marcellinus and Jornandes, illustrate the state of the expiring senate.

<sup>s</sup> See, in the example of Prusias, as it is delivered in the fragments of Polybius, (Excerpt. Legat. xcvi, p. 927, 928), a curious picture of a royal slave.

CHAP.

XLIII.

A. D. 553,  
March.

departed hero. The new king immediately sent ambassadors to implore, or rather to purchase, the aid of the Franks, and nobly lavished for the public safety, the riches which had been deposited in the palace of Pavia. The residue of the royal treasure was guarded by his brother Ali-gern at Cumæ in Campania; but the strong castle which Totila had fortified, was closely besieged by the arms of Narses. From the Alps to the foot of mount Vesuvius, the Gothic king, by rapid and secret marches, advanced to the relief of his brother, eluded the vigilance of the Roman chiefs, and pitched his camp on the banks of the Sarnus or *Draco*,<sup>t</sup> which flows from Nuceria into the bay of Naples. The river separated the two armies: sixty days were consumed in distant and fruitless combats, and Teias maintained this important post, till he was deserted by his fleet and the hope of subsistence. With reluctant steps he ascended the *Lactarian* mount, where the physicians of Rome, since the time of Galen, had sent their patients for the benefit of the air and the milk.<sup>u</sup> But the Goths soon embraced a more generous resolution: to descend the hill,

<sup>t</sup> The *Δρακων* of Procopius (Goth. l. iv, c. 35) is evidently the Sarnus. The text is accused or altered by the rash violence of Cluverius, (l. iv, c. 3, p. 1156): but Camillo Peliegrini of Naples (*Discorsi sopra la Campania Felice*, p. 330, 331) has proved from old records, that as early as the year 822 that river was called the Dracontio, or Draconcello.

<sup>u</sup> Galen (*de Method. Medendi*, l. v, apud Cluver. l. iv, c. 3, p. 1159, 1160) describes the lofty site, pure air, and rich milk of mount Lactarius, whose medicinal benefits were equally known and sought in the time of Symmachus, (l. vi, epist. 18), and Cassiodorius, (Var. xi, 10). Nothing is now left except the name of the town of *Lettere*.

to dismiss their horses, and to die in arms, and in the possession of freedom. The king marched at their head, bearing in his right hand a lance, and an ample buckler in his left: with the one he struck dead the foremost of the assailants; with the other he received the weapons which every hand was ambitious to aim against his life. After a combat of many hours, his left arm was fatigued by the weight of twelve javelins which hung from his shield. Without moving from his ground, or suspending his blows, the hero called aloud on his attendants for a fresh buckler, but in the moment, while his side was uncovered, it was pierced by a mortal dart. He fell: and his head exalted on a spear, proclaimed to the nations, that the Gothic kingdom was no more. But the example of his death served only to animate the companions who had sworn to perish with their leader. They fought till darkness descended on the earth. They reposed on their arms. The combat was renewed with the return of light, and maintained with unabated vigour till the evening of the second day. The repose of a second night, the want of water, and the loss of their bravest champions, determined the surviving Goths to accept the fair capitulation which the prudence of Narses was inclined to propose. They embraced the alternative of residing in Italy as the subjects and soldiers of Justinian, or departing with a portion of their private wealth, in search of some independent country.\* Yet the

\* Buat (tom. xi, p. 2, &c.) conveys to his favourite Bavaria this remnant of Goths, who by others are buried in the mountains of Uri, or restored to their native isle of Gothland, (Mascou, Annot. xpi).

CHAP.  
XLIII.

oath of fidelity or exile was alike rejected by one thousand Goths, who broke away before the treaty was signed, and boldly effected their retreat to the walls of Pavia. The spirit, as well as the situation, of Aligern, prompted him to imitate rather than to bewail his brother: a strong and dexterous archer, he transpierced with a single arrow the armour and breast of his antagonist; and his military conduct defended Cumæ<sup>y</sup> above a year against the forces of the Romans. Their industry had scooped the Sibyll's cave<sup>z</sup> into a prodigious mine; combustible materials were introduced to consume the temporary props: the wall and the gate of Cumæ sunk into the cavern, but the ruins formed a deep and inaccessible precipice. On the fragment of a rock, Aligern stood alone and unshaken, till he calmly surveyed the hopeless condition of his country, and judged it more honourable to be the friend of Narses than the slave of the Franks. After the death of Teias, the Roman general separated his troops to reduce the cities of Italy; Lucca sustained a long and vigorous siege: and such was the humanity or the prudence of Narses, that the repeated

<sup>y</sup> I leave Scaliger, (*Anlmadv.* in Euseb. p. 59), and Salmasius, (*Exercitat.* Plinian. p. 51, 52), to quarrel about the origin of Cumæ, the oldest of the Greek colonies in Italy, (*Strab.* l. v, p. 372; *Velleius Paterculus*, l. i, c. 4), already vacant in Juvenal's time, (*Satir.* lii), and now in ruins.

<sup>z</sup> Agathias (l. i, c. 21) settles the Sibyll's cave under the walls of Cumæ; he agrees with Servius, (*ad* l. vi, *Æneid.*); nor can I perceive why their opinion should be rejected by Heyne, the excellent editor of Virgil, (tom. ii, p. 650, 651). *In urbe mediâ secreta religio!* But Cumæ was not yet built; and the lines (l. vi, 96, 97) would become ridiculous, if *Æneas* were actually in a Greek city.

perfidy of the inhabitants could not provoke him to exact the forfeit lives of their hostages! These hostages were dismissed in safety; and their grateful zeal at length subdued the obstinacy of their countrymen.<sup>a</sup>

Before Lucca had surrendered, Italy was overwhelmed by a new deluge of barbarians. A feeble youth, the grandson of Clovis, reigned over the Austrasians or oriental Franks. The guardians of Theodebald entertained with coldness and reluctance the magnificent promises of the Gothic ambassadors. But the spirit of a martial people outstripped the timid counsels of the court: two brothers, Lothaire and Buccelin,<sup>b</sup> the dukes of the Alemanni, stood forth as the leaders of the Italian war; and seventy-five thousand Germans descended in the autumn from the Rhætian Alps into the plain of Milan. The vanguard of the Roman army was stationed near the Po, under the conduct of Fulcaris, a bold Herulian, who rashly conceived, that personal bravery was the sole duty and merit of a commander. As he marched without order or precaution along the Æmilian way, an ambuscade of Franks suddenly arose from the amphitheatre of Parma: his troops were surprised and routed; but their leader refused to fly, declaring to the last moment that

CHAP.  
XLIII.

Invasion  
of Italy by  
the Franks  
and Ale-  
manni,  
A. D. 553.  
August.

<sup>a</sup> There is some difficulty in connecting the 35th chapter of the ivth book of the Gothic war of Procopius with the first book of the history of Agathias. We must now relinquish a statesman and soldier, to attend the footsteps of a poet and rhetorician, (l. i, p. 11; l. ii, p. 51, edit. Louvre).

<sup>b</sup> Among the fabulous exploits of Buccelin, he discomfited and slew Belisarius, subdued Italy and Sicily, &c. See, in the Historians of France, Gregory of Tours, (tom. ii, l. iii, c. 32, p. 203), and Aimoin: (tom. iii, l. ii, de Gestis Francorum, c. 23, p. 59).

CHAP.

XLIII.

~~~~~

death was less terrible than the angry countenance of Narses. The death of Fulcaris, and the retreat of the surviving chiefs, decided the fluctuating and rebellious temper of the Goths; they flew to the standard of their deliverers, and admitted them into the cities which still resisted the arms of the Roman general. The conqueror of Italy opened a free passage to the irresistible torrent of barbarians. They passed under the walls of Cesena, and answered by threats and reproaches the advice of Aligern, that the Gothic treasures could no longer repay the labour of an invasion. Two thousand Franks were destroyed by the skill and valour of Narses himself, who sallied from Rimini at the head of three hundred horse, to chastise the licentious rapine of their march. On the confines of Samnium, the two brothers divided their forces. With the right wing, Buccelin assumed the spoil of Campania, Lucania, and Bruttium: with the left, Lothaire accepted the plunder of Apulia and Calabria. They followed the coast of the Mediterranean and the Hadriatic, as far as Rhegium and Otranto, and the extreme lands of Italy were the term of their destructive progress. The Franks, who were Christians and catholics, contented themselves with simple pillage and occasional murder. But the churches which their piety had spared, were stripped by the sacrilegious hands of the Alemanni, who sacrificed horses heads to their native deities of the woods and rivers:<sup>c</sup> they melted

<sup>c</sup> Agathias notices their superstition in a philosophic tone, (l. i, p. 19). At Zug, in Switzerland, idolatry still prevailed in the year 613: St.

or profaned the consecrated vessels, and the ruins of shrines and altars were stained with the blood of the faithful. Buccelin was actuated by ambition, and Lothaire by avarice. The former aspired to restore the Gothic kingdom: the latter, after a promise to his brother of speedy succours, returned by the same road to deposit his treasure beyond the Alps. The strength of their armies was already wasted by the change of climate and contagion of disease: the Germans revelled in the vintage of Italy; and their own intemperance avenged, in some degree, the miseries of a defenceless people.

At the entrance of the spring, the imperial troops, who had guarded the cities, assembled to the number of eighteen thousand men, in the neighbourhood of Rome. Their winter hours had not been consumed in idleness. By the command, and after the example, of Narses, they repeated each day their military exercise on foot and on horseback, accustomed their ear to obey the sound of the trumpet, and practised the steps and evolutions of the Pyrrhic dance. From the straits of Sicily, Buccelin, with thirty thousand Franks and Alemanni, slowly moved towards Capua, occupied with a wooden tower the bridge of Casilinum, covered his right by the stream of the Vulturnus, and secured the rest of his encampment, by a rampart of sharp stakes, and a circle of waggons, whose wheels were buried in the earth. He impatiently

Defeat of  
the Franks  
and Ale-  
manni by  
Narses,  
A. D. 554.

St. Columban and St. Gall were the apostles of that rude country; and the latter founded an hermitage, which has swelled into an ecclesiastical principality and a populous city, the seat of freedom and commerce.

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
~~~~~

expected the return of Lothaire ; ignorant, alas ! that his brother could never return, and that the chief and his army had been swept away by a strange disease<sup>d</sup> on the banks of the lake Benacus, between Trent and Verona. The banners of Narses soon approached the Vulturnus, and the eyes of Italy were anxiously fixed on the event of this final contest. Perhaps the talents of the Roman general were most conspicuous in the calm operations which precede the tumult of a battle. His skilful movements intercepted the subsistence of the barbarian, deprived him of the advantage of the bridge and river, and in the choice of the ground and moment of action, reduced him to comply with the inclination of his enemy. On the morning of the important day, when the ranks were already formed, a servant, for some trivial fault, was killed by his master, one of the leaders of the Heruli. The justice or passion of Narses was awakened : he summoned the offender to his presence, and, without listening to his excuses, gave the signal to the minister of death. If the cruel master had not infringed the laws of his nation, this arbitrary execution was not less unjust, than it appears to have been imprudent. The Heruli felt the indignity ; they halted : but the Roman general, without soothing their rage, or expecting their resolution, called aloud, as the trumpets sounded, that unless they hastened to occupy their place, they would lose the honour of the victory.

<sup>d</sup> See the death of Lothaire in Agathias, (l. ii, p. 38), and Paul Warnefrid, surnamed Diaconus, (l. ii, c. 3, 775). The Greek makes him rave and tear his flesh. He had plundered churches.

His troops were disposed<sup>e</sup> in a long front, the cavalry on the wings; in the centre, the heavy-armed foot; the archers and slingers in the rear. The Germans advanced in a sharp-pointed column, of the form of a triangle or solid wedge. They pierced the feeble centre of Narses, who received them with a smile into the fatal snare, and directed his wings of cavalry insensibly to wheel on their flanks and encompass their rear. The host of the Franks and Alemanni consisted of infantry: a sword and buckler hung by their side, and they used, as their weapons of offence, a weighty hatchet, and a hooked javelin, which were only formidable in close combat, or at a short distance. The flower of the Roman archers, on horseback, and in complete armour, skirmished without peril round this immovable phalanx; supplied by active speed the deficiency of number; and aimed their arrows against a crowd of barbarians, who, instead of a cuirass and helmet, were covered by a loose garment of fur or linen. They paused, they trembled, their ranks were confounded, and in the decisive moment the Heruli, preferring glory to revenge, charged with rapid violence the head of the column. Their leader, Sindbal, and Aligern, the Gothic prince, deserved the prize of superior valour; and their example incited the victorious troops to achieve with swords and spears the

<sup>e</sup> Père Daniel (*Hist. de la Milice Française*, tom. i, p. 17-21) has exhibited a fanciful representation of this battle, somewhat in the manner of the Chevalier Folard, the once famous editor of Polybius, who fashioned to his own habits and opinions all the military operations of antiquity.

CHAP. XLIII.  
 destruction of the enemy. Buccelin, and the greatest part of his army, perished on the field of battle, in the waters of the Vulturnus, or by the hands of the enraged peasants: but it may seem incredible that a victory,<sup>f</sup> which no more than five of the Alemanni survived, could be purchased with the loss of fourscore Romans. Seven thousand Goths, the relicts of the war, defended the fortress of Campsa till the ensuing spring; and every messenger of Narses announced the reduction of the Italian cities, whose names were corrupted by the ignorance or vanity of the Greeks.<sup>g</sup> After the battle of Casilinum, Narses entered the capital; the arms and treasures of the Goths, the Franks, and Alemanni, were displayed; his soldiers, with garlands in their hands, chanted the praises of the conqueror; and Rome, for the last time, beheld the semblance of a triumph.

Settlement  
 of Italy,  
 A. D. 554-  
 568.

After a reign of sixty years, the throne of the Gothic kings was filled by the exarchs of Ravenna, the representatives in peace and war of the emperor of the Romans. Their jurisdiction was soon reduced to the limits of a narrow province: but Narses himself, the first and most powerful of the exarchs, administered above fifteen years the entire kingdom of Italy. Like Belisarius, he had deserved the honours of envy,

<sup>f</sup> Agathias (l. ii, p. 47) has produced a Greek epigram of six lines on this victory of Narses, which is favourably compared to the battles of Marathon and Platæa. The chief difference is indeed in their consequences—so trivial in the former instance—so permanent and glorious in the latter.

<sup>g</sup> The Beroi and Brincas of Theophanes or his transcriber (p. 201) must be read or understood Verona and Brixia.

calumny, and disgrace: but the favourite eunuch still enjoyed the confidence of Justinian, or the leader of a victorious army awed and repressed the ingratitude of a timid court. Yet it was not by weak and mischievous indulgence that Narses secured the attachment of his troops. Forgetful of the past, and regardless of the future, they abused the present hour of prosperity and peace. The cities of Italy resounded with the noise of drinking and dancing: the spoils of victory were wasted in sensual pleasures; and nothing (says Agathias) remained, unless to exchange their shields and helmets for the soft lute and the capacious hogshead.<sup>a</sup> In a manly oration, not unworthy of a Roman censor, the eunuch reproved these disorderly vices, which sullied their fame and endangered their safety. The soldiers blushed and obeyed: discipline was confirmed, the fortifications were restored; a duke was stationed for the defence and military command of each of the principal cities;<sup>b</sup> and the eye of Narses pervaded the ample prospect from Calabria to the Alps. The remains of the Gothic nation evacuated the country, or mingled with the people: the Franks, instead of revenging the death of Buccelin, abandoned, without a struggle, their

<sup>a</sup> Ελπίστο γαρ οίμαι, αυτοίς ὑπο ἀνελπίστιας τὰς ἀσπίδας, τὴν καὶ τὴν πρῶτην ἀμφοτέρωθεν οὐκ καὶ βαρύνει ἀποδοσθαι, (Agathias, l. ii, p. 43). In the first scene of Richard III, our English poet has beautifully enlarged on this idea, for which, however, he was not indebted to the Byzantine historian.

<sup>b</sup> Maffei has proved, (Verona Illustrata, P. i, l. x, p. 257, 269), against the common opinion, that the dukes of Italy were instituted before the conquest of the Lombards by Narses himself. In the Pragmatic Sanction, (No. 22), Justinian places the judicial and military

CHAP.

XLIII.

~~~~~

Italian conquests: and the rebellious Sindbal, chief of the Heruli, was subdued, taken, and hung on a lofty gallows by the inflexible justice of the exarch.<sup>k</sup> The civil state of Italy, after the agitation of a long tempest, was fixed by a pragmatic sanction, which the emperor promulgated at the request of the pope. Justinian introduced his own jurisprudence into the schools and tribunals of the West: he ratified the acts of Theodoric and his immediate successors, but every deed was rescinded and abolished, which force had extorted, or fear had subscribed, under the usurpation of Totila. A moderate theory was framed to reconcile the rights of property with the safety of prescription, the claims of the state with the poverty of the people, and the pardon of offences with the interest of virtue and order of society. Under the exarchs of Ravenna, Rome was degraded to the second rank. Yet the senators were gratified by the permission of visiting their estates in Italy, and of approaching without obstacle the throne of Constantinople; the regulation of weights and measures was delegated to the pope and senate; and the salaries of lawyers and physicians, of orators and grammarians; were destined to preserve or rekindle the light of science in the ancient capital. Justinian might dictate benevolent edicts,<sup>l</sup> and Narses might second his wishes

<sup>k</sup> See Paulus Diaconus, l. iii, c. 2, p. 776. Menander (in *Excerpt. Legat.* p. 133) mentions some risings in Italy by the Franks, and Theophanes (p. 201) hints at some Gothic rebellions.

<sup>l</sup> The Pragmatic Sanction of Justinian, which restores and regulates the civil state of Italy, consists of xxvii articles: it is dated August 15, A. D. 554; is addressed to Narses, V. J. *Præpositus Sacri Cubiculi*.

by the restoration of cities, and more especially of churches. But the power of kings is most effectual to destroy: and the twenty years of the Gothic war had consummated the distress and depopulation of Italy. As early as the fourth campaign, under the discipline of Belisarius himself, fifty thousand labourers died of hunger<sup>m</sup> in the narrow region of Picenum;<sup>n</sup> and a strict interpretation of the evidence of Procopius would swell the loss of Italy above the total sum of her present inhabitants.<sup>o</sup>

I desire to believe, but I dare not affirm, that Belisarius sincerely rejoiced in the triumph of Narses. Yet the consciousness of his own exploits might teach him to esteem without jealousy the merit of a rival; and the repose of the aged warrior was crowned by a last victory which saved the emperor and the capital. The barbarians who annually visited the provinces of Europe were less discouraged by some accidental defeats, than they were ex-

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
~~~~~

Invasion  
of the  
Bulgari-  
ans, A. D.  
559.

Cubiculi, and to Antiochus, Præfectus Prætorio Italiæ; and has been preserved by Julian Antecessor, and in the Corpus Juris Civilis, after the novels and edicts of Justinian, Justin, and Tiberius.

<sup>m</sup> A still greater number was consumed by famine in the southern provinces, without (except) the Ionian gulf. Acorns were used in the place of bread. Procopius had seen a deserted orphan suckled by a she-goat. Seventeen passengers were lodged, murdered, and eaten by two women, who were detected and slain by the eighteenth, &c.

<sup>n</sup> Quinta regio Piceni est; quondam uberrimæ multitudinis, cœclæ millia Picentium in sidem P. R. venere, (Plin. Hist. Natur. in, 18). In the time of Vespasian, this ancient population was already diminished.

<sup>o</sup> Perhaps fifteen or sixteen millions. Procopius (Anecd. c. 16) computes that Africa lost five millions, that Italy was thrice as extensive, and that the depopulation was in a larger proportion. But his reckoning is inflamed by passion, and clouded with uncertainty.

CHAP.

XLIII.

cited by the double hope of spoil and of subsidy.

In the thirty-second winter of Justinian's reign, the Danube was deeply frozen: Zabergan led the cavalry of the Bulgarians, and his standard was followed by a promiscuous multitude of Slavonians. The savage chief passed, without opposition, the river and the mountains, spread his troops over Macedonia and Thrace, and advanced with no more than seven thousand horse to the long walls which should have defended the territory of Constantinople. But the works of man are impotent against the assaults of nature: a recent earthquake had shaken the foundations of the wall; and the forces of the empire were employed on the distant frontiers of Italy, Africa, and Persia. The seven *schools*,<sup>p</sup> or companies of the guards or domestic troops, had been augmented to the number of five thousand five hundred men, whose ordinary station was in the peaceful cities of Asia. But the places of the brave Armenians were insensibly supplied by lazy citizens, who purchased an exemption from the duties of civil life, without being exposed to the dangers of military service. Of such soldiers, few could be tempted to sally from the gates; and none could be persuaded to remain in the field, unless they wanted strength and speed to escape from the Bulgarians. The report of the fugitives exaggerated the numbers and fierceness of an enemy, who had polluted holy virgins, and

<sup>p</sup> In the decay of these military schools, the satire of Procopius (Anecd. c. 24; Aleman. p. 102, 103) is confirmed and illustrated by Agathias, (l. v, p. 159), who cannot be rejected as an hostile witness.

abandoned new-born infants to the dogs and vultures; a crowd of rustics, imploring food and protection, increased the consternation of the city, and the tents of Zabergan were pitched at the distance of twenty miles,<sup>1</sup> on the banks of a small river, which encircles Melanthias, and afterwards falls into the Propontis.<sup>2</sup> Justinian trembled: and those who had only seen the emperor in his old age, were pleased to suppose, that he had *lost* the alacrity and vigour of his youth. By his command, the vessels of gold and silver were removed from the churches in the neighbourhood, and even the suburbs, of Constantinople: the ramparts were lined with trembling spectators: the golden gate was crowded with useless generals and tribunes, and the senate shared the fatigues and the apprehensions of the populace.

But the eyes of the prince and people were directed to a feeble veteran, who was compelled by the public danger to resume the armour in which he had entered Carthage and defended Rome. The horses of the royal stables, of private citizens, and even of the circus, were hastily collected;

Last victory of  
Belisarius.

<sup>1</sup> The distance from Constantinople to Melanthias, Villa Cæsariana, (Ammian. Marcellin. xxx, 11), is variously fixed at 102 or 140 stadia, (Suidas, tom. ii, p. 522, 523; Agathias, l. v, p. 158), or xviii or xix miles, (Itineraria, p. 138, 230, 323, 332, and Wesseling's Observations). The first xii miles, as far as Rhegium, were paved by Justinian, who built a bridge over a morass or gullet between a lake and the sea, (Procop. de Edif. l. iv, c. 8).

<sup>2</sup> The Atyras, (Pompon. Mela, l. ii, c. 2, p. 169, edit. Voss). At the river's mouth, a town or castle of the same name was fortified by Justinian, (Procop. de Edif. l. iv, c. 2; Itinerar. p. 570, and Wesseling).

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
~~~~~

the emulation of the old and young was roused by the name of Belisarius, and his first encampment was in the presence of a victorious enemy. His prudence, and the labour of the friendly peasants, secured, with a ditch and rampart, the repose of the night: innumerable fires, and clouds of dust, were artfully contrived to magnify the opinion of his strength: his soldiers suddenly passed from despondency to presumption; and while ten thousand voices demanded the battle, Belisarius dissimulated his knowledge, that in the hour of trial he must depend on the firmness of three hundred veterans. The next morning the Bulgarian cavalry advanced to the charge. But they heard the shouts of multitudes, they beheld the arms and discipline of the front; they were assaulted on the flanks by two ambuscades which rose from the woods; their foremost warriors fell by the hand of the aged hero and his guards; and the swiftness of their evolutions was rendered useless by the close attack and rapid pursuit of the Romans. In this action (so speedy was their flight) the Bulgarians lost only four hundred horse; but Constantinople was saved; and Zabergan, who felt the hand of a master, withdrew to a respectful distance. But his friends were numerous in the councils of the emperor, and Belisarius obeyed with reluctance, the commands of envy and Justinian, which forbade him to achieve the deliverance of his country. On his return to the city, the people, still conscious of their danger, accompanied his triumph with acclamations of joy and gratitude, which

were imputed as a crime to the victorious general. But when he entered the palace, the courtiers were silent, and the emperor, after a cold and thankless embrace, dismissed him to mingle with the train of slaves. Yet so deep was the impression of his glory on the minds of men, that Justinian, in the seventy-seventh year of his age, was encouraged to advance near forty miles from the capital, and to inspect in person the restoration of the long wall. The Bulgarians wasted the summer in the plains of Thrace: but they were inclined to peace by the failure of their rash attempts on Greece and the Chersonesus. A menace of killing their prisoners quickened the payment of heavy ransoms; and the departure of Zabergan was hastened by the report, that double-prowed vessels were built on the Danube to intercept his passage. The danger was soon forgotten; and a vain question, whether their sovereign had shewn more wisdom or weakness, amused the idleness of the city.\*

About two years after the last victory of Belisarius, the emperor returned from a Thracian journey of health, or business, or devotion. Justinian was afflicted by a pain in his head; and his private entry countenanced the rumour of his death. Before the third hour of the day, the baker's shops were plundered of their bread, the houses were shut, and every citizen, with hope or terror, prepared for the impending tumult. The

His disgrace and death,  
A. D. 561.

\* The Bulgarian war, and the last victory of Belisarius, are imperfectly represented in the prolix declamation of Agathias, (l. 3, p. 134-174), and the dry Chronicle of Theophanes, (p. 197, 198).

CHAP. senators themselves, fearful and suspicious, were  
 XLIII. convened at the ninth hour; and the prefect re-  
 ceived their commands to visit every quarter of  
 the city, and proclaim a general illumination for  
 the recovery of the emperor's health. The fer-  
 ment subsided; but every accident betrayed the  
 impotence of the government and the factious  
 temper of the people: the guards were disposed  
 to mutiny as often as their quarters were  
 changed or their pay was withheld: the fre-  
 quent calamities of fires and earthquakes afford-  
 ed the opportunities of disorder; the disputes of  
 the blues and greens, of the orthodox and here-  
 tics, degenerated into bloody battles; and in the  
 presence of the Persian ambassador, Justinian  
 blushed for himself and for his subjects. Capri-  
 cious pardon and arbitrary punishment embittered  
 the irksomeness and discontent of a long reign: a  
 conspiracy was formed in the palace; and, unless  
 we are deceived by the names of Marcellus and  
 Sergius, the most virtuous and the most profligate  
 of the courtiers were associated in the same de-  
 signs. They had fixed the time of the execution;  
 their rank gave them access to the royal banquet;  
 and their black slaves<sup>c</sup> were stationed in the vesti-  
 bule and porticos, to announce the death of the  
 tyrant, and to excite a sedition in the capital. But  
 the indiscretion of an accomplice saved the poor  
 remnant of the days of Justinian. The conspir-

<sup>c</sup> *Indus*. They could scarcely be real Indians; and the *Æthiopians*, sometimes known by that name, were never used by the ancients as guards or followers: they were the trifling, though costly, objects of female and royal luxury, (Terent. Eunuch. act. i, scene ii; Sueton. in August. c. 83, with a good note of Casaubon, in Caligulâ, c. 57).

ators were detected and seized, with daggers hidden under their garments: Marcellus died by his own hand, and Sergius was dragged from the sanctuary.<sup>u</sup> Pressed by remorse, or tempted by the hopes of safety, he accused two officers of the household of Belisarius; and torture forced them to declare that they had acted according to the secret instructions of their patron.<sup>x</sup> Posterity will not hastily believe that an hero, who, in the vigour of life, had disdained the fairest offers of ambition and revenge, should stoop to the murder of his prince, whom he could not long expect to survive. His followers were impatient to fly; but flight must have been supported by rebellion, and he had lived enough for nature and for glory. Belisarius appeared before the council with less fear than indignation: after forty year's service, the emperor had prejudged his guilt; and injustice was sanctified by the presence and authority of the patriarch. The life of Belisarius was graciously spared; but his fortunes were sequestered, and from December to July, he was guarded as a prisoner in his own palace. At length his innocence was acknowledged; his freedom and honours were restored; and death, which might be hastened by resentment and grief, removed him from the world about

CHAP.

XLIII.

A. D. 563,  
Dec. 5.A. D. 564,  
July 19.A. D. 565,  
March 13.

<sup>u</sup> The Sergius (Vandal. l. ii, c. 21, 22; Anecd. c. 5) and Marcellus (Goth. l. iii, c. 32) are mentioned by Procopius. See Theophanes, p. 197, 201.

<sup>x</sup> Alemannus (p. 3) quotes an old Byzantine MS. which has been printed in the *Imperium Orientale* of Banduri.

CHAP. eight months after his deliverance. The name of  
 XLIII. Belisarius can never die: but instead of the funeral,  
 the monuments, the statues, so justly due to his  
 memory, I only read, that his treasures, the spoils  
 of the Goths and Vandals, were immediately con-  
 fiscated by the emperor. Some decent portion  
 was reserved, however, for the use of his widow;  
 and as Antonina had much to repent, she devoted  
 the last remains of her life and fortune to the  
 foundation of a convent. Such is the simple and  
 genuine narrative of the fall of Belisarius and the  
 ingratitude of Justinian.\* That he was deprived  
 of his eyes, and reduced by envy to beg his  
 bread, "Give a penny to Belisarius the general!"  
 is a fiction of later times,† which has obtained

\* Of the disgrace and restoration of Belisarius, the genuine original record is preserved in the fragment of John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 234-243), and the exact Chronicle of Theophanes, (p. 194-204). Cedrenus, (Compend. p. 387, 388), and Zonaras, (tom. ii, l. xiv, p. 69), seem to hesitate between the obsolete truth and the growing falsehood.

† The source of this idle fable may be derived from a miscellaneous work of the xiith century, the Chiliads of John Tzetzes, a monk, (Basil, 1546, ad calcem Lycophront, Colon. Allobrog. 1614, in Corp. Poet. Græc.). He relates the blindness and beggary of Belisarius in ten vulgar or political verses, (Chiliad iii, N<sup>o</sup>. 88, 339-348, in Corp. Poet. Græc. tom. ii, p. 311).

Εκπαμα ζυλινον κρατων εβρα τω μιλιω  
 Βελισαριω εβολει δοτι τω στρατηλατη  
 Οι τυχη μιν ιδοξασιν, αποτυφλει δ' ε φθονος.

This moral or romantic tale was imported into Italy with the language and manuscripts of Greece; repeated before the end of the xvth century by Crinitus, Pontanius, and Volaterranus; attacked by Alciat, for the honour of the law; and defended by Baronius (A. D. 461, N<sup>o</sup>. 2, &c.) for the honour of the church. Yet Tzetzes himself had read in other chronicles, that Belisarius did not lose his sight, and that he recovered his fame and fortunes.

credit, or rather favour, as a strange example of the vicissitudes of fortune.<sup>a</sup>

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
*Justinian*  
Death and  
character  
of Justi-  
nian,  
A. D. 565,  
Nov. 14.

If the emperor could rejoice in the death of Belisarius, he enjoyed the base satisfaction only eight months, the last period of a reign of thirty-eight, and a life of eighty-three, years. It would be difficult to trace the character of a prince who is not the most conspicuous object of his own times: but the confessions of an enemy may be received as the safest evidence of his virtues. The resemblance of Justinian to the bust of Domitian, is maliciously urged;<sup>b</sup> with the acknowledgment, however, of a well-proportioned figure, a ruddy complexion, and a pleasing countenance. The emperor was easy of access, patient of hearing, courteous and affable in discourse, and a master of the angry passions, which rage with such destructive violence in the breast of a despot. Procopius praises his temper to reproach him with calm and deliberate cruelty; but in the conspiracies which attacked his authority and person, a more candid judge will approve the justice or admire the clemency of Justinian. He excelled

<sup>a</sup> The statue in the villa Borghese at Rome, in a sitting posture, with an open hand, which is vulgarly given to Belisarius, may be ascribed with more dignity to Augustus in the act of propitiating Nemesis, (Winkelmán, *Hist. de l'Art.* tom. iii, p. 266). *Ex nocturno visû etiam stipem, quotannis, die certo, emendicabat a populo, cavam manum asses porrigentibus præbens*, (Sueton. in August. c. 91, with an excellent note of Casaubon).

<sup>b</sup> The *rubor* of Domitian is stigmatized, quaintly enough, by the pen of Tacitus, (in *Vit. Agricol.* c. 45); and has been likewise noticed by the younger Pliny, (*Panegy.* c. 48), and Suetonius, (in *Domitian*, c. 18, and Casaubon ad locum). Procopius (*Anecd.* c. 8) foolishly believes that only one bust of Domitian had reached the sixth century.

CHAP.  
XLIII.  
~~~~~

in the private virtues of chastity and temperance: but the impartial love of beauty would have been less mischievous, than his conjugal tenderness for Theodora; and his abstemious diet was regulated, not by the prudence of a philosopher, but the superstition of a monk. His repasts were short and frugal: on solemn fasts, he contented himself with water and vegetables; and such was his strength, as well as fervour, that he frequently passed two days and as many nights, without tasting any food. The measure of his sleep was not less rigorous: after the repose of a single hour, the body was awakened by the soul, and, to the astonishment of his chamberlains, Justinian walked or studied till the morning light. Such restless application prolonged his time for the acquisition of knowledge, and the despatch of business: and he might seriously deserve the reproach of confounding, by minute and preposterous diligence, the general order of his administration. The emperor professed himself a musician and architect, a poet and philosopher, a lawyer and theologian; and if he failed in the enterprise of reconciling the Christian sects, the review of the Roman jurisprudence is a noble monument of his spirit and industry. In the government of the empire, he was less wise or less successful: the age was unfortunate; the people

\* The studies and science of Justinian are attested by the confession, (Anecd. c. 8, 13), still more than by the praises, (Gothic. l. iii, c. 31; de Edific. l. i; Proem. c. 7), of Procopius. Consult the copious index of Alemannus, and read the life of Justinian by Ludwig, (p. 135-142).

was oppressed and discontented; Theodora abused her power; a succession of bad ministers disgraced his judgment; and Justinian was neither beloved in his life, nor regretted at his death. The love of fame was deeply implanted in his breast, but he condescended to the poor ambition of titles, honours, and contemporary praise; and while he laboured to fix the admiration, he forfeited the esteem and affection of the Romans. The design of the African and Italian wars was boldly conceived and executed: and his penetration discovered the talents of Belisarius in the camp, of Narses in the palace. But the name of the emperor is eclipsed by the names of his victorious generals; and Belisarius still lives, to upbraid the envy and ingratitude of his sovereign. The partial favour of mankind applauds the genius of a conqueror, who leads and directs his subjects in the exercise of arms. The characters of Philip II and of Justinian are distinguished by the cold ambition which delights in war, and declines the dangers of the field. Yet a colossal statue of bronze represented the emperor on horseback, preparing to march against the Persians in the habit and armour of Achilles. In the great square before the church of St. Sophia, this monument was raised on a brass column and a stone pedestal of seven steps: and the pillar of Theodosius, which weighed seven thousand four hundred pounds of silver, was removed from the same place by the avarice and vanity of Justinian. Future princes were more just or indulgent to *his* memory; the elder Andro-

CHAP. nicus, in the beginning of the fourteenth century,  
 XLIII. repaired and beautified his equestrian statue:  
 ~~~~~ since the fall of the empire, it has been melted  
 into cannon by the victorious Turks.<sup>d</sup>

I shall conclude this chapter with the comets, the earthquakes, and the plague, which astonished or afflicted the age of Justinian.

Comets,  
 A. D. 531-  
 539.

I. In the fifth year of his reign, and in the month of September, a comet<sup>e</sup> was seen during twenty days in the western quarter of the heavens, and which shot its rays into the North. Eight years afterwards, while the sun was in Capricorn, another comet appeared to follow in the Sagitary: the size was gradually increasing; the head was in the East, the tail in the West, and it remained visible about forty days. The nations, who gazed with astonishment, expected wars and calamities from their baleful influence; and these expectations were abundantly fulfilled. The astronomers dissembled their ignorance of the nature of these blazing stars, which they affected to represent as the floating meteors of the air; and few among them embraced the simple notion of Seneca and the Chaldæans, that they are only planets of a longer period and more ec-

<sup>d</sup> See in the C. P. Christiana of Ducange, (l. i, c. 24, N<sup>o</sup>. 1), a chain of original testimonies, from Procopius in the viith, to Gyllius in the xvith, century.

<sup>e</sup> The first comet is mentioned by John Malala, (tom. ii, p. 199, 219), and Theophanes, (p. 154); the second by Procopius, (Persic. l. ii, c. 4). Yet I strongly suspect their identity. The paleness of the sun (Vandal. l. ii, c. 14) is applied by Theophanes (p. 158) to a different year.

centric motion.<sup>f</sup> Time and science have justified the conjectures and predictions of the Roman sage: the telescope has opened new worlds to the eyes of astronomers;<sup>g</sup> and, in the narrow space of history and fable, one and the same comet is already found to have revisited the earth in *seven* equal revolutions of five hundred and seventy-five years. The *first*,<sup>h</sup> which ascends beyond the Christian era one thousand seven hundred and sixty-seven years, is coeval with Ogyges the father of Grecian antiquity. And this appearance explains the tradition which Varro has preserved, that under his reign the planet Venus changed her colour, size, figure, and course; a prodigy without example either in past or succeeding ages.<sup>i</sup> The *second* visit, in the year eleven hundred and ninety-three, is darkly implied in the fable of Electra the seventh of the Pleiads, who have been reduced to six since the time of the Trojan war. That nymph, the

<sup>f</sup> Seneca's viith book of *Natural Questions* displays, in the theory of comets, a philosophic mind. Yet should we not too candidly condemn a vague prediction, a *veniet tempus*, &c. with the merit of real discoveries.

<sup>g</sup> Astronomers may study Newton and Halley. I draw my humble science from the article *Comete*, in the French *Encyclopedie* by M. d'Alembert.

<sup>h</sup> Whiston, the honest, pious, visionary Whiston, had fancied, for the era of Noah's flood, (2242 years before Christ), a prior apparition of the same comet which drowned the earth with its tail.

<sup>i</sup> A dissertation of Freret (*Memoires de l'Academie des Inscriptions*, tom. x, p. 357-377) affords an happy union of philosophy and erudition. The phenomenon in the time of Ogyges was preserved by Varro, (apud Augustin. de *Civitate Dei*, xxi, 8), who quotes Castor, Dior of Naples, and Adrastus of Cyzicus—*nobiles mathematici*. The two subsequent periods are preserved by the Greek mythologists and the spurious books of Sibylline verses.

CHAP.  
XLIII.

wife of Dardanus, was unable to support the ruin of her country; she abandoned the dances of her sister orbs, fled from the zodiac to the north pole, and obtained, from her dishevelled locks, the name of the *comet*. The *third* period expires in the year six hundred and eighteen, a date that exactly agrees with the tremendous comet of the Sibyll, and perhaps of Pliny, which arose in the West two generations before the reign of Cyrus. The *fourth* apparition, forty-four years before the birth of Christ, is of all others the most splendid and important. After the death of Cæsar, a long-haired star was conspicuous to Rome and to the nations, during the games which were exhibited by young Octavian, in honour of Venus and his uncle. The vulgar opinion, that it conveyed to heaven the divine soul of the dictator, was cherished and consecrated by the piety of a statesman: while his secret superstition referred the comet to the glory of his own times.<sup>\*</sup> The *fifth* visit has been already ascribed to the fifth year of Justinian, which coincides with the five hundred and thirty-first of the Christian era. And it may deserve notice, that in this, as in the preceding instance, the comet was followed, though at a longer interval, by a remarkable paleness of the sun. The *sixth* return, in the year eleven hundred and six, is recorded by the chronicles

<sup>\*</sup> Pliny (Hist. Nat. ii, 23) has transcribed the original memorial of Augustus. Mairan, in his most ingenious letters to the P. Parennin, missionary in China, removes the games and the comet of September, from the year 44 to the year 43, before the Christian era; but I am not totally subdued by the criticism of the astronomer, (*Opuscles*, p. 275-351).

of Europe and China; and in the first fervour of the Crusades, the Christians and the Mahometans might surmise, with equal reason, that it portended the destruction of the infidels. The *seventh* phenomenon of one thousand six hundred and eighty was presented to the eyes of an enlightened age.<sup>1</sup> The philosophy of Bayle dispelled a prejudice which Milton's muse had so recently adorned, that the comet, "from its horrid hair, shakes pestilence and war."<sup>m</sup> Its road in the heavens was observed with exquisite skill by Flamsteed and Cassini; and the mathematical science of Bernoulli, Newton, and Halley, investigated the laws of its revolutions. At the *eighth* period, in the year two thousand two hundred and fifty-five, their calculations may perhaps be verified by the astronomers of some future capital in the Siberian or American wilderness.

II. The near approach of a comet may injure or destroy the globe which we inhabit; but the changes on its surface have been hitherto produced by the action of volcanos and earthquakes.<sup>n</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This last comet was visible in the month of December 1680. Bayle, who began his *Pensées sur le Comète* in January 1681, (*Oeuvres*, tom. iiii), was forced to argue that a *supernatural* comet would have confirmed the ancients in their idolatry. Bernoulli (see his *Eloge*, in Fontenelle, tom. v, p. 99) was forced to allow that the tail, though not the head, was a *sign* of the wrath of God.

<sup>m</sup> *Paradise Lost* was published in the year 1667; and the famous lines (l. ii, 708, &c.) which startled the licenser, may allude to the recent comet of 1664, observed by Cassini at Rome in the presence of Queen Christina, (Fontenelle, in his *Eloge*, tom. v, p. 33b). Had Charles II betrayed any symptoms of curiosity or fear?

<sup>n</sup> For the cause of earthquakes, see Buffon, (tom. i, p. 502-536; *Supplément à l'Hist. Naturelle*, tom. v, p. 382-390, édition in 4to); Valmont de Bomare, (*Dictionnaire d'Histoire Naturelle, Tremblements de Terre, Pyrites*); Watson, (*Chemical Essay*, tom. i, p. 191-200).

CHAP.  
XLIII.

The nature of the soil may indicate the countries most exposed to these formidable concussions, since they are caused by subterraneous fires, and such fires are kindled by the union and fermentation of iron and sulphur. But their times and effects appear to lie beyond the reach of human curiosity, and the philosopher will discreetly abstain from the prediction of earthquakes, till he has counted the drops of water that silently filtrate on the inflammable mineral, and measured the caverns which increase by resistance the explosion of the imprisoned air. Without assigning the cause, history will distinguish the periods in which these calamitous events have been rare or frequent, and will observe that this fever of the earth raged with uncommon violence during the reign of Justinian. Each year is marked by the repetition of earthquakes, of such duration, that Constantinople has been shaken above forty days; of such extent, that the shock has been communicated to the whole surface of the globe, or at least of the Roman empire. An impulsive or vibratory motion was felt: enormous chasms were opened, huge and heavy bodies were discharged into the air, the sea alternately advanced and retreated beyond its ordinary bounds, and a mountain was torn from Libanus;<sup>p</sup>

\* The earthquakes that shook the Roman world in the reign of Justinian, are described or mentioned by Procopius, (Goth. l. iv, c. 25; Anecd. c. 18); Agathias, (l. ii, p. 52, 53, 54; l. v, p. 145-152); John Malala, (Chron. tom. ii. p. 140-146, 176, 177, 183, 193, 220, 229, 231, 233, 234), and Theophanes, (p. 151, 183, 189, 191-196).

<sup>p</sup> An abrupt height, a perpendicular cape between Aradus and Botrys, named by the Greeks *θίων προωπών* and *εππροωπών* or *λιθοπρωωπών* by

and cast into the waves, where it protected, as a mole, the new harbour of Botrys<sup>a</sup> in Phœnicia. The stroke that agitates an ant-hill, may crush the insect myriads in the dust; yet truth must extort a confession, that man has industriously laboured for his own destruction. The institution of great cities, which include a nation within the limits of a wall, almost realizes the wish of Caligula, that the Roman people had but one neck. Two hundred and fifty thousand persons are said to have perished in the earthquake of Antioch, whose domestic multitudes were swelled by the confux of strangers to the festival of the Ascension. The loss of Berytus<sup>b</sup> was of smaller account, but of much greater value. That city, on the coast of Phœnicia, was illustrated by the study of the civil law, which opened the surest road to wealth and dignity: the schools of Berytus were filled with the rising spirits of the age, and many a youth was lost in the earthquake, who might have lived to be the scourge or the guardian of his country. In these disasters, the architect becomes the enemy of mankind. The hut of a savage, or the tent of an Arab, may be

A. D. 526,  
May 20.

A. D. 551,  
July 9.

by the scrupulous Christians, (Polyb. l. v, p. 411. Pompon. Mela, l. i, c. 12, p. 87, cum Isaac Voss. Observat. Maundrell, Journey, p. 32, 33. Pocock's Description, vol. ii, p. 99).

<sup>a</sup> Botrys was founded (ann. ante Christ. 935-903) by Ithobal, king of Tyre, (Marsham, Canon. Chron. p. 387, 388). Its poor representative, the village of Patrone, is now destitute of an harbour.

<sup>b</sup> The university, splendour, and ruin of Berytus, are celebrated by Heineccius, (p. 351-356), as an essential part of the history of the Roman Law. It was overthrown in the xxvth year of Justinian, A. D. 551, July 9, (Theophanes, p. 192); but Agathias (l. ii, p. 51, 52) suspends the earthquake till he has achieved the Italian war.

CHAP. thrown down without injury to the inhabitant;  
 XLIII. and the Peruvians had reason to deride the folly  
 of their Spanish conquerors, who with so much  
 cost and labour erected their own sepulchres.  
 The rich marbles of a patrician are dashed on his  
 own head; a whole people is buried under the  
 ruins of public and private edifices, and the con-  
 flagration is kindled and propagated by the in-  
 numerable fires which are necessary for the sub-  
 sistence and manufactures of a great city. In-  
 stead of the mutual sympathy which might com-  
 fort and assist the distressed, they dreadfully  
 experience the vices and passions which are releas-  
 ed from the fear of punishment: the tottering  
 houses are pillaged by intrepid avarice; revenge  
 embraces the moment, and selects the victim;  
 and the earth often swallows the assassin, or the  
 ravisher, in the consummation of their crimes.  
 Superstition involves the present danger with in-  
 visible terrors; and if the image of death may  
 sometimes be subservient to the virtue or repent-  
 ance of individuals, an affrighted people is more  
 forcibly moved to expect the end of the world,  
 or to deprecate with servile homage the wrath of  
 an avenging Deity.

Plague—  
 its origin  
 and nature,  
 A. D. 542.

III. *Æthiopia* and *Egypt* have been stigmatized  
 in every age, as the original source and seminary  
 of the plague.\* In a damp, hot, stagnating air,  
 this African fever is generated from the putrefac-  
 tion of animal substances, and especially from the  
 swarms of locusts, not less destructive to man-  
 kind in their death than in their lives. The fatal

\* I have read with pleasure Mead's short, but elegant, treatise con-  
 cerning Pestilential Disorders, the viiiith edition, London, 1722.

disease which depopulated the earth in the time of Justinian and his successors,<sup>†</sup> first appeared in the neighbourhood of Pelusium, between the Serbonian bog and the eastern channel of the Nile. From thence, tracing as it were a double path, it spread to the East, over Syria, Persia, and the Indies, and penetrated to the West, along the coast of Africa, and over the continent of Europe. In the spring of the second year, Constantinople, during three or four months, was visited by the pestilence; and Procopius, who observed its progress and symptoms with the eyes of a physician,<sup>‡</sup> has emulated the skill and diligence of Thucydides in the description of the plague of Athens.<sup>§</sup> The infection was sometimes announced by the visions of a distempered fancy, and the victim despaired as soon as he had heard the menace and felt the stroke of an invisible spectre. But the greater number, in their beds, in the streets, in their usual occupation, were surprised by a slight fever; so slight, indeed, that

<sup>†</sup> The great plague which raged in 542 and the following years, (Pagi, *Critica*, tom. ii, p. 518), must be traced in Procopius, (*Persic.* l. ii, c. 22, 23); Agathias, (l. v, p. 153, 154); Evagrius, (l. iv, c. 29); Paul Diaconus, (l. ii, c. 4, p. 776, 777); Gregory of Tours, (tom ii, l. iv, c. 5, p. 205), who styles it *Lues Inguinaris*, and the *Chronicles* of Victor Tunnunensis, (p. 9, in *Thesaur. Temporum*); of Marcellinus, (p. 54), and of Theophanes, (p. 153).

<sup>‡</sup> Dr. Friend (*Hist. Medicin.* in *Opp.* p. 416-420, Lond. 1733) is satisfied that Procopius must have studied physic, from his knowledge and use of the technical words. Yet many words that are now scientific, were common and popular in the Greek idiom.

<sup>§</sup> See Thucydides, l. ii, c. 47-54, p. 127-133, edit. Duker, and the poetical description of the same plague by Lucretius, (l. vi, 1136-1284). I was indebted to Dr. Hunter for an elaborate commentary on this part of Thucydides, a quarto of 600 pages, (Venet. 1603, apud Juntas), which was pronounced in St. Mark's library, by Fabius Paulinus Utinensis, a physician and philosopher.

CHAP. neither the pulse nor the colour of the patient  
 XLIII. gave any signs of the approaching danger. The  
 same, the next, or the succeeding day, it was declared by the swelling of the glands, particularly those of the groin, of the arm-pits, and under the ear; and when these buboes or tumours were opened, they were found to contain a *coal*, or black substance, of the size of a lentil. If they came to a just swelling and suppuration, the patient was saved by this kind and natural discharge of the morbid humour. But if they continued hard and dry, a mortification quickly ensued, and the fifth day was commonly the term of his life. The fever was often accompanied with lethargy or delirium; the bodies of the sick were covered with black pustules or carbuncles, the symptoms of immediate death; and in the constitutions too feeble to produce an eruption, the vomiting of blood was followed by a mortification of the bowels. To pregnant women the plague was generally mortal: yet one infant was drawn alive from his dead mother, and three mothers survived the loss of their infected foetus. Youth was the most perilous season; and the female sex was less susceptible than the male; but every rank and profession was attacked with indiscriminate rage, and many of those who escaped were deprived of the use of their speech, without being secure from a return of the disorder.<sup>7</sup> The physicians of Con-

<sup>7</sup> Thucydides (c. 51) affirms that the infection could only be once taken; but Evagrius, who had family-experience of the plague, observes, that some persons, who had escaped the first, sunk under the  
 second

stantinople were zealous and skilful: but their art was baffled by the various symptoms and pertinacious vehemence of the disease: the same remedies were productive of contrary effects, and the event capriciously disappointed their prognostics of death or recovery. The order of funerals, and the right of sepulchres, were confounded; those who were left without friends or servants, lay unburied in the streets, or in their desolate houses; and a magistrate was authorized to collect the promiscuous heaps of dead bodies, to transport them by land or water, and to inter them in deep pits beyond the precincts of the city. Their own danger, and the prospect of public distress, awakened some remorse in the minds of the most vicious of mankind; the confidence of health again revived their passions and habits; but philosophy must disdain the observation of Procopius, that the lives of such men were guarded by the peculiar favour of fortune or providence. He forgot, or perhaps he secretly recollected, that the plague had touched the person of Justinian himself; but the abstemious diet of the emperor may suggest, as in the case of Socrates, a more rational and honourable cause for his recovery.\* During his sickness, the public consternation was expressed in the habits of the

second attack; and this repetition is confirmed by Fabius Paullinus, (p. 588). I observe that on this head physicians are divided: and the nature and operation of the disease may not always be similar.

\* It was thus that Socrates had been saved by his temperance, in the plague of Athens, (Aul. Gellius, Noct. Attic. ii. 1). Dr. Mead accounts for the peculiar salubrity of religious houses, by the two advantages of seclusion and abstinence, (p. 18, 19).

CHAP. citizens; and their idleness and despondence oc-  
 XLIII. casioned a general scarcity in the capital of the  
 East.

Extent and  
 duration,  
 A. D. 542-  
 594.

Contagion is the inseparable symptom of the plague; which, by mutual respiration, is trans- fused from the infected persons to the lungs and stomach of those who approach them. While philosophers believe and tremble, it is singular, that the existence of a real danger should have been denied by a people most prone to vain and imaginary terrors.\* Yet the fellow-citizens of Procopius were satisfied, by some short and partial experience, that the infection could not be gained by the closest conversation;<sup>b</sup> and this persuasion might support the assiduity of friends or physicians in the care of the sick, whom in- human prudence would have condemned to soli- tude and despair. But the fatal security, like the predestination of the Turks, must have aid- ed the progress of the contagion; and those sa- lutory precautions to which Europe is indebted for her safety, were unknown to the govern- ment of Justinian. No restraints were imposed on the free and frequent intercourse of the Ro-

\* Mead proves that the plague is contagious, from Thucydides, Lu- cretius, Aristotle, Galen, and common experience, (p. 10-20); and he refutes (Preface, p. ii-xiii) the contrary opinion of the French physicians who visited Marseilles in the year 1720. Yet these were the recent and enlightened spectators of a plague which, in a few months, swept away 50,000 inhabitants (sur la Peste de Marseille, Paris, 1786) of a city that, in the present hour of prosperity and trade, contains no more than 90,000 souls, (Necker, sur les Finances, tom. i, p. 231).

<sup>b</sup> The strong assertions of Procopius—*οτι γαρ ιαση οτι γαρ ιαση*—are overthrown by the subsequent experience of Evagrius.

ENAP.

XLIII.

man provinces; from Persia to France, the nations were mingled and infected by wars and emigrations: and the pestilential odour which lurks for years in a bale of cotton, was imported, by the abuse of trade, into the most distant regions. The mode of its propagation is explained by the remark of Procopius himself, that it always spread from the sea-coast to the inland country; the most sequestered islands and mountains were successively visited; the places which had escaped the fury of its first passage, were alone exposed to the contagion of the ensuing year. The winds might diffuse that subtle venom; but unless the atmosphere be previously disposed for its reception, the plague would soon expire in the cold or temperate climates of the earth. Such was the universal corruption of the air, that the pestilence which burst forth in the fifteenth year of Justinian was not checked or alleviated by any difference of the seasons. In time, its first malignity was abated and dispersed; the disease alternately languished and revived; but it was not till the end of a calamitous period of fifty-two years, that mankind recovered their health, or the air resumed its pure and salubrious quality. No facts have been preserved to sustain an account, or even a conjecture, of the numbers that perished in this extraordinary mortality. I only find, that during three months, five, and at length ten thousand persons died each day at Constantinople; that many cities of the East were left vacant, and that in several districts of Italy the harvest and the vint-





CATALOGUED.

NIC

